ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

World Journal of *Hepatology*

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 482-646

Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

World Journal of Hepatology

Contents

Monthly Volume 14 Number 3 March 27, 2022

REVIEW

MINIREVIEWS

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Case Control Study

Retrospective Cohort Study

World Journal of Hepatology

Monthly Volume 14 Number 3 March 27, 2022

Contents

World Journal of Hepatology

Monthly Volume 14 Number 3 March 27, 2022

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Hepatology*, Rostyslav Bubnov, MD, PhD, LLB, Senior researcher in The Interferon Department of Zabolotny Institute of Microbiology and Virology, National Academy of Sciences of Ukraine; Medical doctor in The Center of Ultrasound Diagnostics and Interventional Sonography, Clinical Hospital "Pheophania" of Administration of President of Ukraine, Kyiv 03157, Ukraine. rostbubnov@gmail.com

AIMS AND SCOPE

The primary aim of *World Journal of Hepatology* (*WJH*, *World J Hepatol*) is to provide scholars and readers from various fields of hepatology with a platform to publish high-quality basic and clinical research articles and communicate their research findings online.

WJH mainly publishes articles reporting research results and findings obtained in the field of hepatology and covering a wide range of topics including chronic cholestatic liver diseases, cirrhosis and its complications, clinical alcoholic liver disease, drug induced liver disease autoimmune, fatty liver disease, genetic and pediatric liver diseases, hepatocellular carcinoma, hepatic stellate cells and fibrosis, liver immunology, liver regeneration, hepatic surgery, liver transplantation, biliary tract pathophysiology, non-invasive markers of liver fibrosis, viral hepatitis.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

The *WJH* is now abstracted and indexed in PubMed, PubMed Central, Emerging Sources Citation Index (Web of Science), Scopus, Reference Citation Analysis, China National Knowledge Infrastructure, China Science and Technology Journal Database, and Superstar Journals Database. The 2021 edition of Journal Citation Reports® cites the 2020 Journal Citation Indicator (JCI) for *WJH* as 0.61. The *WJH*'s CiteScore for 2020 is 5.6 and Scopus CiteScore rank 2020: Hepatology is 24/62.

RESPONSIBLE EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Production Editor: *Rui-Rui Wu*; **Production Department Director:** *Xiang Li*; **Editorial Office Director:** *Xiang Li*.

NAME OF JOURNAL
World Journal of Hepatology

ISSN
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

LAUNCH DATE
October 31, 2009

FREQUENCY
Monthly

EDITORS-IN-CHIEF
Nikolaos Pyrsopoulos, Ke-Qin Hu, Koo Jeong Kang

EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS
https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/editorialboard.htm

PUBLICATION DATE
March 27, 2022

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204

GUIDELINES FOR ETHICS DOCUMENTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/287

GUIDELINES FOR NON-NATIVE SPEAKERS OF ENGLISH
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/240

PUBLICATION ETHICS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/288

PUBLICATION MISCONDUCT
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/208

ARTICLE PROCESSING CHARGE
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/242

STEPS FOR SUBMITTING MANUSCRIPTS
https://www.wjgnet.com/bpg/GerInfo/239

ONLINE SUBMISSION
https://www.f6publishing.com

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 482-494

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.482

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

REVIEW

Hepatitis E in immunocompromised individuals

Konstantinos Damiris, Mohamad Aghaie Meybodi, Mumtaz Niazi, Nikolaos Pyrsopoulos

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A, A
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Ferraioli G, Janczewska E

Received: October 12, 2021
Peer-review started: October 12, 2021
First decision: December 2, 2021
Revised: December 15, 2021
Accepted: February 12, 2022
Article in press: February 12, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Konstantinos Damiris, Mohamad Aghaie Meybodi, Department of Medicine, Rutgers - New Jersey Medical School, Newark, NJ 07103, United States

Mumtaz Niazi, Nikolaos Pyrsopoulos, Department of Medicine - Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Rutgers - New Jersey Medical School, Newark, NJ 07103, United States

Corresponding author: Konstantinos Damiris, DO, MS, Doctor, Department of Medicine, Rutgers - New Jersey Medical School, 150 Bergen Street, Newark, NJ 07103, United States. kd705@njms.rutgers.edu

Abstract

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) originally identified as a cause of acute icteric hepatitis in developing countries has grown to be a cause of zoonotic viral hepatitis in developed countries such as the United States. While there are eight identified genotypes to date, genotype 1 (HEV1), HEV2, HEV3, HEV4 are the most common to infect humans. HEV1 and HEV2 are most common in developing countries including Latina America, Africa and Asia, and are commonly transmitted through contaminated water supplies leading to regional outbreaks. In contrast HEV3 and HEV4 circulate freely in many mammalian animals and can lead to occasional transmission to humans through fecal contamination or consumption of undercooked meat. The incidence and prevalence of HEV in the United States is undetermined given the absence of FDA approved serological assays and the lack of commercially available testing. In majority of cases, HEV infection is a self-limiting hepatitis requiring only symptomatic treatment. However, this is not the case in immunocompromised individuals, including those that have undergone solid organ or stem cell transplantation. In this subset of patients, chronic infection can be life threatening as hepatic insult can lead to inflammation and fibrosis with subsequent cirrhosis and death. The need for re-transplantation as a result of post-transplant hepatitis is of great concern. In addition, there have been many reported incidents of extrahepatic manifestations, for which the exact mechanisms remain to be elucidated. The cornerstone of treatment in immunocompromised solid organ transplant recipients is reduction of immunosuppressive therapies, while attempting to minimize the risk of organ rejection. Subsequent treatment options include ribavirin, and pegylated interferon alpha in those who have demonstrated ribavirin resistance. Further investigation assessing safety and efficacy of anti-viral therapy is imperative given the rising global health burden. Given this concern, vaccination has been approved in China with other investigations underway throughout the world. In this review we introduce the epidemiology, diagnosis, clinical manifestations, and treatment of HEV, with emphasis on immunocompromised individuals in the United States.

Key Words: Hepatitis E; Hepatitis E virus; Chronic hepatitis; Acute hepatitis; Immunocompromised; Liver transplant

Core Tip: Hepatitis E Virus is a leading cause of acute icteric hepatitis in developing countries. Despite being self- limiting in most cases, immunocompromised individuals are at a risk of chronic hepatitis, which can be life threatening. Hallmark of treatment includes reduction of immunosuppressive therapies followed by possible need of anti-viral therapy, which has shown to be ineffective.

Citation: Damiris K, Aghaie Meybodi M, Niazi M, Pyrsopoulos N. Hepatitis E in immunocompromised individuals. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 482-494
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/482.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.482

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis E Virus (HEV) was first reported as a non-A, non-B hepatitis in 1980 (another distinct type from post transfusion non-A, non B hepatitis), causing epidemic water-borne acute hepatitis[1]. Although significant improvements have occurred regarding virology, epidemiology, diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of hepatitis E, it is still the leading cause of acute icteric hepatitis in developing countries[2]. Previously, HEV was known as epidemic viral hepatitis in endemic areas. Currently, it is also identified as a zoonotic viral hepatitis in developed countries[3]. Blood transfusions and tissue transplantation are recognized as new routes for virus transmission worldwide[4].

HEV can cause a wide range of clinical manifestations, including acute hepatitis that can be self-resolving, chronic hepatitis (mostly in immunocompromised patients), and extrahepatic manifestations including renal and neurologic symptoms and complications[3]. Despite the development of several serological tests, screening and diagnosis of HEV is still challenging. In most cases, HEV infection is a self-limiting disease despite any treatment. Treatment of acute HEV at times can be imperative, especially in immunocompromised patients, as it can decrease the risk of chronic hepatitis, cirrhosis, and subsequently death[5]. A potentially effective vaccination strategy has been developed for HEV prevention, altering the incidence in Asian countries[6]. The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends consideration of vaccination for high-risk patients such as pregnant women[7]. In this review we summarize the epidemiology of Hepatitis E in the United States, review the clinical manifestations and treatment options with emphasis on their implications in immunocompromised individuals.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

HEV is one of the leading causes of viral-induced acute liver failure worldwide[8]. HEV1, HEV2, HEV3, and HEV4 are the main genotypes which have clinical implications on humans. Genotypes 1 and 2 cause infection in hyperendemic areas such as Asia, Africa, Mexico, and the Middle East (Table 1). Humans are the main reservoir for these genotypes and contamination of drinking water supplies with human feces is the main route of transmission. Consequently, endemics can emerge after heavy rainfall and flooding[9,10]. Transmission through blood transfusion[11] and vertical transmission[12] are well documented for sporadic infection worldwide.

HEV3 and HEV4 are the most prevalent genotypes in industrialized countries[13]. In contrast to HEV1 and HEV2, genotypes 3 and 4 can infect both humans and animals. Pigs, wild boars, and deer are identified as the reservoirs for these genotypes[14]. Transmission by consuming raw or undercooked meat, or close contact with the infected animal is responsible for autochthonous infection[15,16]. There is only one case report of HEV7 infection in humans who regularly consumed camel meat and milk in the United Arab Emirates[17].

Epidemiology of HEV in the United States

The precise incidence and prevalence of HEV infection in the United States is undetermined. HEV is not amongst the nationally notifiable diseases leaving systematic collection, analysis, and evaluation of HEV data a challenge. The absence of sensitive and specific FDA-approved serology assays poses another obstacle in assessing the incidence of HEV in the United States[18]. The lack of commercially available tests also leads to misdiagnosed HEV infection at alarming rates. Reviewing several national drug-

Table 1 Hepatitis E epidemiology according to genotypes

	HEV1, HEV2	HEV3, HEV4
Geography	Developing countries (Asia, Africa, and South America)	Developed countries (Europe, United states, Japan, and Hong Kong)
Disease pattern	Endemic	Sporadic
Seasonal pattern	Yes	No
Reservoir	Only human	Animals (Pigs, wild boars, deer)
Transmission	Fecal-oral	Food-born, blood products, transplantation
Age	More common among young adult	More common among older adults
Risk factor	Chronic liver disease, pregnancy	Chronic liver disease, immunocompromised
Safety measure	Clean water, sanitation, and hygiene	Avoid contact with high-risk animals, cook meat adequately
Chronic infection	Not reported	In immunocompromised patients.

HEV1: Hepatitis E virus genotype 1; HEV2: Hepatitis E virus genotype 2; HEV3: Hepatitis E virus genotype 3; HEV4: Hepatitis E virus genotype 4.

induced liver injuries (DILI) registries revealed HEV infection as the true cause of liver injury in patients initially diagnosed with DILI[19].

National Inpatient Sample (NIS) data from Healthcare Cost and Utilization Project showed the rate of hospitalization due to hepatitis E increased from 3.7 per 10 million in 2010 to 6.4 per 10 million in 2015. Although hospitalization is still low in the United States, the increasing rate is worrisome[20]. The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) data also demonstrated an increase in HEV seropositivity (IgG/IgM) from 5% in 2013-2014 to 7.7% in 2015-2016. Simultaneously, the rate of IgM seropositivity (recent infection) almost doubled in US-born individuals[21]. The multivariate logistic regression model identified a strong association of HEV seropositivity with aging, female gender, and non-Hispanic Asian ethnicities[21]. Testing serum samples from 681 adult Americans with acute liver failure (ALF) revealed a low rate of acute HEV infection (0.04%) in this population. However, the rate of positive anti-HEV IgG (signifying prior exposure) was significantly higher in the ALF patients than in the general US population[22].

HEV TRANSMISSION

All autochthonous HEV infections detected in the United States are caused by HEV genotype 3. Caitlin reported the risk of anti-HEV seropositivity in people who consumed undercooked meat was 12.9 times higher than the general population. This observation confirmed undercooked meat as a route of zoonotic HEV infection in the US[23]. In one study, serum samples from pigs at 25 slaughterhouses in 10 states were tested for HEV infection. HEV RNA and anti-HEV seropositivity was 6.3% and 40%, respectively. Blood of HEV RNA-positive pigs potentially can contaminate slaughterhouses' supply chains, making it a key source of infection control[24]. A recent study suggested consuming self-grown food as another possible source for zoonotic HEV infection[25].

Ticehurst *et al*[26] reported the possible HEV transmission through blood transfusion for the first time in the United States. A random sample from 5040 blood donations showed 11.4% and 1.8% positive anti-HEV IgG and anti-HEV IgM, respectively[27]. Stramer *et al*[28] reported two positive HEV RNA among 18829 samples of blood donated from six geographic regions. Despite low contamination rates, they suggested providing HEV-negative blood for patients at risk of developing hepatitis, such as severely immunosuppressed patients. Among 128,020 samples of plasma from 27 states, the prevalence of HEV RNA positivity was reported at 0.002%. Therefore, routine screening for HEV contamination in plasma donation was not suggested[29]. Several countries are considering HEV screening in blood donors. Delage *et al*[30]evaluated cost-benefit and the quantitative risk of blood donation screening for HEV infection in the United States. Due to the lower rate of HEV in North America, HEV blood donation screening will be more expensive than in other countries, and have minimal clinical benefits.

HEV IN IMMUNOCOMPROMISED

For the first time in the US, Kuniholm *et al*[31] reported a chronic HEV infection in an HIV-positive patient. They also confirmed that chronic infection could persevere even with a CD4+ count > 200 cells/mm^3[31]. Assessing 311 patients who received allografts revealed 4% posttransplant HEV

infection. Although no chronic infection was reported, developing posttransplant infection was associated with graft rejection[32]. A recent study on 145 post-liver transplant patients with a history of hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection showed 6 (4.1%) patients developing anti-HEV IgM antibodies in 5 years. All samples were negative for HEV RNA. Treatment of HCV with Interferon and Ribavirin may contribute in clearance of HEV infection[33].

CLINICAL MANIFESTATIONS

Acute icteric hepatitis

The majority of acute HEV infections are asymptomatic or can cause minor nonspecific systemic illness, that is often self-limiting. It has been estimated that approximately 5-30% of patients acutely infected go on to develop acute icteric hepatitis[34]. Acute icteric hepatitis is characterized by malaise, fever, body aches, anorexia, nausea and vomiting, which occurs for about a one-week period of time classified as the prodromal phase. Following the prodromal phase, patients enter the icteric phase characterized by jaundice and dark urine, which can be coupled with a marked increase in aminotransferases (greater than 8-10 time the upper limit of normal) and a variable degree of hyperbilirubinemia[35]. These symptoms collectively resolve over the course of a few days to weeks, marking the convalescent phase.

In a small percentage of patients, the acute icteric phase can progress to acute liver failure (ALF) or acute on chronic liver failure (ACLF) in those with underlying chronic liver disease[36]. Pregnant women are of particular risk to developing ALF during their second and third trimester, with mortality rate of nearly 25% as a result of hepatic failure or obstetric complications[37]. ACLF is defined by the European Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (EASL) as acute deterioration of pre-existing chronic liver disease usually related to a precipitating event and is associated with increased 28-day mortality due to multi-system organ failure[38]. Typical manifestations include acute worsening of liver function with complications such as worsening ascites, hepatic encephalopathy or coagulopathy[36]. The impact of acute HEV infection in patients with chronic liver disease in the United States has been reported. In a study conducted by Kyvernitakis *et al*[39], 11% of 115 patients with chronic HCV infection diagnosed with cancer were positive for HEV IgG. Seropositivity was significantly associated with older age, place of birth outside the United States, cirrhosis, and history of reused needles/syringes during vaccination[39]. In another study, HEV related ALF was assessed in 681 adults with ALF by testing for anti HEV IgM, IgG and HEV-RNA. A total of three men demonstrated repeatedly detectable anti HEV IgM, but negative HEV RNA, signifying rarity of acute HEV infection in ALF patients (0.4%). 43.4% of ALF patients tested positive for anti HEV IgG, with prevalence being highest from the Midwest and in those of older age[22]. There has also been documentation of a fatal hepatic decompensation caused by HEV4 in an orthotopic liver transplant recipient following a prolonged visit to Hong Kong[40]. In another prospective study in the United States, HEV infection was noted to contribute to a small but important percentage of cases of acute liver injury that was initially suspected to be caused by drug induced liver injury[41].

Chronic HEV in immunocompromised individuals

Chronic HEV infection in solid organ transplant (SOT) recipients can be defined as HEV replication (viremia) present for more than 3 mo after the onset of infection[42]. Chronic infection was initially reported by Kamar *et al*[43] in 2008, when patients who received kidney or liver transplants developed a persistent increase in aminotransferase levels, evidence of histological activity, and liver fibrosis during follow-up after acute HEV. It has been suggested that up to 66% of SOT recipients exposed to HEV go on to develop chronic infection, which is mostly asymptomatic but can most commonly include fatigue and or mild to moderate aminotransferase rise, diarrhea and arthralgias[44]. Chronic infection has been most commonly reported with HEV3 infection[45] however, there have been reports of persistent hepatitis when infected with HEV4[46].

Prevalence of post liver transplant HEV infection in non-endemic regions has been estimated to be between 1% and 2%[47]. Chronic HEV infection has been shown to cause structural injury to the liver including formation of nodules, fibrotic changes and subsequent cirrhosis[48], with reports that approximately 10% of those who develop chronic infection progress to cirrhosis within 2-5 years[49]. Injury caused by viral infection including inflammation has been shown to regress following the clearance of HEV[50]. In persons with prior liver transplantation, chronic infection can result in post-transplant hepatitis, rapid progression to cirrhosis and liver failure, and even the need for re-transplantation which can lead to recurrence of HEV infection in the newly transplanted liver[51].

The effects of chronic HEV can be seen beyond those with SOT, affecting various immunocompromised individuals. Chronic infection has been reported in an individual with non-Hodgkin's lymphoma undergoing treatment[52], and in stem cell transplant recipients on immunosuppression [53]. International studies have demonstrated significantly greater seroprevalence of IgG and IgM antibodies in cancer patients[54], and reported self-resolving acute infection, and even the need for ribavirin treatment in patients with gynecological malignancies treated with chemotherapy[55]. Such findings should spark further investigation when treating cancer patients with elevated transaminases.

Chronic infection has also been seen in patients with human immunodeficiency virus with low CD4+ cell count of less than 200[56,57]. Rheumatological patients receiving mild immunosuppressive treatments are also at increased risk of chronic infection[58].

Extrahepatic manifestations

Infection with HEV can lead to a variety of extrahepatic manifestations including neurological, hematological, renal, and other immune-mediated manifestations. The exact mechanism remains to be elucidated, and suggestions include cross reactions between viral epitopes and self-antigens in tissues, and possible viral replication in other non-hepatic tissues[59].

Neurological manifestations are the most commonly encountered, and include Guillain- Barré syndrome (GBS), neuralgic amyotrophy (NA), encephalitis, myelitis, myositis, vestibular neuritis, peripheral neuritis, and Bell's palsy[60]. In a European study, 16.5% of HEV infected patients reported neurological manifestation, which were more common in immunocompetent patients compared to immunosuppressed individuals (22.6% *vs* 3.2%, $P < 0.001$)[61]. GBS can occur both after acute or chronic infection with various HEV genotypes and is the most frequently described extrahepatic manifestation [62]. In a case- control study from the Netherlands comparing GBS patients to healthy controls, the prevalence acute HEV was higher in GBS patients compared to controls (5% *vs* 0.5%)[63]. Similar manifestations were seen in a study from the United Kingdom and France, in which more than 5% of those infected with HEV3 developed neurological complications during follow-up[64]. NA is an acute and painful neuropathy in the upper extremity characterized by rapid multifocal motor weakness and sensory loss, followed by atrophy[65]. A cohort study from the United Kingdom and the Netherlands demonstrated that 10% of patients with NA had acute hepatitis E[66]. Central nervous system infections including encephalitis and meningitis have been described, with HEV RNA being present in the serum and cerebrospinal fluid in immunosuppressed individuals after SOT[62]. It remains unknown if these neurological manifestations are a result of immune mediated molecular mimicry or direct cytopathic effects of the virus[36]. Based on findings from a variety of studies, it is recommended that clinicians consider infection with HEV as a culprit when encountering patients with neurological disorders and concomitant elevations in liver enzymes[67].

Renal manifestations of HEV include kidney injury, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis and cryoglobulinemia. In a retrospective study assessing kidney function and histology in SOT recipients with HEV3 infection, there was a statistically significant decrease in glomerular filtration rate during infection (-5L/min, $P = 0.04$). Histological examination of those with high proteinuria and decreased GFR during both the acute and chronic phase of infection demonstrated relapse of IgA nephropathy, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, and the majority of patients having cryoglobulinemia that resolved after clearance of HEV[68]. The relationship between cryoglobulinemia and HEV infection remains unclear. In a study assessing SOT recipients infected with HEV, the prevalence of cryoglobulinemia was increased during chronic infection (52.9%) compared to the acute phase of infection (36.4%) and HEV negative SOT recipients (23.6%, $P < 0.01$); also identifying HEV as a predictive factor for cryoglobulinemia (odds ratio 2.3)[69]. Although the exact mechanism is unknown, it is possible that immune complex deposits may play a critical role, as seen in Hepatitis C infection where HCV antigen, anti-HCV IgG antibodies and rheumatoid factor deposit in glomeruli[70]

Over the years many hematological manifestations from HEV infection have been reported. One such manifestation is hemolytic anemia secondary to glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, leading to oxidative stress in red blood cells during viral hepatitis infection. Several cases have been documented, and there have also been reports of renal failure secondary to renal tubule obstruction by hemo -globin and bilirubin during hemolysis incited by acute HEV[71]. As in other hepatotropic viruses such as cytomegalovirus, hepatitis A virus and hepatitis B virus; there have been reports of autoimmune hemolytic anemia secondary to infection with hepatitis E[72]. Hepatitis associated aplastic anemia, is a life-threatening variant of aplastic anemia in which pancytopenia occurs two to three months after hepatitis[73]. Cases of HEV related aplastic anemia have been reported, leading to recovery following treatment, and even death[74,75]. A variety of different mechanisms leading to thrombocytopenia secondary to hepatotropic viruses have been postulated including bone marrow suppression and development of anti-platelet antibodies and platelet associated immune complexes[76]. There have been several reports of HEV causing thrombocytopenia which were either self-limited or required transfusion or intravenous globulin and corticosteroid administration[77,78]. Several extrahepatic manifestations have been documented for which the pathophysiology remains unclear. A complete list of these manifestations across various organs can be seen in (Table 2).

DIAGNOSIS

The incubation period of HEV is approximately 2 to 6 wk and precedes the IgM response detected during the same time that liver enzyme abnormalities arise. Diagnosis of HEV can be accomplished either directly by detecting the HEV RNA or capsid antigen in the blood and other body fluids or indirectly by detecting anti-HEV antibodies in infected individuals' serum[79]. The detection of anti-

Table 2 Extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis E viral infection

Organ/System	Manifestation
Neurological	Guillain- Barré syndrome, Bell's palsy, myelitis, peripheral neuropathy, neuralgic amyotrophy, encephalitis, meningitis vestibular neuritis, mononeuritis multiplex, seizure, pseudotumor cerebri, oculomotor palsy, polyradiculoneuropathy
Hematological	Thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, aplastic anemia, hemophagocytic syndrome, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, Cutaneous T cell lymphoproliferative disorder, monoclonal gammopathy of uncertain significance
Cardiovascular	Myocarditis, Henoch-Schönlein purpura
Renal	Reduction in glomerular filtration rate, IgA nephropathy, cryoglobulinemia, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, membranous glomerulonephritis
Musculoskeletal	Myositis, polyarthritis
Thyroid	Autoimmune thyroiditis, subacute thyroiditis
Pancreas	Acute pancreatitis

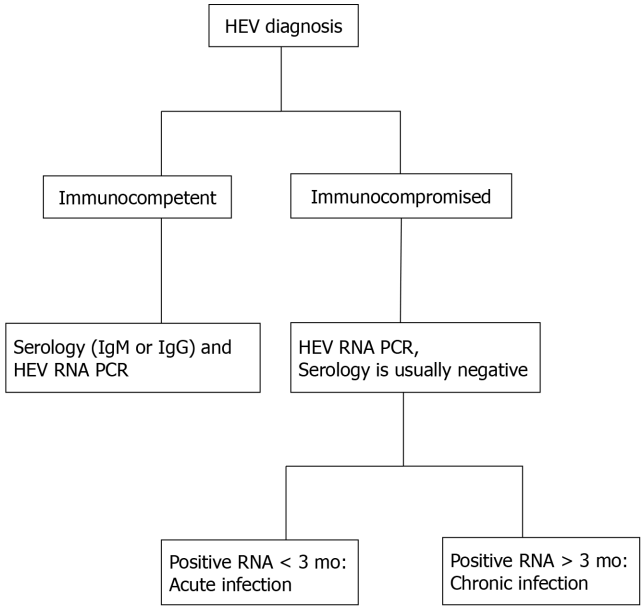
HEV IgM antibody is an important marker of acute viral infection, and has a short positivity mostly ranging from 3-4 mo, but can be present for up to one year[36]. When testing for anti-HEV IgM with conventional assays and commercially available immunohistochemistry assays, sensitivity has been reported to be > 97% in immunocompetent patients and 80-85% for immunocompromised patients with > 99.5% specificity[80,81]. It is important to consider additional testing for RNA presence in immunocompromised individuals due to the poor antibody response exhibited by this population[13]. IgG antibody response is delayed and long lasting with persistence of several years, although the exact duration remains uncertain. In order to detect these antibodies, enzyme immunoassays are utilized with recombinant ORF2 and/or ORF3 proteins from HEV1 strains, which also cross react with other genotypes, however assay detection varies considerably[82]. Use of commercially available assays have limited detection which vary between 0.25 and 2.5 WHO units per ml, and the determination of anti-HEV IgG concentration can be used to estimate reinfection after natural infection or immunization[79]. It has been suggested that immunocompromised patients with anti-HEV IgG concentration < 7 WHO units per ml can become reinfected with increased risk of developing chronic hepatitis[83]. In addition, it has been suggested that anti-HEV IgG titers > 2.5 units per ml are protective following vaccination [84].

The detection and quantification of HEV RNA in blood and other bodily secretions is the gold standard of detecting both acute and chronic active HEV infection, adding benefit to diagnosis of infection in immunocompromised individuals with inherent poor immunologic response[36] (Figure 1). Other situations in which RNA detection is of great utility includes donor screening, diagnosis of chronic HEV infection, and assessing response to antiviral therapy[85]. HEV RNA becomes detectable during the incubation period and can be present in the blood for about 4 wk and 6 wk in feces[81]. Given the narrow window of detectable RNA, an undetectable HEV RNA does not exclude recent infection, particularly when patients present late in their illness[86]. Persistence of RNA for at least 3 mo defines chronic infection[42]. Available types of nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs) include reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), real time RT-PCR, and reverse transcription loop-mediated isothermal amplification, with varying sensitivity in HEV RNA detection[36]. In response to varying sensitivities the World Health Organization (WHO) has developed the international standard and international reference panel for HEV1, HEV2, HEV3, and HEV4, allowing comparison of results obtained from different NAATs with reports using a common unit, the international unit (IU). NAATs detect HEV RNA targets, particularly conserved domains (ORF2 and ORF3 overlap region), of HEV genotypes 1-4[87].

Viral antigens are present in the blood and liver during the early phase of acute hepatitis persisting longer in chronic infection and can be diagnosed using sandwich enzyme immunoassays detecting HEV capsid antigen derived from ORF2[88]. HEV antigen assays have excellent specificity, however sensitivity is a major concern ranging from 40% to 91%[89]. It has been shown that HEV antigen may remain present for months following clearance of chronic HEV infection, suggesting the presence of antigen does not necessarily indicate presence of virions[90]. Given the simplicity, lesser cost and faster results when compared to HEV RNA detection, HEV capsid testing may become an alternative in diagnosis, however the role of HEV antigen diagnosis is yet to be determined[36,79].

TREATMENT

Unlike in most immunocompetent individuals who require no specific treatment for acute HEV infection, chronic infection in immunocompromised hosts (*i.e.*, solid organ transplant recipients) requires treatment to avoid rapid progression to cirrhosis or even death[5]. In SOT recipients, reduction



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.482

Figure 1 Diagnosis of hepatitis E virus in immunocompetent *vs* immunocompromised patients. HEV: Hepatitis E virus; PCR: Polymerase chain reaction.

of immunosuppressive therapies is considered the first line therapeutic option, with approximately one third of patients achieving viral clearance after dose reduction[44,50]. However, it is important to remember that reducing immunosuppression can lead to increased risk of organ rejection.

In a large retrospective multicenter case series, Kamar *et al*[42] assessed the efficacy of ribavirin in SOT recipients diagnosed with chronic hepatitis E and HEV viremia. A total of 59 (54 confirmed HEV genotype 3) patients were included of which 37 had received kidney transplants, 10 had liver transplants, 5 heart transplants, 5 combined kidney and pancreas transplants, and 2 patients had undergone lung transplantation. Median dosing of ribavirin was 600 mg/day for a median duration of 3 mo. Following treatment 95% of patients exhibited clearance of HEV and 78% exhibited sustained virological response (SVR). Although 60% of patients unfortunately developed recurrence, 40% of these individuals were able reach SVR following a prolonged treatment course of an additional 6 mo. Adverse events included anemia, requiring dose reduction in 29% of patients, and the use of erythropoietin and blood transfusion[91]. A more recent study conducted by Kamar *et al*[42], retrospectively investigated 30 European centers to assess outcomes of ribavirin therapy in 255 SOT recipients with chronic HEV3. 81% of patients achieved SVR with initial ribavirin treatment (median 600 mg/day for 3 mo), while 90% were able to achieve SVR following an additional course of treatment after initially failing to meet SVR. Interestingly it was also noted that an increased lymphocyte count at the initiation of treatment was a positive predictive factor of SVR, while poor hematological tolerance requiring dose reduction was associated with relapse after completion of therapy[92].

Treatment of chronic HEV in immunosuppressed individuals who have received SOT poses a challenge following lack of response to ribavirin. A final option includes treatment with pegylated interferon alpha (PEG-IFNa), which has been shown to be effective following liver transplantation. In a study of three post liver transplant patients, a three-month course of PEG-IFNa resulted in an antiviral response with HEV clearance was obtained in two of the study participants[93]. Similar findings were noted by Haagsma *et al*[94] who demonstrated efficacy of PEG-IFNa when reduction of immunosuppressive medications was not adequate. However, it is important to note that PEG-IFNa is contraindicated in lung, heart, renal and pancreas transplant recipients due to the risk of organ rejection[95].

Treatment of HEV in ribavirin resistant infections can be a challenge. Approval of sofosbuvir revolutionized the treatment of chronic hepatitis C and the role of sofosbuvir in the treatment of HEV has also been investigated. Based on *in vitro* studies, sofosbuvir has been considered as a treatment for ribavirin resistant HEV alone or synergistically with ribavirin[96]. Effectiveness of sofosbuvir has been shown to lead to viral clearance in acute HEV when used in combination with ribavirin[97] and for the treatment of refractory HEV in an individual following kidney transplantation[98]. However, other studies have demonstrated inability to reach SVR when treated with combination therapy in a patient with chronic HEV (genotype 3) following multivisceral organ transplantation[99]. A recent case series of 3 SOT recipients treated with combination of sofosbuvir and ribavirin following failed ribavirin monotherapy (inability to achieve SVR) displayed failure of complete elimination of HEV. RNA plasma levels returned to pretreatment levels following cessation of therapy, suggesting antiviral activity of combination therapy[100]. Monotherapy with sofosbuvir has also been shown to be ineffective with

high rates of relapse following only partial response in individuals with chronic HEV[101]. To date none of the mentioned drugs have been approved in the treatment of HEV, and further large-scale studies are indicated to assess safety and efficacy, alone or in combination. Although many clinical trials are actively investigating efficacy of vaccine prevention, there is limited investigation on HEV treatment (clinicaltrials.gov).

VACCINE

Development of a safe and efficacious vaccine has shined light on the prevention of HEV and subsequent worldwide morbidity and mortality. Zhu *et al*[102] published results of a randomized, double blind phase 3 trial of recombinant HEV vaccine (HEV 239: Hecolin®) administered in 3 doses at 0,1 and 6 mo in China. Results demonstrated a near 100% efficacy, with no serious adverse effects at 12 mo follow-up after vaccine administration[102]. Long term efficacy of up to 4.5 years displayed continuous efficacy of 87%, and cross protective efficacy between genotype HEV1 and HEV4 which are prevalent in China[103]. Currently a large, cluster-randomized, blinded trial (NCT02759991) is investigating the effectiveness of Hecolin in pregnant women in Bangladesh[104]. It has been recommended that vaccination against HEV in certain high-risk individuals such as those who are immunocompromised, have chronic liver disease, pregnant women in endemic areas, and those in hyperendemic parts of the world[81]. Further studies are urgently needed to investigate vaccine efficacy toward other prevalent genotypes and to assess safety and efficacy in those with aforementioned underlying chronic medical conditions prior to being garnered approval beyond China. Recently a single investigation was completed in the United States, assessing Hecolin® safety, reactogenicity and immunogenicity in healthy adults (NCT03827395), for which we eagerly await results.

CONCLUSION

Hepatitis E infection is a major global health burden that leads to extensive morbidity and mortality, particularly in developing countries. While most cases of acute HEV infection are self-limiting and only require symptomatic treatment, progression to chronic disease can be fatal. Individuals particularly at risk for chronic infection include solid organ transplant recipients and those with other immunosuppressive conditions such as HIV and rheumatological conditions. Elevation in liver enzymes in the immunosuppressed should prompt urgent serological testing coupled with HEV RNA detection, given inherent poor immunological response. The initial hallmark to treatment is the reduction of immunosuppressive therapies to allow physiological defense and viral clearance. Subsequent treatment options include ribavirin; however, resistance poses a challenge as other treatment options can be harmful to SOT recipients. While vaccine development has proven to be effective, it is imperative that we continue to assure clean drinking water and safe food practices worldwide. Further clinical investigations are essential in order to help develop safe and efficacious viral treatments that can save millions of lives worldwide.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Damiris K, Aghaie Meybodi M, Niazi M and Pyrsopoulos N equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision/editing; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors do not have any conflicts of interest relevant to this article.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Konstantinos Damiris 0000-0001-9972-740X; Mohamad Aghaie Meybodi 0000-0002-5321-688X; Mumtaz Niazi 0000-0002-4740-5131; Nikolaos Pyrsopoulos 0000-0002-6950-8174.

S-Editor: Wang LL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Wang LL

REFERENCES

1 **Khuroo MS**. Study of an epidemic of non-A, non-B hepatitis. Possibility of another human hepatitis virus distinct from post-transfusion non-A, non-B type. *Am J Med* 1980; **68**: 818-824 [PMID: 6770682 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(80)90200-4]

2 **Lozano R**, Naghavi M, Foreman K, Lim S, Shibuya K, Aboyans V, Abraham J, Adair T, Aggarwal R, Ahn SY, Alvarado M, Anderson HR, Anderson LM, Andrews KG, Atkinson C, Baddour LM, Barker-Collo S, Bartels DH, Bell ML, Benjamin EJ, Bennett D, Bhalla K, Bikbov B, Bin Abdulhak A, Birbeck G, Blyth F, Bolliger I, Boufous S, Bucello C, Burch M, Burney P, Carapetis J, Chen H, Chou D, Chugh SS, Coffeng LE, Colan SD, Colquhoun S, Colson KE, Condon J, Connor MD, Cooper LT, Corriere M, Cortinovis M, de Vaccaro KC, Couser W, Cowie BC, Criqui MH, Cross M, Dabhadkar KC, Dahodwala N, De Leo D, Degenhardt L, Delossantos A, Denenberg J, Des Jarlais DC, Dharmaratne SD, Dorsey ER, Driscoll T, Duber H, Ebel B, Erwin PJ, Espindola P, Ezzati M, Feigin V, Flaxman AD, Forouzanfar MH, Fowkes FG, Franklin R, Fransen M, Freeman MK, Gabriel SE, Gakidou E, Gaspari F, Gillum RF, Gonzalez-Medina D, Halasa YA, Haring D, Harrison JE, Havmoeller R, Hay RJ, Hoen B, Hotez PJ, Hoy D, Jacobsen KH, James SL, Jasrasaria R, Jayaraman S, Johns N, Karthikeyan G, Kassebaum N, Keren A, Khoo JP, Knowlton LM, Kobusingye O, Koranteng A, Krishnamurthi R, Lipnick M, Lipshultz SE, Ohno SL, Mabweijano J, MacIntyre MF, Mallinger L, March L, Marks GB, Marks R, Matsumori A, Matzopoulos R, Mayosi BM, McAnulty JH, McDermott MM, McGrath J, Mensah GA, Merriman TR, Michaud C, Miller M, Miller TR, Mock C, Mocumbi AO, Mokdad AA, Moran A, Mulholland K, Nair MN, Naldi L, Narayan KM, Nasseri K, Norman P, O'Donnell M, Omer SB, Ortblad K, Osborne R, Ozgediz D, Pahari B, Pandian JD, Rivero AP, Padilla RP, Perez-Ruiz F, Perico N, Phillips D, Pierce K, Pope CA 3rd, Porrini E, Pourmalek F, Raju M, Ranganathan D, Rehm JT, Rein DB, Remuzzi G, Rivara FP, Roberts T, De León FR, Rosenfeld LC, Rushton L, Sacco RL, Salomon JA, Sampson U, Sanman E, Schwebel DC, Segui-Gomez M, Shepard DS, Singh D, Singleton J, Sliwa K, Smith E, Steer A, Taylor JA, Thomas B, Tleyjeh IM, Towbin JA, Truelsen T, Undurraga EA, Venketasubramanian N, Vijayakumar L, Vos T, Wagner GR, Wang M, Wang W, Watt K, Weinstock MA, Weintraub R, Wilkinson JD, Woolf AD, Wulf S, Yeh PH, Yip P, Zabetian A, Zheng ZJ, Lopez AD, Murray CJ, AlMazroa MA, Memish ZA. Global and regional mortality from 235 causes of death for 20 age groups in 1990 and 2010: a systematic analysis for the Global Burden of Disease Study 2010. *Lancet* 2012; **380**: 2095-2128 [PMID: 23245604 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(12)61728-0]

3 **Pischke S**, Hartl J, Pas SD, Lohse AW, Jacobs BC, Van der Eijk AA. Hepatitis E virus: Infection beyond the liver? *J Hepatol* 2017; **66**: 1082-1095 [PMID: 27913223 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.12.008]

4 **Boxall E**, Herborn A, Kochethu G, Pratt G, Adams D, Ijaz S, Teo CG. Transfusion-transmitted hepatitis E in a 'nonhyperendemic' country. *Transfus Med* 2006; **16**: 79-83 [PMID: 16623913 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-3148.2006.00652.x]

5 **Guerra JAAA**, Kampa KC, Morsoletto DGB, Junior AP, Ivantes CAP. Hepatitis E: A Literature Review. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2017; **5**: 376-383 [PMID: 29226104 DOI: 10.14218/jcth.2017.00012]

6 **Koyuncu A**, Mapemba D, Ciglenecki I, Gurley ES, Azman AS. Setting a Course for Preventing Hepatitis E in Low and Lower-Middle-Income Countries: A Systematic Review of Burden and Risk Factors. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2021; **8**: ofab178 [PMID: 34113684 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofab178]

7 **WHO**. Hepatitis E vaccine: WHO position paper, May 2015--Recommendations. *Vaccine* 2016; **34**: 304-305 [PMID: 26232546 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.07.056]

8 **Patterson J**, Hussey HS, Silal S, Goddard L, Setshedi M, Spearman W, Hussey GD, Kagina BM, Muloiwa R. Systematic review of the global epidemiology of viral-induced acute liver failure. *BMJ Open* 2020; **10**: e037473 [PMID: 32690747 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2020-037473]

9 **Naik SR**, Aggarwal R, Salunke PN, Mehrotra NN. A large waterborne viral hepatitis E epidemic in Kanpur, India. *Bull World Health Organ* 1992; **70**: 597-604 [PMID: 1464145]

10 **VISWANATHAN R**. A review of the literature on the epidemiology of infectious hepatitis. *Indian J Med Res* 1957; **45**: 145-155 [PMID: 13438550]

11 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Yattoo GN. Hepatitis E virus infection may be transmitted through blood transfusions in an endemic area. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2004; **19**: 778-784 [PMID: 15209625 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2004.03437.x]

12 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Khuroo MS. Clinical course and duration of viremia in vertically transmitted hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection in babies born to HEV-infected mothers. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 519-523 [PMID: 19228284 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01101.x]

13 **Khuroo MS**, Khuroo MS, Khuroo NS. Hepatitis E: Discovery, global impact, control and cure. *World J Gastroenterol* 2016; **22**: 7030-7045 [PMID: 27610014 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v22.i31.7030]

14 **Doceul V**, Bagdassarian E, Demange A, Pavio N. Zoonotic Hepatitis E Virus: Classification, Animal Reservoirs and Transmission Routes. *Viruses* 2016; **8** [PMID: 27706110 DOI: 10.3390/v8100270]

15 **Chaussade H**, Rigaud E, Allix A, Carpentier A, Touzé A, Delzescaux D, Choutet P, Garcia-Bonnet N, Coursaget P. Hepatitis E virus seroprevalence and risk factors for individuals in working contact with animals. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **58**: 504-508 [PMID: 24084601 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.08.030]

16 **Said B**, Ijaz S, Chand MA, Kafatos G, Tedder R, Morgan D. Hepatitis E virus in England and Wales: indigenous infection is associated with the consumption of processed pork products. *Epidemiol Infect* 2014; **142**: 1467-1475 [PMID: 24054519 DOI: 10.1017/S0950268813002318]

17 **Lee GH**, Tan BH, Teo EC, Lim SG, Dan YY, Wee A, Aw PP, Zhu Y, Hibberd ML, Tan CK, Purdy MA, Teo CG. Chronic Infection With Camelid Hepatitis E Virus in a Liver Transplant Recipient Who Regularly Consumes Camel Meat and Milk. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 355-7.e3 [PMID: 26551551 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.10.048]

18 **Hofmeister MG**, Foster MA, Teshale EH. Epidemiology and Transmission of Hepatitis A Virus and Hepatitis E Virus Infections in the United States. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med* 2019; **9** [PMID: 29712684 DOI: 10.1101/cshperspect.a033431]

19 **Grewal P**, Ahmad J. Beware of HCV and HEV in Patients with Suspected Drug-Induced Liver Injury. *Curr Hepatol Rep* 2018; **17**: 270-275 [PMID: 30766771 DOI: 10.1007/s11901-018-0410-1]

20 **Wasuwanich P**, Ingviya T, Thawillarp S, Teshale EH, Kamili S, Crino JP, Scheimann AO, Argani C, Karnsakul W.

Hepatitis E-Associated Hospitalizations in the United States: 2010-2015 and 2015-2017. *J Viral Hepat* 2021; **28**: 672-681 [PMID: 33306246 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.13458]

21 **Cangin C**, Focht B, Harris R, Strunk JA. Hepatitis E seroprevalence in the United States: Results for immunoglobulins IGG and IGM. *J Med Virol* 2019; **91**: 124-131 [PMID: 30168589 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.25299]

22 **Fontana RJ**, Engle RE, Scaglione S, Araya V, Shaikh O, Tillman H, Attar N, Purcell RH, Lee WM; US Acute Liver Failure Study Group. The role of hepatitis E virus infection in adult Americans with acute liver failure. *Hepatology* 2016; **64**: 1870-1880 [PMID: 27215797 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28649]

23 **Cossaboom CM**, Heffron CL, Cao D, Yugo DM, Houk-Miles AE, Lindsay DS, Zajac AM, Bertke AS, Elvinger F, Meng XJ. Risk factors and sources of foodborne hepatitis E virus infection in the United States. *J Med Virol* 2016; **88**: 1641-1645 [PMID: 26889628 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.24497]

24 **Sooryanarain H**, Heffron CL, Hill DE, Fredericks J, Rosenthal BM, Werre SR, Opriessnig T, Meng XJ. Hepatitis E Virus in Pigs from Slaughterhouses, United States, 2017-2019. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2020; **26**: 354-357 [PMID: 31961315 DOI: 10.3201/eid2602.191348]

25 **Diehl TM**, Adams DJ, Nylund CM. Ingesting Self-Grown Produce and Seropositivity for Hepatitis E in the United States. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2018; **2018**: 7980413 [PMID: 30116267 DOI: 10.1155/2018/7980413]

26 **Ticehurst JR**, Pisanic N, Forman MS, Ordak C, Heaney CD, Ong E, Linnen JM, Ness PM, Guo N, Shan H, Nelson KE. Probable transmission of hepatitis E virus (HEV) *via* transfusion in the United States. *Transfusion* 2019; **59**: 1024-1034 [PMID: 30702157 DOI: 10.1111/trf.15140]

27 **Zafrullah M**, Zhang X, Tran C, Nguyen M, Kamili S, Purdy MA, Stramer SL. Disparities in detection of antibodies against hepatitis E virus in US blood donor samples using commercial assays. *Transfusion* 2018; **58**: 1254-1263 [PMID: 29520800 DOI: 10.1111/trf.14553]

28 **Stramer SL**, Moritz ED, Foster GA, Ong E, Linnen JM, Hogema BM, Mak M, Chia CP, Dodd RY. Hepatitis E virus: seroprevalence and frequency of viral RNA detection among US blood donors. *Transfusion* 2016; **56**: 481-488 [PMID: 26434952 DOI: 10.1111/trf.13355]

29 **Roth NJ**, Schäfer W, Alexander R, Elliott K, Elliott-Browne W, Knowles J, Wenzel JJ, Simon TL. Low hepatitis E virus RNA prevalence in a large-scale survey of United States source plasma donors. *Transfusion* 2017; **57**: 2958-2964 [PMID: 28833188 DOI: 10.1111/trf.14285]

30 **Delage G**, Fearon M, Gregoire Y, Hogema BM, Custer B, Scalia V, Hawes G, Bernier F, Nguyen ML, Stramer SL. Hepatitis E Virus Infection in Blood Donors and Risk to Patients in the United States and Canada. *Transfus Med Rev* 2019; **33**: 139-145 [PMID: 31324552 DOI: 10.1016/j.tmrv.2019.05.017]

31 **Kuniholm MH**, Ong E, Hogema BM, Koppelman M, Anastos K, Peters MG, Seaberg EC, Chen Y, Nelson KE, Linnen JM. Acute and Chronic Hepatitis E Virus Infection in Human Immunodeficiency Virus-Infected U.S. Women. *Hepatology* 2016; **63**: 712-720 [PMID: 26646162 DOI: 10.1002/hep.28384]

32 **Sue PK**, Pisanic N, Heaney CD, Forman M, Valsamakis A, Jackson AM, Ticehurst JR, Montgomery RA, Schwarz KB, Nelson KE, Karnsakul W. Hepatitis E Virus Infection Among Solid Organ Transplant Recipients at a North American Transplant Center. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2016; **3**: ofw006 [PMID: 27014710 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofw006]

33 **Koning L**, Charlton MR, Pas SD, Heimbach JK, Osterhaus AD, Watt KD, Janssen HL, de Knegt RJ, van der Eijk AA. Prevalence and clinical consequences of Hepatitis E in patients who underwent liver transplantation for chronic Hepatitis C in the United States. *BMC Infect Dis* 2015; **15**: 371 [PMID: 26328802 DOI: 10.1186/s12879-015-1103-9]

34 **Lhomme S**, Marion O, Abravanel F, Izopet J, Kamar N. Clinical Manifestations, Pathogenesis and Treatment of Hepatitis E Virus Infections. *J Clin Med* 2020; **9** [PMID: 31991629 DOI: 10.3390/jcm9020331]

35 **Goel A**, Aggarwal R. Hepatitis E: Epidemiology, Clinical Course, Prevention, and Treatment. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 2020; **49**: 315-330 [PMID: 32389365 DOI: 10.1016/j.gtc.2020.01.011]

36 **Aslan AT**, Balaban HY. Hepatitis E virus: Epidemiology, diagnosis, clinical manifestations, and treatment. *World J Gastroenterol* 2020; **26**: 5543-5560 [PMID: 33071523 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v26.i37.5543]

37 **Navaneethan U**, Al Mohajer M, Shata MT. Hepatitis E and pregnancy: understanding the pathogenesis. *Liver Int* 2008; **28**: 1190-1199 [PMID: 18662274 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2008.01840.x]

38 **Moreau R**, Jalan R, Gines P, Pavesi M, Angeli P, Cordoba J, Durand F, Gustot T, Saliba F, Domenicali M, Gerbes A, Wendon J, Alessandria C, Laleman W, Zeuzem S, Trebicka J, Bernardi M, Arroyo V; CANONIC Study Investigators of the EASL–CLIF Consortium. Acute-on-chronic liver failure is a distinct syndrome that develops in patients with acute decompensation of cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1426-1437, 1437.e1 [PMID: 23474284 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.02.042]

39 **Kyvernitakis A**, Taremi M, Blechacz B, Hwang J, Jiang Y, Mahale P, Torres HA. Impact of hepatitis E virus seropositivity on chronic liver disease in cancer patients with hepatitis C virus infection. *Hepatol Res* 2015; **45**: 1146-1151 [PMID: 25488194 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.12460]

40 **Perumpail RB**, Ahmed A, Higgins JP, So SK, Cochran JL, Drobeniuc J, Mixson-Hayden TR, Teo CG. Fatal Accelerated Cirrhosis after Imported HEV Genotype 4 Infection. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2015; **21**: 1679-1681 [PMID: 26291424 DOI: 10.3201/eid2109.150300]

41 **Davern TJ**, Chalasani N, Fontana RJ, Hayashi PH, Protiva P, Kleiner DE, Engle RE, Nguyen H, Emerson SU, Purcell RH, Tillmann HL, Gu J, Serrano J, Hoofnagle JH; Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network (DILIN). Acute hepatitis E infection accounts for some cases of suspected drug-induced liver injury. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1665-72.e1 [PMID: 21855518 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.07.051]

42 **Kamar N**, Rostaing L, Legrand-Abravanel F, Izopet J. How should hepatitis E virus infection be defined in organ-transplant recipients? *Am J Transplant* 2013; **13**: 1935-1936 [PMID: 23659713 DOI: 10.1111/ajt.12253]

43 **Kamar N**, Selves J, Mansuy JM, Ouezzani L, Péron JM, Guitard J, Cointault O, Esposito L, Abravanel F, Danjoux M, Durand D, Vinel JP, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Hepatitis E virus and chronic hepatitis in organ-transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 811-817 [PMID: 18287603 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0706992]

44 **Kamar N**, Garrouste C, Haagsma EB, Garrigue V, Pischke S, Chauvet C, Dumortier J, Cannesson A, Cassuto-Viguier E, Thervet E, Conti F, Lebray P, Dalton HR, Santella R, Kanaan N, Essig M, Mousson C, Radenne S, Roque-Afonso AM,

Izopet J, Rostaing L. Factors associated with chronic hepatitis in patients with hepatitis E virus infection who have received solid organ transplants. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **140**: 1481-1489 [PMID: 21354150 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.02.050]

45 **Kamar N**, Bendall R, Legrand-Abravanel F, Xia NS, Ijaz S, Izopet J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 2477-2488 [PMID: 22549046 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(11)61849-7]

46 **Geng Y**, Zhang H, Huang W, J Harrison T, Geng K, Li Z, Wang Y. Persistent hepatitis e virus genotype 4 infection in a child with acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Hepat Mon* 2014; **14**: e15618 [PMID: 24596581 DOI: 10.5812/hepatmon.15618]

47 **Haagsma EB**, Niesters HG, van den Berg AP, Riezebos-Brilman A, Porte RJ, Vennema H, Reimerink JH, Koopmans MP. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus infection in liver transplant recipients. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 1225-1228 [PMID: 19790147 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.21819]

48 **Gérolami R**, Moal V, Colson P. Chronic hepatitis E with cirrhosis in a kidney-transplant recipient. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 859-860 [PMID: 18287615 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0708687]

49 **Kamar N**, Mansuy JM, Cointault O, Selves J, Abravanel F, Danjoux M, Otal P, Esposito L, Durand D, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Hepatitis E virus-related cirrhosis in kidney- and kidney-pancreas-transplant recipients. *Am J Transplant* 2008; **8**: 1744-1748 [PMID: 18557740 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2008.02286.x]

50 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Selves J, Garrouste C, Esposito L, Lavayssière L, Cointault O, Ribes D, Cardeau I, Nogier MB, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Peron JM, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Influence of immunosuppressive therapy on the natural history of genotype 3 hepatitis-E virus infection after organ transplantation. *Transplantation* 2010; **89**: 353-360 [PMID: 20145528 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181c4096c]

51 **Haagsma EB**, van den Berg AP, Porte RJ, Benne CA, Vennema H, Reimerink JH, Koopmans MP. Chronic hepatitis E virus infection in liver transplant recipients. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 547-553 [PMID: 18383084 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.21480]

52 **Ollier L**, Tieulie N, Sanderson F, Heudier P, Giordanengo V, Fuzibet JG, Nicand E. Chronic hepatitis after hepatitis E virus infection in a patient with non-Hodgkin lymphoma taking rituximab. *Ann Intern Med* 2009; **150**: 430-431 [PMID: 19293084 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-150-6-200903170-00026]

53 **le Coutre P**, Meisel H, Hofmann J, Röcken C, Vuong GL, Neuburger S, Hemmati PG, Dörken B, Arnold R. Reactivation of hepatitis E infection in a patient with acute lymphoblastic leukaemia after allogeneic stem cell transplantation. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 699-702 [PMID: 19359434 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.165571]

54 **Bai MJ**, Zhou N, Dong W, Li GX, Cong W, Zhu XQ. Seroprevalence and risk factors of hepatitis E virus infection in cancer patients in eastern China. *Int J Infect Dis* 2018; **71**: 42-47 [PMID: 29656134 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijid.2018.04.003]

55 **Bettinger D**, Schlabe S, Pischke S, Mallmann MR, Keyver-Paik MD, Kuhn W, Strassburg CP, Thimme R, Spengler U. Ribavirin in Acute Hepatitis E Infection in Patients with Gynecological Cancer: A Case Series. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2018; **6**: 237-240 [PMID: 29951369 DOI: 10.14218/jcth.2017.00063]

56 **Jagjit Singh GK**, Ijaz S, Rockwood N, Farnworth SP, Devitt E, Atkins M, Tedder R, Nelson M. Chronic Hepatitis E as a cause for cryptogenic cirrhosis in HIV. *J Infect* 2013; **66**: 103-106 [PMID: 22166370 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2011.11.027]

57 **Colson P**, Dhiver C, Poizot-Martin I, Tamalet C, Gérolami R. Acute and chronic hepatitis E in patients infected with human immunodeficiency virus. *J Viral Hepat* 2011; **18**: 227-228 [PMID: 20384963 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2010.01311.x]

58 **Pischke S**, Peron JM, von Wulffen M, von Felden J, Höner Zu Siederdissen C, Fournier S, Lütgehetmann M, Iking-Konert C, Bettinger D, Par G, Thimme R, Cantagrel A, Lohse AW, Wedemeyer H, de Man R, Mallet V. Chronic Hepatitis E in Rheumatology and Internal Medicine Patients: A Retrospective Multicenter European Cohort Study. *Viruses* 2019; **11** [PMID: 30813268 DOI: 10.3390/v11020186]

59 **Fousekis FS**, Mitselos IV, Christodoulou DK. Extrahepatic manifestations of hepatitis E virus: An overview. *Clin Mol Hepatol* 2020; **26**: 16-23 [PMID: 31601068 DOI: 10.3350/cmh.2019.0082]

60 **Mclean BN**, Gulliver J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E virus and neurological disorders. *Pract Neurol* 2017; **17**: 282-288 [PMID: 28647707 DOI: 10.1136/practneurol-2016-001588]

61 **Abravanel F**, Pique J, Couturier E, Nicot F, Dimeglio C, Lhomme S, Chiabrando J, Saune K, Péron JM, Kamar N, Evrard S, de Valk H, Cintas P, Izopet J; HEV study group. Acute hepatitis E in French patients and neurological manifestations. *J Infect* 2018; **77**: 220-226 [PMID: 29966614 DOI: 10.1016/j.jinf.2018.06.007]

62 **Dalton HR**, Kamar N, van Eijk JJ, Mclean BN, Cintas P, Bendall RP, Jacobs BC. Hepatitis E virus and neurological injury. *Nat Rev Neurol* 2016; **12**: 77-85 [PMID: 26711839 DOI: 10.1038/nrneurol.2015.234]

63 **van den Berg B**, van der Eijk AA, Pas SD, Hunter JG, Madden RG, Tio-Gillen AP, Dalton HR, Jacobs BC. Guillain-Barr é syndrome associated with preceding hepatitis E virus infection. *Neurology* 2014; **82**: 491-497 [PMID: 24415572 DOI: 10.1212/wnl.0000000000000111]

64 **Kamar N**, Bendall RP, Peron JM, Cintas P, Prudhomme L, Mansuy JM, Rostaing L, Keane F, Ijaz S, Izopet J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E virus and neurologic disorders. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 173-179 [PMID: 21291585 DOI: 10.3201/eid1702.100856]

65 **Seror P**. Neuralgic amyotrophy. An update. *Joint Bone Spine* 2017; **84**: 153-158 [PMID: 27263426 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbspin.2016.03.005]

66 **van Eijk JJ**, Madden RG, van der Eijk AA, Hunter JG, Reimerink JH, Bendall RP, Pas SD, Ellis V, van Alfen N, Beynon L, Southwell L, McLean B, Jacobs BC, van Engelen BG, Dalton HR. Neuralgic amyotrophy and hepatitis E virus infection. *Neurology* 2014; **82**: 498-503 [PMID: 24401685 DOI: 10.1212/wnl.0000000000000112]

67 **Bazerbachi F**, Haffar S, Garg SK, Lake JR. Extra-hepatic manifestations associated with hepatitis E virus infection: a comprehensive review of the literature. *Gastroenterol Rep (Oxf)* 2016; **4**: 1-15 [PMID: 26358655 DOI: 10.1093/gastro/gov042]

68 **Kamar N**, Weclawiak H, Guilbeau-Frugier C, Legrand-Abravanel F, Cointault O, Ribes D, Esposito L, Cardeau-Desangles I, Guitard J, Sallusto F, Muscari F, Peron JM, Alric L, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Hepatitis E virus and the kidney in solid-organ transplant patients. *Transplantation* 2012; **93**: 617-623 [PMID: 22298032 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e318245f14c]

69 **Marion O**, Abravanel F, Del Bello A, Esposito L, Lhomme S, Puissant-Lubrano B, Alric L, Faguer S, Izopet J, Kamar N. Hepatitis E virus-associated cryoglobulinemia in solid-organ-transplant recipients. *Liver Int* 2018; **38**: 2178-2189 [PMID: 29845733 DOI: 10.1111/Liv.13894]

70 **D'Amico G**. Renal involvement in hepatitis C infection: cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis. *Kidney Int* 1998; **54**: 650-671 [PMID: 9690235 DOI: 10.1046/j.1523-1755.1998.00028.x]

71 **Ahmad BS**, Ahmad A, Jamil S, Abubakar Mohsin Ehsanullah SA, Munir A. Severe haemolysis and renal failure precipitated by hepatitis E virus in G6PD Deficient patient: A case report. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2018; **68**: 1397-1399 [PMID: 30317274]

72 **Leaf RK**, O'Brien KL, Leaf DE, Drews RE. Autoimmune hemolytic anemia in a young man with acute hepatitis E infection. *Am J Hematol* 2017; **92**: E77-E79 [PMID: 28230259 DOI: 10.1002/ajh.24699]

73 **Rauff B**, Idrees M, Shah SA, Butt S, Butt AM, Ali L, Hussain A, Irshad-Ur-Rehman, Ali M. Hepatitis associated aplastic anemia: a review. *Virol J* 2011; **8**: 87 [PMID: 21352606 DOI: 10.1186/1743-422x-8-87]

74 **Zylberman M**, Turdó K, Odzak A, Arcondo F, Altabert N, Munné S. [Hepatitis E virus-associated aplastic anemia. Report of a case]. *Medicina (B Aires)* 2015; **75**: 175-177 [PMID: 26117610]

75 **Shah SA**, Lal A, Idrees M, Hussain A, Jeet C, Malik FA, Iqbal Z, Rehman Hu. Hepatitis E virus-associated aplastic anaemia: the first case of its kind. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **54**: 96-97 [PMID: 22441030 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2012.02.002]

76 **Stasi R**, Chia LW, Kalkur P, Lowe R, Shannon MS. Pathobiology and treatment of hepatitis virus-related thrombocytopenia. *Mediterr J Hematol Infect Dis* 2009; **1**: e2009023 [PMID: 21415958 DOI: 10.4084/mjhid.2009.023]

77 **Masood I**, Rafiq A, Majid Z. Hepatitis E presenting with thrombocytopaenia. *Trop Doct* 2014; **44**: 219-220 [PMID: 24472742 DOI: 10.1177/0049475514521610]

78 **Singh NK**, Gangappa M. Acute immune thrombocytopenia associated with hepatitis E in an adult. *Am J Hematol* 2007; **82**: 942-943 [PMID: 17616970 DOI: 10.1002/ajh.20960]

79 **Kamar N**, Izopet J, Pavio N, Aggarwal R, Labrique A, Wedemeyer H, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E virus infection. *Nat Rev Dis Primers* 2017; **3**: 17086 [PMID: 29154369 DOI: 10.1038/nrdp.2017.86]

80 **Abravanel F**, Chapuy-Regaud S, Lhomme S, Miedougé M, Peron JM, Alric L, Rostaing L, Kamar N, Izopet J. Performance of anti-HEV assays for diagnosing acute hepatitis E in immunocompromised patients. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **58**: 624-628 [PMID: 24183927 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.10.003]

81 **Legrand-Abravanel F**, Thevenet I, Mansuy JM, Saune K, Vischi F, Peron JM, Kamar N, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Good performance of immunoglobulin M assays in diagnosing genotype 3 hepatitis E virus infections. *Clin Vaccine Immunol* 2009; **16**: 772-774 [PMID: 19321696 DOI: 10.1128/cvi.00438-08]

82 **Norder H**, Karlsson M, Mellgren Å, Konar J, Sandberg E, Lasson A, Castedal M, Magnius L, Lagging M. Diagnostic Performance of Five Assays for Anti-Hepatitis E Virus IgG and IgM in a Large Cohort Study. *J Clin Microbiol* 2016; **54**: 549-555 [PMID: 26659210 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.02343-15]

83 **Abravanel F**, Lhomme S, Chapuy-Regaud S, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Sallusto F, Rostaing L, Kamar N, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus reinfections in solid-organ-transplant recipients can evolve into chronic infections. *J Infect Dis* 2014; **209**: 1900-1906 [PMID: 24436450 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiu032]

84 **Kamar N**, Dalton HR, Abravanel F, Izopet J. Hepatitis E virus infection. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2014; **27**: 116-138 [PMID: 24396139 DOI: 10.1128/cmr.00057-13]

85 **Zhao ZY**, Ruan B, Shao H, Chen ZJ, Liu SL. Detection of hepatitis E virus RNA in sera of patients with hepatitis E by polymerase chain reaction. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2007; **6**: 38-42 [PMID: 17287164]

86 **Webb GW**, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E: an expanding epidemic with a range of complications. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2020; **26**: 828-832 [PMID: 32251845 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmi.2020.03.039]

87 **Jothikumar N**, Cromeans TL, Robertson BH, Meng XJ, Hill VR. A broadly reactive one-step real-time RT-PCR assay for rapid and sensitive detection of hepatitis E virus. *J Virol Methods* 2006; **131**: 65-71 [PMID: 16125257 DOI: 10.1016/j.jviromet.2005.07.004]

88 **Al-Sadeq DW**, Majdalawieh AF, Mesleh AG, Abdalla OM, Nasrallah GK. Laboratory challenges in the diagnosis of hepatitis E virus. *J Med Microbiol* 2018; **67**: 466-480 [PMID: 29485390 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.000706]

89 **Vollmer T**, Knabbe C, Dreier J. Comparison of real-time PCR and antigen assays for detection of hepatitis E virus in blood donors. *J Clin Microbiol* 2014; **52**: 2150-2156 [PMID: 24740079 DOI: 10.1128/jcm.03578-13]

90 **Behrendt P**, Bremer B, Todt D, Brown RJ, Heim A, Manns MP, Steinmann E, Wedemeyer H. Hepatitis E Virus (HEV) ORF2 Antigen Levels Differentiate Between Acute and Chronic HEV Infection. *J Infect Dis* 2016; **214**: 361-368 [PMID: 27234418 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jiw161]

91 **Kamar N**, Izopet J, Tripon S, Bismuth M, Hillaire S, Dumortier J, Radenne S, Coilly A, Garrigue V, D'Alteroche L, Buchler M, Couzi L, Lebray P, Dharancy S, Minello A, Hourmant M, Roque-Afonso AM, Abravanel F, Pol S, Rostaing L, Mallet V. Ribavirin for chronic hepatitis E virus infection in transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 24645943 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215246]

92 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Behrendt P, Hofmann J, Pageaux GP, Barbet C, Moal V, Couzi L, Horvatits T, De Man RA, Cassuto E, Elsharkawy AM, Riezebos-Brilman A, Scemla A, Hillaire S, Donnelly MC, Radenne S, Sayegh J, Garrouste C, Dumortier J, Glowaki F, Matignon M, Coilly A, Figueres L, Mousson C, Minello A, Dharancy S, Rerolle JP, Lebray P, Etienne I, Perrin P, Choi M, Marion O, Izopet J; Hepatitis E Virus Ribavirin Study Group. Ribavirin for Hepatitis E Virus Infection After Organ Transplantation: A Large European Retrospective Multicenter Study. *Clin Infect Dis* 2020; **71**: 1204-1211 [PMID: 31793638 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciz953]

93 **Kamar N**, Rostaing L, Abravanel F, Garrouste C, Esposito L, Cardeau-Desangles I, Mansuy JM, Selves J, Peron JM, Otal P, Muscari F, Izopet J. Pegylated interferon-alpha for treating chronic hepatitis E virus infection after liver transplantation. *Clin Infect Dis* 2010; **50**: e30-e33 [PMID: 20113176 DOI: 10.1086/650488]

94 **Haagsma EB**, Riezebos-Brilman A, van den Berg AP, Porte RJ, Niesters HG. Treatment of chronic hepatitis E in liver transplant recipients with pegylated interferon alpha-2b. *Liver Transpl* 2010; **16**: 474-477 [PMID: 20373458 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.22014]

95 **Peters van Ton AM**, Gevers TJ, Drenth JP. Antiviral therapy in chronic hepatitis E: a systematic review. *J Viral Hepat* 2015; **22**: 965-973 [PMID: 25760481 DOI: 10.1111/jvh.12403]

96 **Dao Thi VL**, Debing Y, Wu X, Rice CM, Neyts J, Moradpour D, Gouttenoire J. Sofosbuvir Inhibits Hepatitis E Virus Replication In Vitro and Results in an Additive Effect When Combined With Ribavirin. *Gastroenterology* 2016; **150**: 82-85.e4 [PMID: 26408347 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2015.09.011]

97 **Biliotti E**, Franchi C, Spaziante M, Garbuglia AR, Volpicelli L, Palazzo D, De Angelis M, Esvan R, Taliani G. Autochthonous acute hepatitis E: treatment with sofosbuvir and ribavirin. *Infection* 2018; **46**: 725-727 [PMID: 29946850 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-018-1168-7]

98 **Drinane M**, Jing Wang X, Watt K. Sofosbuvir and Ribavirin Eradication of Refractory Hepatitis E in an Immunosuppressed Kidney Transplant Recipient. *Hepatology* 2019; **69**: 2297-2299 [PMID: 30549275 DOI: 10.1002/hep.30428]

99 **Schulz M**, Papp CP, Bock CT, Hofmann J, Gerlach UA, Maurer MM, Eurich D, Mueller T. Combination therapy of sofosbuvir and ribavirin fails to clear chronic hepatitis E infection in a multivisceral transplanted patient. *J Hepatol* 2019; **71**: 225-227 [PMID: 31027993 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2019.03.029]

100 **van Wezel EM**, de Bruijne J, Damman K, Bijmolen M, van den Berg AP, Verschuuren EAM, Ruigrok GA, Riezebos-Brilman A, Knoester M. Sofosbuvir Add-on to Ribavirin Treatment for Chronic Hepatitis E Virus Infection in Solid Organ Transplant Recipients Does Not Result in Sustained Virological Response. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2019; **6** [PMID: 31404927 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofz346]

101 **Horvatits T**, Schulze Zur Wiesch J, Lütgehetmann M, Lohse AW, Pischke S. The Clinical Perspective on Hepatitis E. *Viruses* 2019; **11** [PMID: 31284447 DOI: 10.3390/v11070617]

102 **Zhu FC**, Zhang J, Zhang XF, Zhou C, Wang ZZ, Huang SJ, Wang H, Yang CL, Jiang HM, Cai JP, Wang YJ, Ai X, Hu YM, Tang Q, Yao X, Yan Q, Xian YL, Wu T, Li YM, Miao J, Ng MH, Shih JW, Xia NS. Efficacy and safety of a recombinant hepatitis E vaccine in healthy adults: a large-scale, randomised, double-blind placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial. *Lancet* 2010; **376**: 895-902 [PMID: 20728932 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(10)61030-6]

103 **Zhang J**, Zhang XF, Huang SJ, Wu T, Hu YM, Wang ZZ, Wang H, Jiang HM, Wang YJ, Yan Q, Guo M, Liu XH, Li JX, Yang CL, Tang Q, Jiang RJ, Pan HR, Li YM, Shih JW, Ng MH, Zhu FC, Xia NS. Long-term efficacy of a hepatitis E vaccine. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 914-922 [PMID: 25738667 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1406011]

104 **Zaman K**, Dudman S, Stene-Johansen K, Qadri F, Yunus M, Sandbu S, Gurley ES, Overbo J, Julin CH, Dembinski JL, Nahar Q, Rahman A, Bhuiyan TR, Rahman M, Haque W, Khan J, Aziz A, Khanam M, Streatfield PK, Clemens JD. HEV study protocol : design of a cluster-randomised, blinded trial to assess the safety, immunogenicity and effectiveness of the hepatitis E vaccine HEV 239 (Hecolin) in women of childbearing age in rural Bangladesh. *BMJ Open* 2020; **10**: e033702 [PMID: 31959609 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2019-033702]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 495-503

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.495

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis: A discrete variant or a bridge to large duct disease, a practical review

Christopher M Nguyen, Kevin T Kline, Heather L Stevenson, Kashif Khan, Sreeram Parupudi

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Cabezuelo AS

Received: February 26, 2021
Peer-review started: February 26, 2021
First decision: May 3, 2021
Revised: May 12, 2021
Accepted: February 15, 2022
Article in press: February 15, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Christopher M Nguyen, Department of Internal Medicine, The University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX 77555, United States

Kevin T Kline, Kashif Khan, Sreeram Parupudi, Department of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, The University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX 77555, United States

Heather L Stevenson, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, TX 77555, United States

Corresponding author: Christopher M Nguyen, DO, Doctor, Department of Internal Medicine, The University of Texas Medical Branch, 301 University Boulevard, John Sealy Annex Room 4.108, Galveston, TX 77555, United States. chmnguye@utmb.edu

Abstract

The natural history, associations with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), and long-term outcomes of large duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (ldPSC) have been well documented. Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (sdPSC) is a much less common and relatively more benign variant. The natural history of sdPSC has been difficult to characterize given the limited number of studies in the literature especially with regards to the subset of patients who progress to large duct involvement. It has been unclear whether sdPSC represented a subset of ldPSC, an earlier staging of ldPSC, or a completely separate and distinct entity of its own. Strong associations between sdPSC and IBD have been established with suspicion that concurrent sdPSC-IBD may be a key prognostic factor in determining which patients are at risk of progression to ldPSC. Little is known regarding the discrete circumstances that predisposes some patients with sdPSC to progress to ldPSC. It has been suspected that progression to large biliary duct involvement subjects this subset of patients to potentially developing life-threatening complications. Here the authors conducted a thorough review of the published sdPSC literature using Pubmed searches and cross-referencing to compile all accessible studies regarding cohorts of sdPSC patients in order better characterize the subset of sdPSC patients who progress to ldPSC and the associated outcomes.

Key Words: Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis; Inflammatory bowel disease; Progression; Primary sclerosing cholangitis; Outcomes

Core Tip: Strong associations between small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (sdPSC) and inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) have been established with suspicion that concurrent sdPSC-IBD may be a key prognostic factor in determining which patients are at risk of progression to ldPSC.

Citation: Nguyen CM, Kline KT, Stevenson HL, Khan K, Parupudi S. Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis: A discrete variant or a bridge to large duct disease, a practical review. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 495-503
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/495.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.495

INTRODUCTION

Primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC) is a chronic liver disease with the potential of progression to cirrhosis that is characterized by multi-focal cholestatic inflammation and fibrosis[1-3]. PSC has an incidence of 0.9 to 1.3 cases per 100000 in the United States[2,4]. PSC has a close association with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) and has a risk of developing various hepatobiliary malignancies including cholangiocarcinoma (CCA)[1-3]. Classic or large-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (ldPSC) has very distinct clinical, cholangiographic, and histologic features with cholangiography typically establishing a diagnosis[1,3-5]. In 1985, Ludwig *et al*[6] brought into question the possibility of small intra-hepatic biliary duct involvement which led to pathologic studies in 1991 confirming the diagnosis of small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (sdPSC), also referred to as pericholangitis.

The natural history, associations with IBD, and long-term outcomes of ldPSC have been well documented. Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis is a much less common and relatively more benign variant[7-9]. In recent years, it has been discovered that this variant can rarely progress to having large biliary duct involvement[7-14]. Several studies have attempted to characterize this unique subset of patients, with the rate of progression to ldPSC ranging from 7.1%-22.9%[7-9,11-14]. Little is known regarding the etiology or discrete circumstances that predisposes some patients with sdPSC to progress to ldPSC. It is known, however, that progression to large biliary duct involvement subjects this subset of patients to potentially developing life-threatening complications[8,9].

The natural history of sdPSC has been difficult to characterize given the limited number of studies in the literature. Describing the subset of patients who have progressed to ldPSC is even more challenging. The authors conducted a thorough evaluation of the published literature to compile all accessible studies regarding cohorts of sdPSC patients using PubMed searches and cross-referencing. Table 1 summarizes the individual studies, the baseline characteristics, and outcomes of each cohort of sdPSC patients.

GENETIC PATHOGENESIS

The etiology of PSC is not well understood however it is believed to be predominantly autoimmune due to its association with elevated levels of antineutrophilic cytoplasmic, antinuclear, and anticardiolipin antibodies in addition to the HLA DR3 and HLA B8 genes[2,4,15]. A strong association between PSC and IBD has also been well established with studies showing a significantly increased risk of developing PSC and UC in first-degree relatives of patients who have PSC with or without UC[3,4,16,17].

The etiology of sdPSC is even less understood, though it carries a more favorable prognosis than its large-duct counterpart[8]. It has been unclear whether sdPSC represented a subset of ldPSC, an earlier staging of ldPSC, or a completely separate and distinct entity of its own[8,10]. A study evaluating the components of sdPSC within the subset of patients with and without concomitant IBD suggested the strongest association existed between HLD-DRB1*13:01 and sdPSC[15]. In contrast to the strong association of HLA-B*08 with ldPSC, HLA-B*08 was found to be more prevalent in sdPSC when compared to healthy controls, but not to the extent found in ldPSC[15]. Additionally, patients that have the DRB1*13:01 haplotype are at an increased risk of developing IBD[15]. A noteworthy hypothesis drawn from this study is the notion that patients with sdPSC and concomitant IBD could represent precursors to classic PSC while those sdPSC patients without IBD may actually represent a different biliary disease process, such as primary biliary cholangitis, or a secondary cause of sclerosing cholangitis, such as those related to the ABCB4 gene[15].

ENVIRONMENTAL PATHOGENESIS

It has been speculated that in addition to genetic factors, environmental factors contribute to the

Table 1 Baseline characteristics and outcomes of small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis cohorts

Ref.	Study design, population	Study location	Total sdPSC	Females	Age at Dx (yr)[1]	F/U (mo)[1]	UC	CD	HCC	CCA	AIH	LdPSC conversion	Conversion time (mo)[1]	Treatment			Liver transplant	Death
														UDCA	Steroids	AZA		
Wee *et al*[31], 1984	Retrospective, Adult	Mayo Clinic	3	1	34	-	3	0	0	3	0	0	-	-	-	-	0	3
Broomé *et al*[11], 2002	Retrospective, Adult	Sweden	32	12	39	63	13	3	1	0	0	4	115	7	7	6	1	0
Björnsson *et al*[7], 2002	Retrospective, Adult	Oslo/Oxford	33	14	38	106	20	7	0	0	0	4	-	7	-	-	2	2
Angulo *et al*[9], 2002	Longitudinal cohort, Adult	Mayo Clinic	18	7	39	126	14	3	0	0	0	3	122	7	0	0	2	1
Nikolaidis *et al*[39], 2005	Retrospective, Adult	Greece	6	-	32	26	2	1	0	0	0	0	-	5	0	5	0	0
Charatcharoenwitthaya *et al*[12], 2007	Longitudinal cohort, Adult	Mayo Clinic	42	14	35	57	13	3	0	0	0	3	-	30	-	5	6	1
Miloh *et al*[32], 2009	Retrospective, Pediatric	New York	16	5	10	78	4	4	0	0	5	0	-	16	-	-	2	0
Olsson *et al*[28], 2009	Retrospective, Adult	Sweden	7	3	24	71	4	0	0	0	7	0	-	-	6	6	0	0
Singal *et al*[10], 2011	Retrospective, Adult	New York/Florida	25	12	37	39	13	0	0	0	0	0	-	15	8	12	1	1
Fevery *et al*[17], 2016	Retrospective, Adult	Belgium	33	-	35	144	3	9	0	0	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-
Valentino *et al*[13], 2016	Longitudinal cohort, Ped	Boston	24	-	10	44	-	-	-	-	-	6	72	-	-	-	2	2
Liu *et al*[40], 2017	Retrospective, Adult	Australia	10	-	41	96	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Deneau *et al*[27], 2017	Retrospective, Pediatric	Multi-institutional	98	34	10.5	-	-	-	-	-	36	-	-	75	-	-	-	-
Weismüller *et al*[30], 2017	Retrospective, Adult	Multi-institutional	254	96	37	-	67	24	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Umetsu *et al*[41], 2019	Retrospective, Pediatric	Japan	3	-	9	66	-	-	0	0	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0
Ringe *et al*[14], 2020	Retrospective, Adult	Germany	16	7	29	127	6	4	-	-	1	5	144	16	-	-	-	-

[1]Indicates an average.

AIH: Autoimmune hepatitis; AZA: Azathioprine; CCA: Cholangiocarcinoma; CD: Crohn's Disease; Conversion time (average time from sdPSC diagnosis to ldPSC conversion); F/U: Follow-up (months after initial diagnosis); HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; LdPSC: Large duct primary sclerosing cholangitis; SdPSC: Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis; UC: Ulcerative colitis; UDCA: Ursodeoxycholic acid; -: Unknown.

pathogenesis of PSC in part due to persistent insult to the cholangiocytes[2-4]. More recent studies suggest the involvement of the gastrointestinal microbiome and its metabolites as an important and modifiable component of the pathogenesis of PSC[3,4]. The relationship of PSC with the enteric microbiome, known as the "leaky gut" hypothesis, describes the passive translocation of bacterial products from an inflamed gut to the portal venous system triggering an inflammatory cascade that leads to the characteristic "onion skinning" intrahepatic biliary duct fibrosis that is seen in all variants of PSC[2,4,18,19]. The development of the laminar concentric fibrosis interrupts the arterial and biliary interface causing ischemia to the cells lining the biliary system[4]. Injured cholangiocytes facilitate the pathogenic strictures and fibrosis through the secretion of inflammatory cytokines and chemokines[2,4]. Other theories exist focused on defects in the protective mechanisms against toxicity from bile acids, gut-derived T cell recruitment to the liver, and even disruptions in bile homeostasis as potential key factors in PSC pathogenesis[2,4].

Based on initial investigation of the pathophysiologic association of hepatobiliary disorders and colonic inflammation, the role of bacterial chemotactic peptides in the development of sdPSC has been evaluated[20,21]. Colitis was induced in the specimens using intrarectal infusions of acetic acid and saline, followed by intrarectal infusion of N-formyl L-methionine L-leucine L-tyrosine (fMLT), a bacterial chemotactic peptide produced by *Escherichia coli*. The experimentally induced colitis and rectal fMLT induction resulted in an eight-fold increase in biliary excretion of fMLT. Liver specimens showed evidence of pericholangitis affecting the small biliary ducts suggesting bacterial chemotactic peptides could play a pathogenic role in the development of sdPSC[20].

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND NATURAL HISTORY

Approximately 75% of patients with PSC have both small and large duct involvement, while 15% have only small duct and 10% with only large duct involvement[3,8]. PSC often insidiously progresses to advanced liver disease with an estimated 10-year survival of 65%[2,3]. LdPSC affects men twice as frequently as women and typically presents within the fourth decade of life with the mean age of diagnosis being 41 years[3]. However, a study in Norway suggested that PSC may occur as commonly in females as in males but with a more clinically subtle course[5]. The incidence per year is estimated to be 0.9-1.3 per 100,000 and the prevalence is approximately 0.5-16.2 per 100,000 patients in the United States[4,5]. Studies in Asia and Spain have reported a lower prevalence of up to 10-fold when compared to the US and EU[22-24]. Some studies suggest an increase in the incidence of PSC in recent decades though this trend has also been associated with other autoimmune and idiopathic inflammatory disorders and could be related to increased use of magnetic resonance cholangiography[3]. Approximately 70% of patients with PSC have concurrent IBD with UC accounting for 80% of PSC-IBD patients, while CD and intermediate colitis affects 10% each[2,3,5]. Hepatobiliary malignancies affect up to 10.9%

of PSC patients with a five-fold increased risk of colorectal cancer when compared to IBD patients without PSC[3,25].

SdPSC is more benign when compared to ldPSC with most mortality limited to the small subset that progress to large-duct involvement or who develop liver failure[8]. Studies have shown a median survival of 29.5 years in sdPSC *vs* only 17 years in ldPSC without liver transplantation[8,10,23,26]. SdPSC seems to have a similar predilection for male gender however percentages vary across individual studies. Evaluating the data in Table 1 yielded a 60.9% male predominance of sdPSC across all studies of adult and pediatric populations. The annual incidence of sdPSC is estimated to be 0.15 per 100,000 patients and the median age of diagnosis is 35 and 9.5 years in adults and children respectively[8,10,27]. IBD affects approximately 80% of sdPSC patients with the large majority being diagnosed at initial presentation[8,27]. Of the patients with sdPSC and concomitant IBD, approximately 78% have UC, 21% CD, and 1% an intermediate colitis[8,15]. A study describing differences between sdPSC patients with and without IBD reported a mortality of 9% and 7% respectively and transplantation in 6% and 14% respectively[15]. Hepatobiliary malignancies are extremely rare in sdPSC with very few reported cases. One long-term retrospective, multi-institutional study reported approximately one-fourth of patients with sdPSC may show evidence of progression to ldPSC[8].

CLINICAL PRESENTATION

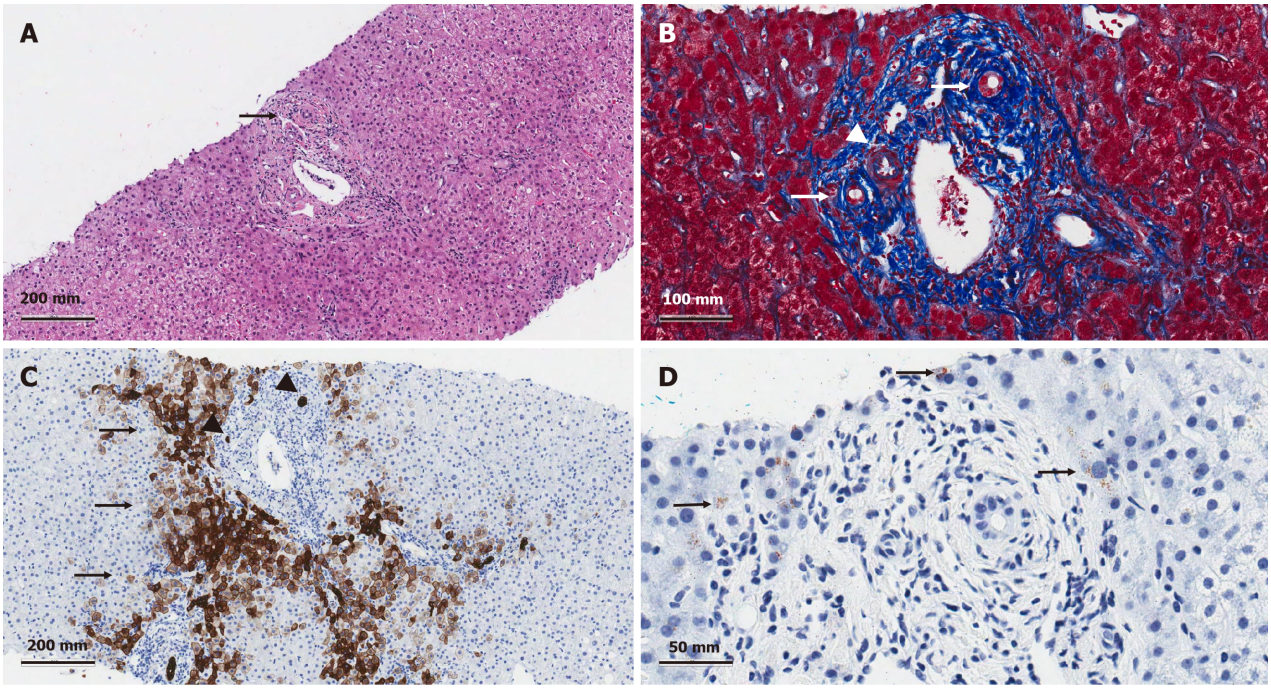
PSC has a highly variable initial presentation with approximately 50% of patients being asymptomatic at presentation and up to 40% of cases being incidentally diagnosed after routine blood work revealing cholestatic elevation of liver enzymes[3,4]. Those who go without early incidental detection can present with the sequelae of advanced liver disease[4]. Patients who develop symptoms at the time of diagnosis typically present with weight loss, jaundice, pruritis, abdominal pain, diarrhea, fever, and fatigue[1]. Patients with sdPSC present with generally similar symptoms though weight loss and jaundice at diagnosis is more significantly seen in ldPSC than in sdPSC[8,10].

DIAGNOSIS

Several factors contribute to the clinical diagnosis of PSC. The first includes a cholestatic elevation in liver biochemical testing, specifically with a significantly higher elevation in serum alkaline phosphatase compared to milder elevations in the serum aminotransferases[1]. Concomitant autoimmune hepatitis may cause more substantial elevations in the serum aminotransferases[1,28]. Second, cholangiographic findings of multifocal intrahepatic, extrahepatic, or a combination of both are typically seen[1]. Lastly, a liver biopsy may be warranted in the appropriate context to exclude other diseases, establish stage of disease, or to diagnose sdPSC[1]. Not all patients will present with a significant elevation in serum alkaline phosphatase so a strong clinical suspicion should warrant further investigation with magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP), endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), or percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTC)[1,5]. Cholangiography is negative in sdPSC due to the involvement of biliary ducts that are less than 100 micro millimeters making liver biopsy necessary to confirm the diagnosis of sdPSC[10]. The subset of sdPSC patients who progress to large-duct involvement will develop the characteristic cholangiographic findings in classic PSC[10,14].

HISTOPATHOLOGIC FEATURES OF SDPSC

Most studies have reported that sdPSC has similar histopathologic features as PSC, albeit with normal imaging findings[10]. As mentioned above, several studies have reported that sdPSC may just be an earlier form of well-developed PSC[8]. Therefore, the histopathologic features may be subtle and easily missed[10]. At our institution, we recently encountered a 35-year-old female that reported intermittent pruritis with previous episodes of jaundice and persistently elevated alkaline phosphatase. An MRCP showed no abnormalities within the biliary tract, sdPSC was suspected, and a liver biopsy was performed. The liver biopsy was evaluated by a board-certified hepatopathologist and showed several portal tracts containing atrophic bile ducts (*i.e.*, evidence of biliary senescence changes). These were subtle by hematoxylin and eosin (H&E) evaluation (Figure 1A); however, additional stains were able to highlight peribiliary sclerosis with focal areas of fibrous bile duct obliteration (Figure 1B). Cytokeratin 7 (Figure 1C) and copper stains (Figure 1D) were helpful to confirm the presence of chronic biliary injury and suboptimal bile flow[29].



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.495

Figure 1 Histologic features in a liver biopsy collected from a patient with normal magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography and suspected small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis. A: The H&E shows a portal tract with bile duct senescence (arrow) and mild non-specific, lymphocytic inflammation. B: The Masson's trichrome stain shows a higher power image of this same portal tract, highlighting the smaller size of the intrahepatic bile ducts when compared to the adjacent hepatic artery (arrowhead). This stain also shows peribiliary sclerosis that is causing fibrous obliteration of the bile duct epithelium (arrows). The collagen surrounding the ducts is dense and has a keloid-like appearance. C: A cytokeratin 7 stain was conducted and shows prominent periportal cholangiolar metaplasia of hepatocytes (arrows) with atrophy of the intrahepatic bile ducts (arrowhead). In patients without chronic biliary obstruction or suboptimal bile flow, cholangiolar metaplasia is not present. D: A copper stain was positive for periportal deposition (arrows), further supporting the presence of chronic biliary obstruction.

ASSOCIATED DISORDERS

Similar to ldPSC, sdPSC has a strong association with IBD. The large majority of sdPSC patients present with concurrent UC[8,15]. A key difference from ldPSC is a higher prevalence of Crohn's disease with a study showing a prevalence of 21% in sdPSC *vs* 5-10% in ldPSC populations[8]. Studies have not shown any significant differences in outcomes when comparing sdPSC-UC and sdPSC-CD populations[8,10,15,30]. Hepatobiliary cancers in sdPSC are quite rare with only 1 documented case of hepatocellular carcinoma in all of the evaluated studies[11]. In contrast, cholangiocarcinoma (CCA) is seen in approximately 15% of ldPSC patients while cases seen in sdPSC are exceedingly rare[31]. Additionally, ldPSC patients have five times increased risk of developing colorectal cancer when presenting with concurrent IBD when compared to ldPSC patients without IBD[4,25]. This association with malignancies is the thought behind routine colorectal screening in those with PSC-IBD and may warrant evaluation for the need of routine surveillance in the sdPSC-IBD population. An overlap syndrome exists between PSC and autoimmune hepatitis (AIH) which is more commonly seen in the pediatric population though adult PSC patients can develop superimposed AIH years after the initial PSC diagnosis[27,28]. A similar trend is seen in sdPSC as the majority of sdPSC-AIH patients were seen in the pediatric populations[27,28,32]. Other disorders associated with PSC include type I diabetes mellitus, membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, hypothyroidism, and autoimmune hemolytic anemia though the prevalence of these conditions in sdPSC have not been as well established[8,10].

TREATMENT

No widely accepted method of therapy has been established for patients with ldPSC or sdPSC in part, due to ambiguity regarding the pathogenesis of the disease. Ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) at lower doses improved serum liver biochemical tests however there was little symptomatic improvement and no significant improvement in overall outcomes[33,34]. A study using moderate doses of UDCA failed to produce a statistically significant outcome[35]. Most recently a multi-center study examining high doses of UDCA was aborted due to increased morbidity and mortality despite improvement in serum biochemical profiles[1]. The major gastroenterology societies within the United States recommend

against the use of UDCA in patients with PSC[1]. Additionally, the role of immunosuppressive agents and corticosteroids in the treatment of PSC has been explored[1,36,37]. However, no studies demonstrated significant improvement in morbidity and mortality with these agents.

Ultimately, the only definitive therapy for PSC is liver transplantation which has a five-year survival rate of nearly 85%[1,38]. A possibility of recurrence has been seen in 20-25% of cases, 5-10 years post-transplant[38]. Patients with sdPSC have a significantly longer median survival without liver transplantation compared to those with ldPSC[8]. However, studies have shown that among the cohort of patients who progress from small to large-duct involvement, up to half will develop outcomes of death or liver transplantation[8].

CONCLUSION

SdPSC is a rare disorder with the potential of progressing to ldPSC. The definitive etiology and pathogenesis of sdPSC and the circumstances that lead to progression to large-duct involvement are not well understood. Strong associations between sdPSC and IBD have been established with suspicion that concurrent sdPSC-IBD may be a key prognostic factor in determining which patients are at risk of progression to ldPSC. Additionally, this association may warrant future studies regarding the need for routine colorectal cancer screening in sdPSC patients with concomitant IBD. Evaluation using the current available literature is limited due to small cohorts and limited data regarding this specific subset of patients. It is therefore crucial for clinicians to continue reporting readily accessible data in hopes that future studies can further characterize which patients are at most risk of progression as large-duct involvement carries a more grim prognosis and requires more diligent surveillance.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Nguyen CM and Kline KT contributed to the draft and conception; Kline KT and Stevenson HL revised the manuscript; Stevenson HL provided original pathology images; Khan K and Parupudi S contributed to conception, revision and final approval.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors report no conflicts of interest or financial disclosures relevant to the manuscript nor any funding of financial support received.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Christopher M Nguyen 0000-0002-7673-4700; Kevin T Kline 0000-0003-2824-5694; Heather L Stevenson 0000-0002-0645-7621; Kashif Khan 0000-0002-3974-5136; Sreeram Parupudi 0000-0002-8730-0086.

S-Editor: Gong ZM
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Gong ZM

REFERENCES

1 **Chapman R**, Fevery J, Kalloo A, Nagorney DM, Boberg KM, Shneider B, Gores GJ; American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases. Diagnosis and management of primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 660-678 [PMID: 20101749 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23294]
2 **Karlsen TH**, Folseraas T, Thorburn D, Vesterhus M. Primary sclerosing cholangitis - a comprehensive review. *J Hepatol* 2017; **67**: 1298-1323 [PMID: 28802875 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.07.022]
3 **Mertz A**, Nguyen NA, Katsanos KH, Kwok RM. Primary sclerosing cholangitis and inflammatory bowel disease comorbidity: an update of the evidence. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2019; **32**: 124-133 [PMID: 30837784 DOI: 10.20524/aog.2019.0344]
4 **Tabibian JH**, Bowlus CL. Primary sclerosing cholangitis: A review and update. *Liver Res* 2017; **1**: 221-230 [PMID: 29977644 DOI: 10.1016/j.livres.2017.12.002]
5 **Lunder AK**, Hov JR, Borthne A, Gleditsch J, Johannesen G, Tveit K, Viktil E, Henriksen M, Hovde Ø, Huppertz-Hauss G, Høie O, Høivik ML, Monstad I, Solberg IC, Jahnsen J, Karlsen TH, Moum B, Vatn M, Negård A. Prevalence of Sclerosing Cholangitis Detected by Magnetic Resonance Cholangiography in Patients With Long-term Inflammatory Bowel Disease.

Gastroenterology 2016; **151**: 660-669.e4 [PMID: 27342213 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.06.021]
6 **Ludwig J**. Small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Semin Liver Dis* 1991; **11**: 11-17 [PMID: 2047885 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040417]
7 **Björnsson E**, Boberg KM, Cullen S, Fleming K, Clausen OP, Fausa O, Schrumpf E, Chapman RW. Patients with small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis have a favourable long term prognosis. *Gut* 2002; **51**: 731-735 [PMID: 12377815 DOI: 10.1136/gut.51.5.731]
8 **Björnsson E**, Olsson R, Bergquist A, Lindgren S, Braden B, Chapman RW, Boberg KM, Angulo P. The natural history of small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **134**: 975-980 [PMID: 18395078 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.01.042]
9 **Angulo P**, Maor-Kendler Y, Lindor KD. Small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis: a long-term follow-up study. *Hepatology* 2002; **35**: 1494-1500 [PMID: 12029635 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2002.33202]
10 **Singal AK**, Stanca CM, Clark V, Dixon L, Levy C, Odin JA, Fiel MI, Friedman SL, Bach N. Natural history of small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis: a case series with review of the literature. *Hepatol Int* 2011; **5**: 808-813 [PMID: 21484124 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-011-9260-4]
11 **Broomé U**, Glaumann H, Lindstöm E, Lööf L, Almer S, Prytz H, Sandberg-Gertzén H, Lindgren S, Fork FT, Järnerot G, Olsson R. Natural history and outcome in 32 Swedish patients with small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC). *J Hepatol* 2002; **36**: 586-589 [PMID: 11983440 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(02)00036-3]
12 **Charatcharoenwitthaya P**, Angulo P, Enders FB, Lindor KD. Impact of inflammatory bowel disease and ursodeoxycholic acid therapy on small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Hepatology* 2008; **47**: 133-142 [PMID: 17992695 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21960]
13 **Valentino PL**, Wiggins S, Harney S, Raza R, Lee CK, Jonas MM. The Natural History of Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis in Children: A Large Single-Center Longitudinal Cohort Study. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2016; **63**: 603-609 [PMID: 27504812 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0000000000001368]
14 **Ringe KI**, Bergquist A, Lenzen H, Kartalis N, Manns MP, Wacker F, Grigoriadis A. Clinical features and MRI progression of small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis (PSC). *Eur J Radiol* 2020; **129**: 109101 [PMID: 32505896 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejrad.2020.109101]
15 **Naess S**, Björnsson E, Anmarkrud JA, Al Mamari S, Juran BD, Lazaridis KN, Chapman R, Bergquist A, Melum E, Marsh SG, Schrumpf E, Lie BA, Boberg KM, Karlsen TH, Hov JR. Small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis without inflammatory bowel disease is genetically different from large duct disease. *Liver Int* 2014; **34**: 1488-1495 [PMID: 24517468 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12492]
16 **Bergquist A**, Montgomery SM, Bahmanyar S, Olsson R, Danielsson A, Lindgren S, Prytz H, Hultcrantz R, Lööf LA, Sandberg-Gertzén H, Almer S, Askling J, Ehlin A, Ekbom A. Increased risk of primary sclerosing cholangitis and ulcerative colitis in first-degree relatives of patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **6**: 939-943 [PMID: 18674735 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.03.016]
17 **Fevery J**, Van Steenbergen W, Van Pelt J, Laleman W, Hoffman I, Geboes K, Vermeire S, Nevens F. Patients with large-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis and Crohn's disease have a better outcome than those with ulcerative colitis, or without IBD. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **43**: 612-620 [PMID: 26748470 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13516]
18 **Tabibian JH**, Talwalkar JA, Lindor KD. Role of the microbiota and antibiotics in primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Biomed Res Int* 2013; **2013**: 389537 [PMID: 24232746 DOI: 10.1155/2013/389537]
19 **Olsson R**, Björnsson E, Bäckman L, Friman S, Höckerstedt K, Kaijser B, Olausson M. Bile duct bacterial isolates in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a study of explanted livers. *J Hepatol* 1998; **28**: 426-432 [PMID: 9551680 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(98)80316-4]
20 **Yamada S**, Ishii M, Liang LS, Yamamoto T, Toyota T. Small duct cholangitis induced by N-formyl L-methionine L-leucine L-tyrosine in rats. *J Gastroenterol* 1994; **29**: 631-636 [PMID: 8000512 DOI: 10.1007/BF02365447]
21 **Hobson CH**, Butt TJ, Ferry DM, Hunter J, Chadwick VS, Broom MF. Enterohepatic circulation of bacterial chemotactic peptide in rats with experimental colitis. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **94**: 1006-1013 [PMID: 3345870 DOI: 10.1016/0016-5085(88)90560-4]
22 **Nakazawa T**, Naitoh I, Hayashi K, Sano H, Miyabe K, Shimizu S, Joh T. Inflammatory bowel disease of primary sclerosing cholangitis: a distinct entity? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 3245-3254 [PMID: 24696608 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i12.3245]
23 **Eaton JE**, Talwalkar JA, Lazaridis KN, Gores GJ, Lindor KD. Pathogenesis of primary sclerosing cholangitis and advances in diagnosis and management. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **145**: 521-536 [PMID: 23827861 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.06.052]
24 **Escorsell A**, Parés A, Rodés J, Solís-Herruzo JA, Miras M, de la Morena E. Epidemiology of primary sclerosing cholangitis in Spain. Spanish Association for the Study of the Liver. *J Hepatol* 1994; **21**: 787-791 [PMID: 7890895 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(94)80240-8]
25 **Zheng HH**, Jiang XL. Increased risk of colorectal neoplasia in patients with primary sclerosing cholangitis and inflammatory bowel disease: a meta-analysis of 16 observational studies. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **28**: 383-390 [PMID: 26938805 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000000576]
26 **Rizvi S**, Eaton JE, Gores GJ. Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis as a Premalignant Biliary Tract Disease: Surveillance and Management. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **13**: 2152-2165 [PMID: 26051390 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2015.05.035]
27 **Deneau MR**, El-Matary W, Valentino PL, Abdou R, Alqoaer K, Amin M, Amir AZ, Auth M, Bazerbachi F, Broderick A, Chan A, Cotter J, Doan S, El-Youssef M, Ferrari F, Furuya KN, Gottrand M, Gottrand F, Gupta N, Homan M, Kamath BM, Kim KM, Kolho KL, Konidari A, Koot B, Iorio R, Ledder O, Mack C, Martinez M, Miloh T, Mohan P, O'Cathain N, Papadopoulou A, Ricciuto A, Saubermann L, Sathya P, Shteyer E, Smolka V, Tanaka A, Varier R, Venkat V, Vitola B, Vos MB, Woynarowski M, Yap J, Jensen MK. The natural history of primary sclerosing cholangitis in 781 children: A multicenter, international collaboration. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 518-527 [PMID: 28390159 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29204]
28 **Olsson R**, Glaumann H, Almer S, Broomé U, Lebrun B, Bergquist A, Björnsson E, Prytz H, Danielsson A, Lindgren S. High prevalence of small duct primary sclerosing cholangitis among patients with overlapping autoimmune hepatitis and

primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Eur J Intern Med* 2009; **20**: 190-196 [PMID: 19327611 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2008.06.004]

29 **Barakauskienė A**, Speičienė D, Liakina V, Semuchinienė T, Valantinas J. Expression of cytokeratin 7 as a histological marker of cholestasis and stages of primary biliary cirrhosis. *Medicina (Kaunas)* 2011; **47**: 31-38 [PMID: 21681009]

30 **Weismüller TJ**, Trivedi PJ, Bergquist A, Imam M, Lenzen H, Ponsioen CY, Holm K, Gotthardt D, Färkkilä MA, Marschall HU, Thorburn D, Weersma RK, Fevery J, Mueller T, Chazouillères O, Schulze K, Lazaridis KN, Almer S, Pereira SP, Levy C, Mason A, Naess S, Bowlus CL, Floreani A, Halilbasic E, Yimam KK, Milkiewicz P, Beuers U, Huynh DK, Pares A, Manser CN, Dalekos GN, Eksteen B, Invernizzi P, Berg CP, Kirchner GI, Sarrazin C, Zimmer V, Fabris L, Braun F, Marzioni M, Juran BD, Said K, Rupp C, Jokelainen K, Benito de Valle M, Saffioti F, Cheung A, Trauner M, Schramm C, Chapman RW, Karlsen TH, Schrumpf E, Strassburg CP, Manns MP, Lindor KD, Hirschfield GM, Hansen BE, Boberg KM; International PSC Study Group. Patient Age, Sex, and Inflammatory Bowel Disease Phenotype Associate With Course of Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 1975-1984.e8 [PMID: 28274849 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2017.02.038]

31 **Wee A**, Ludwig J, Coffey RJ Jr, LaRusso NF, Wiesner RH. Hepatobiliary carcinoma associated with primary sclerosing cholangitis and chronic ulcerative colitis. *Hum Pathol* 1985; **16**: 719-726 [PMID: 4007848 DOI: 10.1016/s0046-8177(85)80158-1]

32 **Miloh T**, Arnon R, Shneider B, Suchy F, Kerkar N. A retrospective single-center review of primary sclerosing cholangitis in children. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2009; **7**: 239-245 [PMID: 19121649 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2008.10.019]

33 **Beuers U**, Spengler U, Kruis W, Aydemir U, Wiebecke B, Heldwein W, Weinzierl M, Pape GR, Sauerbruch T, Paumgartner G. Ursodeoxycholic acid for treatment of primary sclerosing cholangitis: a placebo-controlled trial. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 707-714 [PMID: 1505913 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840160315]

34 **Chazouillères O**, Poupon R, Capron JP, Metman EH, Dhumeaux D, Amouretti M, Couzigou P, Labayle D, Trinchet JC. Ursodeoxycholic acid for primary sclerosing cholangitis. *J Hepatol* 1990; **11**: 120-123 [PMID: 1975818 DOI: 10.1016/0168-8278(90)90281-u]

35 **Olsson R**, Boberg KM, de Muckadell OS, Lindgren S, Hultcrantz R, Folvik G, Bell H, Gangsøy-Kristiansen M, Matre J, Rydning A, Wikman O, Danielsson A, Sandberg-Gertzén H, Ung KA, Eriksson A, Lööf L, Prytz H, Marschall HU, Broomé U. High-dose ursodeoxycholic acid in primary sclerosing cholangitis: a 5-year multicenter, randomized, controlled study. *Gastroenterology* 2005; **129**: 1464-1472 [PMID: 16285948 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2005.08.017]

36 **Boberg KM**, Egeland T, Schrumpf E. Long-term effect of corticosteroid treatment in primary sclerosing cholangitis patients. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2003; **38**: 991-995 [PMID: 14531538 DOI: 10.1080/00365520310005172]

37 **Cullen SN**, Chapman RW. Review article: current management of primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **21**: 933-948 [PMID: 15813829 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2005.02407.x]

38 **Graziadei IW**, Wiesner RH, Marotta PJ, Porayko MK, Hay JE, Charlton MR, Poterucha JJ, Rosen CB, Gores GJ, LaRusso NF, Krom RA. Long-term results of patients undergoing liver transplantation for primary sclerosing cholangitis. *Hepatology* 1999; **30**: 1121-1127 [PMID: 10534330 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510300501]

39 **Nikolaidis NL**, Giouleme OI, Tziomalos KA, Patsiaoura K, Kazantzidou E, Voutsas AD, Vassiliadis T, Eugenidis NP. Small-duct primary sclerosing cholangitis. A single-center seven-year experience. *Dig Dis Sci* 2005; **50**: 324-326 [PMID: 15745094 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-005-1604-2]

40 **Liu K**, Wang R, Kariyawasam V, Wells M, Strasser SI, McCaughan G, Corte C, Leong RW. Epidemiology and outcomes of primary sclerosing cholangitis with and without inflammatory bowel disease in an Australian cohort. *Liver Int* 2017; **37**: 442-448 [PMID: 27891750 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13328]

41 **Umetsu S**, Notohara K, Nakazawa T, Tsunoda T, Sogo T, Komatsu H, Tanaka A, Tazuma S, Takikawa H, Inui A, Fujisawa T. Long-term outcomes of pediatric-onset primary sclerosing cholangitis: A single-center experience in Japan. *Hepatol Res* 2019; **49**: 1386-1397 [PMID: 31408920 DOI: 10.1111/hepr.13421]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 504-515

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.504

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

New progress in understanding roles of nitric oxide during hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury

Yi-Ping Zhang, Xin-Ran Liu, Mei-Wen Yang, Shu-Long Yang, Fen-Fang Hong

Specialty type: Pharmacology and Pharmacy

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Ramadan N, Serafini S

Received: March 29, 2021
Peer-review started: March 29, 2021
First decision: June 15, 2021
Revised: July 9, 2021
Accepted: February 19, 2022
Article in press: February 19, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Yi-Ping Zhang, Xin-Ran Liu, Fen-Fang Hong, Experimental Center of Pathogen Biology, College of Medicine, Nanchang University, Nanchang 330006, Jiangxi Province, China

Mei-Wen Yang, Department of Surgery, Fuzhou Medical College, Nanchang University, Fuzhou 344000, Jiangxi Province, China

Shu-Long Yang, Department of Physiology, College of Medicine, Nanchang University, Nanchang 330006, Jiangxi Province, China

Shu-Long Yang, Department of Physiology, Fuzhou Medical College, Nanchang University, Fuzhou 344000, Jiangxi Province, China

Corresponding author: Fen-Fang Hong, MD, Associate Professor, Experimental Center of Pathogen Biology, College of Medicine, Nanchang University, No. 461 Bayi Road, Nanchang 330006, Jiangxi Province, China. hongfenfang@126.com

Abstract

Hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury (HIRI) is a major clinical cause of morbidity and mortality in liver surgery and transplantation. Many studies have found that nitric oxide (NO) plays an important role in the HIRI and its increase or decrease can affect the progression and outcome of HIRI. However, the role of NO in HIRI is controversial and complicated. NO derived by endothelial NO synthase (eNOS) shows a protective role in HIRI, while excessive NO derived by inducible NO synthase (iNOS) accelerates inflammation and increases oxidative stress, further aggravating HIRI. Nevertheless, the overexpression of eNOS may exacerbate HIRI and iNOS-derived NO in some cases reduces HIRI. Here we review the new progress in the understanding of the roles of NO during HIRI: (1) NO possesses different roles in HIRI by increasing NO bioavailability, down-regulating leukotriene C4 synthase, inhibiting the activation of the nuclear factorκB (NFκB) pathway, enhancing cell autophagy, and reducing inflammatory cytokines and reactive oxygen species (ROS). And NO has both protective and deleterious effects by regulating apoptotic factors; (2) eNOS promotes NO production and suppresses its own overexpression, exerting a hepatoprotective effect reversely. Its activation is regulated by the PI3K/Akt and KLF2/AMPK pathways; and (3) iNOS derived NO mainly has deteriorating effects on HIRI, while it may have a protective function under some conditions. Their expression should reach a balance to reduce the adverse side and make NO protective in the treatment of HIRI. Thus, it can be inferred that NO modulating drugs may be a new direction in the treatment of HIRI or may be used as an adjunct to mitigate HIRI for the

purpose of protecting the liver.

Key Words: Hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury; Nitric oxide; Endothelial nitric oxide synthase; Inducible nitric oxide synthase

Core Tip: This review focuses on the new progress in the understanding of the role of nitric oxide (NO) in hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury (HIRI). NO protects HIRI by increasing NO bioavailability and cellular autophagy, down-regulating leukotriene C4 synthase, inhibiting the nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) pathway, and reducing inflammatory cytokines and reactive oxygen species. While by regulating apoptotic factors, it has dual effects. eNOS exerts hepatoprotective effects by promoting NO production through the involvement of the phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt pathway and Kruppel-like factor 2/adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase pathways. The function of eNOS overexpression remains controversial. iNOS-derived NO mainly deteriorates HIRI, but it may reduce damage under certain conditions. The balance of eNOS and iNOS is important for the HIRI protection.

Citation: Zhang YP, Liu XR, Yang MW, Yang SL, Hong FF. New progress in understanding roles of nitric oxide during hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 504-515
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/504.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.504

INTRODUCTION

Hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury (HIRI) is a major complication often seen in liver surgery and organ transplantation. It manifests as cellular damage during the ischemic phase and worsens during reperfusion. Depending on the different conditions of ischemia, HIRI can be divided into warm ischemia-reperfusion (WIR) injury and cold ischemia-reperfusion injury (IRI), which have similar pathophysiology but different clinical injury sites[1].

With a high incidence of cases, liver cancer has increased by 114.0% and ended up with 1007800 cases in 2016[2]. Many liver cancer patients are supposed to be treated by liver transplantation or hepatectomy, where HIRI occurs during the operation [3]. Although HIRI is receiving increasing attention to improve the success rate of surgery and improve prognosis, very few of them are known.

The pathophysiological process of hepatic IRI involves the interaction of many different cell types and numerous signaling pathways such as anaerobic metabolism, acidosis, oxidative stress, and intracellular calcium overload. Among the interactions, the imbalance in the ratio of endothelin (ET) to nitric oxide (NO) is one of the mechanisms involved in HIRI. Normally, their function is to regulate blood flow to the hepatic sinusoids. In contrast, in the first few hours after reperfusion, as ET rises, plasma expression of NO decreases, leading to an increase in the ET/NO ratio and the possible appearance of HIRI[4,5].

Many pieces of evidence show that NO plays an important role in ischemia-reperfusion (I/R)[6,7]. However, as a vasodilator, the role of NO has been controversially discussed by scientists[8,9]. In past studies, NO was regarded as a negative factor because of its cytotoxic effect[10]. Nevertheless, a recent study indicated that NO can induce either a positive or negative effect during the early phase of HIRI and have a protective effect during late HIRI[11]. Therefore, it is important to further explore the protective mechanism of NO in HIRI.

NO is a small molecule free radical that can easily penetrate cell membranes. It is also an important effector and messenger molecule of biological information, which has undergone many extensive types of research in the past few years. There are two sources of NO in the human body—enzymatic production and non-enzymatic production. Non-enzymatic production mainly comes from chemical degradation and inorganic nitrogen transformation on the body surface or ingested. For enzymatic production, NO is oxidized from L-arginine by NO synthase (NOS)[12].

There are Ca^{2+}-independent and Ca^{2+}-dependent NOS in the human body. Ca^{2+}-dependent NOS can be subdivided into neuronal (nNOS) and endothelial (eNOS). eNOS is an enzyme continuously expressed in vascular endothelial cells and exerts biological functions through producing NO. In contrast to eNOS, Ca^{2+}-independent inducible NOS (iNOS) is activated by some exterior factors including viruses, bacteria, pro-inflammatory interferon, and cytokines[13]. iNOS produces a large amount of NO in hepatocytes, cholangiocytes, and Kupffer cells (KCs), helping macrophages to mount an immune response[14].

eNOS and iNOS are believed to take actions in HIRI. While depending on different isoforms of NOS, NO has a dual effect on hepatocellular functions during IR. eNOS-derived NO is hepatoprotective of ischemia following IRI by improving hepatic microcirculation and counteracting the deteriorate functions of reactive oxygen species (ROS) [4]. However, an augmented level of iNOS activation upon reperfusion will produce excessive NO, resulting in endothelial dysfunction and aggravating liver damage in HIRI[14]. It has been reported that iNOS-derived NO may have a positive or negative function in HIRI depending on the different conditions[15].

This review aims to find the role of NO during HIRI and look for candidate ways to alleviate liver damage (Table 1).

DIFFERENT ROLES OF NO DURING HIRI

Recently, studies have showed that NO has a significant role during the HIRI, which can be a positive protective function or negative deleterious function. NO was proved to reduce HIRI through various mechanisms such as increasing NO bioavailability, down-regulating leukotrienes (LTs), inhibiting liver cell apoptosis, enhancing autophagic flux, maintaining liver microcirculation blood flow, stabilizing ATP levels, and reducing oxidative stress injury. Whereas, NO can also regulate some apoptotic signal pathways to accelerate the apoptosis of hepatic tissue.

Increase of NO bioavailability involved in its protective effect in HIRI

Hide *et al*[16] found that NO bioavailability was reduced during reperfusion by detecting the levels of cyclic guanosine monophosphate, a second messenger of NO. They concluded that the decreased NO bioavailability can be explained by the reduction of eNOS activity leading to less synthesis of NO and increased NO clearance by reacting with ROS and forming peroxynitrite, which may later react with cell components such as proteins, lipids, and DNA, further damaging the cell. Therefore, increasing NO bioavailability can protect the liver from further damage during HIRI. It is reported that obestatin enhances NO bioavailability by up-regulating eNOS expression[17]. Also, simvastatin maintains NO bioavailability by preventing kruppel-like factor 2 (KLF2) down-regulation[16].

NO can down-regulate LTC4S by inhibiting the nuclear factorκB pathway

Many studies reveal that cysteinyl leukotrienes are directly associated with hepatic IRI. Leukotriene C4 synthase (LTC4S) is one of the enzymes that are responsible for LTC4 synthesis, showing a strong relationship with the NO[18,19]. In I/R rats, the gene expression level of LTC4S is much higher. However, this is reversed by V-PYRRO/NO, which acts as an NO donor. Hong *et al*[20] also found that another NO donor, sodium nitroprusside, could down-regulate the mRNA expression of *LTC4S* by inhibiting nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) activation in an NF-κB α inhibitor-independent manner by detecting the protein levels of NF-κB p65 and p50 in the nuclear extracts using Western Blot.

NO can regulate some apoptotic signal transduction pathways and factors

NO has a significant role in regulating some apoptotic signal transduction pathways which can be potentially activated to induce or inhibit the hepatic cell apoptosis process caused by HIRI during the hepatic operation or other hepatic diseases. The signal pathways or apoptosis-related genes including caspases[21-25], Bcl-2 gene family[26-30], mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK)[31], and NF-kB[32]. Studies have shown that the caspase family is strongly related to hepatic cell apoptosis[33]. Zhao *et al*[21] found that steatosis-induced decline in adenosine monophosphate-activated protein kinase (AMPK)-catalyzed phosphorylation permits caspase-6 activation, leading to hepatocyte death. And Gao *et al*[22] indicated that caspase-3A is involved in cadmium (Cd)-induced cell apoptosis in common carp, which showed 71.8% sequence similarity and 59.3% sequence identity to human caspase-3. Zhang *et al*[23] found that Cd treatment increased the level of iNOS and NO. The overexpression of NO leads to chicken hepatic cell apoptosis by inducing the mitochondrial apoptotic pathway. In two other studies, mouse liver cell apoptosis can be inhibited by reducing NO content, down-regulating Bax protein expression, and increasing Bcl-2 protein expression[24,25]. Besides, an imbalanced Bax/Bcl-2 ratio is caused by decreasing levels of NO and iNOS and increasing Bcl-2 expression through the NF-kB pathway. And this imbalanced ratio may show a protective role in the damaged liver[30]. Jiang *et al*[34] also found that 7-mer peptide can increase the level of Bcl-2 and decrease the level of Bax expression to reduce apoptosis and protect against IRI.

NO protects against I/R-induced liver injury by enhancing autophagic flux

NO has an important role in protecting against I/R-induced liver injury by enhancing autophagic flux. During severe environments such as IRI, the cell will undergo an autophagic process, which is an adaptive response to reduce the injury. Studies have found that the protective mechanism of NO during HIRI is associated with autophagic flux. Shin *et al*[35] demonstrated that NO could enhance light chain-3 lipidation and autophagosome-lysosome fusion during hepatic I/R. Also, eNOS-induced NO enhances autophagy *via* p38 MAPK activation during liver I/R. Simvastatin, which is used to protect the donor

Table 1 Roles of nitric oxide, inducible nitric oxide synthase, and endothelial nitric oxide synthase in various conditions and pharmacological protection against hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury

Pretreatment	NO/ iNOS/ eNOS levels	Animals	Experimental cells	Mechanism	Liver cell necrosis and liver damage	Ref.
NMP, BMMSCs, and liver CDC	eNOS↑, iNOS ↓	SPF rats	Liver tissue	Macrophage activation, ICAM-1, VCAM-1, vWF↓	↓	[5]
L-NAME and BDL	iNOS mRNA↓	Male Wistar rats	Liver tissue	TGF-β, NOx, HA↓; AMDA↑		[6]
Simvastatin and WIR	NO↑	Male Wistar rats	Primary LSEC	Nitrotyrosines, O^{2-}↓; Nrf2, HO-1↑	↓	[14]
Simvastatin and WIR	NO, eNOS↑	Male Wistar rats	LSEC	KLF2, p-eNOS, cGMP↑; O^{2-}, VCAM-1↓	↓	[16]
Obestatin and HIRI	eNOS↑, iNOS ↓	Adult Wistar albino male rats	Liver tissue samples	Reducing oxidative stress and inflammatory process	↓	[17]
HIRI	NO↑	Male Sprague-Dawley rats	Liver	Decrease synthesis of LTC4S, NF-κB↓	↓	[18,19]
V-PYRRO/NO and HIRI	NO↑	Male Sprague-Dawley rats	Liver	Decrease synthesis of LTC4S, NF-κB↓	↓	[20]
AMPK–caspase-6 axis and nonalcoholic steatohep-atitis	-	LAKO mice	Hepatocyte	Caspases-6 activation	↓	[21]
Cd-Induced Apoptosis	NO↑ iNOS↑	Hy-Line Brown laying hen	Liver	Mitochondrial apoptotic pathway	↓	[23]
Punicalagin and cyclophosphamide	NO, iNOS↓	Sprague-Dawley male rats	Liver	Reduce cell apoptosis	↓	[25]
*Emblica officinalis*Gaertn and NAP	NO↓	Male Wistar rats	Liver	Apoptosis, autophagy, inflammation↓	↓	[28]
Tormentic acid and LPS/ D-GalN	NO, iNOS↓	Male C57BL/6 mice	Liver samples	TNF-α, NF-κB↓; imbalanced Bax/Bcl-2 ratio	↓	[30]
Selenocysteine-containing 7-mer peptide	NO↓	Adult male Wistar rats	Liver tissue	Inhibit oxidant peroxynitrite, Bax↓; Bcl-2↑	↓	[34]
IPC and HIRI	NO↑	Male C57BL/6 mice	Liver tissue	p38 MAPK↑; autophagy↑	↓	[35]
Simvastatin and hepatic transplantation	NO↑	Male rats	Liver	Autophagy↑	↓	[36]
IPC	NO↑	Male Sprague-Dawley rats	Liver	Oxygen species liberation and proinflammatory cytokine↓; microcirculation ↑	↓	[37]
Oxytocin and HIRI	NO↑	Adult male albino (Sprague Dawley strain)	Liver	NO bioavailability↑	↓	[38]
TELL and HIRI	eNOS↑	Male Wistar rats	Liver	Activate PI3K/Akt pathway, suppress TLR4, p-PI3K, p-Akt, Nrf2, p-NF-κB p65, p-MAPK p38, TNF-α, GSH, MyD88, HMGB-1, TBARS↑; NF-κB↓	↓	[42]
Apelin preconditioning and HIRI	eNOS↑	Male albino rats	Liver tissue	Activate PI3K/Akt pathway, suppress AT1R, counteract Ang II/AT1R system	↓	[43]
Simvastatin and WIR	eNOS↑	Male inbred Sprague Dawley rats	Liver tissue	Activate KLF2 pathway, TM, p-eNOS↑, TGF-β, TNF-α, IL- 1β↓	↓	[44]
HMP and liver DCD	NO, eNOS↑	Adult male Sprague-dawley rat	Liver	KLF2↑; NF-κB p65, IL-1β, TNF-α↓	↓	[45]
TMZ and WIR	eNOS↑	Male Wistar rats	Liver tissue	p-MAPK↑; activate MAPK pathway	↓	[46]

IGL-1 and Fatty Liver Graft Cold Storage	eNOS↑	Homozygous (obese) Zücker rats	Liver	Activate MAPK pathway, ATP↑	↓	[48]
SEW2871 and WIR	eNOS↑	Male C57BL/6 mice	SECs	VE-cadherin, p-Akt↑; IFN-γ, TNF-α, IL-6, VCAM-1↓	↓	[49]
EPO and liver transplantation	eNOS↑	Female landrace pigs	Liver tissue	Activate JAK2/PI3/AKT pathway, AMPK↑; βcR2-VEGFR-2 complex	↓	[51]
HIRI	-	Female domestic (Landrace) pigs	Liver tissue	IL-6, STAT-3 and E-selectin mRNA↑	-	[52]
TDF and HIRI	eNOS, iNOS↓	Female Wistar albino rats	Liver tissue	cGMP↑, activate mitochondrial K-ATP channels, mitochondrial Ca^{2+}↓	↓	[53]
PTX and HIRI	eNOS, iNOS↓			cAMP↑ TNF-α, IL-1, IL-6, IL-12, TGF-β, IFN-γ, procollagen-I mRNA↓	↓	
L-NNA and HIRI	iNOS↑, eNOS, NO↓	Male Wistar rats	Liver	TNF-α, NF-κB↑, Bcl-2↓	↑	[54]
L-Arginine/CDN and HIRI	NO, eNOS↑, iNOS↓			TNF-α, NF-κB↓, Bcl-2↑	↓	
iNOS knockout and WIR	iNOS↓	C57BL/6 male rats	293 T cells	PUMA↓	↑	[55]
NAC and HIRI	eNOS↑, iNOS ↓	Male Wister albino rats	Liver	NOSTRIN, MDA, MPO activity↓	↓	[56]
TQ and HIRI	eNOS↑, iNOS ↓			NOSTRIN, MDA, oxidative stress, nitrosative stress↓, GSH↑	↓	
LA and HIRI	iNOS mRNA↓	Male Wistar rats	Liver	NF-κB p65, MIP-2 mRNA, GSH↓	↓	[57]
V and HIRI	NO, iNOS mRNA↓	Male Wistar rats	Lung and Liver tissue	Inhibit HIF-α/HGF/iNOS pathway	↓	[58]
Eupatilin and HIRI	iNOS↓	Male C57BL/6 mice	Embryonic liver BNL CL.2 cell	TLR2/4, p-IκB-a↓, Bcl-2↑	↓	[59]
N-SMase inhibitor and HIRI	iNOS	Male Wistar rats	Liver tissue	Protein nitration, nitrite/nitrate levels, HNE		[60]
Ad-eNOS and small-for-size liver transplatation	NO, eNOS↑	-	Human normal liver cell line L02	TNF-α↓, inhibit macrophage activation	↓	[61]
Ad-eNOS and HIRI	eNOS↑	Male inbred C57BL6 lean mice	Liver	ATP↓, bax, p53↑	↓	[62]

L-NAME: Nomega-nitro-L-arginine methyl ester; BDL: Bile duct ligation; WIR: Warm ischemia and reperfusion; LSEC: Rat liver sinusoidal endothelial cells; KLF2: Kruppel-like factor 2; VCAM-1: Vascular cell adhesion molecule-1; HIRI: Hepatic ischemia reperfusion injury; NF-κB: nuclear factor-kappaB; LTC4S: Leukotriene C4 synthase; AMPK: Adenosine monophosphate activated protein kinase; NAP:N-nitrosodiethylamine; LPS: Lipopolysaccharide; D-GalN: D-galactosamine; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; Bax: BCL2-Associated X; Bcl-2: B-cell lymphoma-2; MAPK: Mitogen-activated protein kinase; IPC: Ischemic preconditioning; TM: Thrombomodulin; PI3K: Phosphoinositide 3-kinase; TLR4: Toll like receptor-4; Nrf2: Nuclear erythroid-related factor 2; MyD88: Myeloid differentiation primary-response protein 88; TBARS: Thiobarbituric acid reactive substances; AT1R: Angiotensin type 1 receptor; VE-cadherin: Vascular endothelial cadherin; JAK: Janus activated kinase 2; DCD: Donated after circulatory death; HMP: Hypothermic machine perfusion; TMZ: Trimetazidine; IGL-1: Institut georges lopez-1; SECs: Sinusoidal endothelial cells; EPO: Erythropoietin; TDF: Tadalafil; PTX: Pentoxifylline; SPF: Pathogen-free; BMMSCs: Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells; NMP: Normothermic machine perfusion; L-NNA: Nomega-nitro-L-arginine; CDN: Cardamonin; PUMA: p53 up-regulated modulator of apoptosis; HIF-α: Hypoxia inducible factor 1α; HGF: Hepatocyte growth factor; MIP-2: Macrophage inflammatory protein-2, LA: Alpha-lipoic acid; V: Vildagliptin; MPO: Myeloperoxidase, MDA: Malondialdehyde; NAC: N-acetylcysteine; TQ: Thymoquinone; Ad-eNOS: Adenovirus-eNOS; N-SMase: Neutral sphingomyelinase; HNE: 4-hydroxynonenal; VEGFR: Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor; ICAM-1: Intracellular cell adhesion molecule-1; βcR: Common β receptor; NOSTRIN: Nitric oxide synthase trafficking.

liver, can activate autophagy and increase NO release during hepatic transplantation. This also indicates the possible connection between NO and autophagy[36].

NO decreases inflammatory cytokines and reduces ROS by inhibiting the mitochondrial respiratory chain

During reperfusion, the surge of inflammatory factors, cytokine liberation, neutrophil infiltration and ROS generation occurred, which led to hepatic injury. An increased level of NO can reduce cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) and interleukin (IL)-1 which stimulate infiltration and

endothelial injury. Also, continuous NO production can reduce ROS and proinflammatory cytokine generation as well as neutrophil infiltration[37]. Inversely, NO deficiency can induce TNF-α expression as a result of ROS surging. Ragy *et al*[38] proved this by adding Nomega-nitro-L-arginine methyl ester (L-NAME) in IRI model rats treated with oxytocin. In this group, not only did the parameter damage increase but also the inflammatory factor such as TNF-α level increased compared with the control group.

ROLE OF ENOS IN HIRI

Activated eNOS produces NO to protect HIRI

eNOS performs various biological functions by promoting the production of NO, which is important for maintaining vascular tone and cardiovascular hemostasis, and inhibiting platelet activation and aggregation. It has been confessed that eNOS shows a hepatoprotective effect in HIRI by improving the production of NO (Figure 1).

There are two main regulation pathways for eNOS activation, one dependent on intracellular concentration of Ca^{2+} and the other independent. The increasing intracellular Ca^{2+} level can enhance the affinity of calmodulin binding to eNOS and activate enzymes to produce NO[39]. For the Ca^{2+}-independent regulation pathway, phosphorylation of the Ser1177 residue or dephosphorylation of the Thr495 residue activates it to produce NO[40].

Calcium-dependent eNOS activation

At the early stage of HIRI, the ischemia will lead to a shortage of oxygen and nutrients, which can decrease ATP availability. Without energy, ATP-dependent ion channels or transporters cannot work. The incompetence of the Na^+/K^+ pump leads to depolarization of the cell membrane, resulting in the influx of Ca^{2+}[41]. Besides, anaerobic glycolysis induces an increase in H^+, which activates intracellular proteases to increase cellular permeability. Furthermore, Na^+/Ca^{2+} exchange is activated due to a high concentration of H^+, leading to a further influx of Ca^{2+}. Consequently, eNOS is activated due to the increase of intracellular concentration to produce NO, carrying anti-HIRI activities at the initial stage.

Calcium-independent eNOS activation

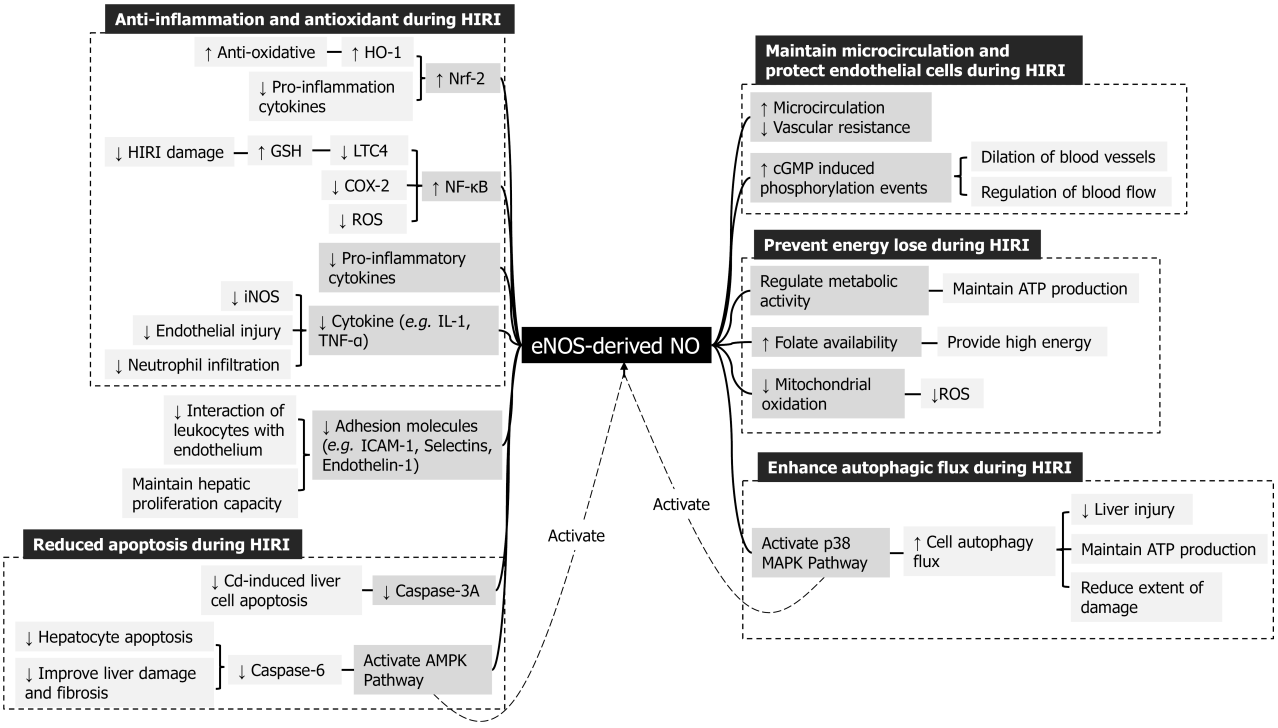
Phosphoinositide 3-kinase/Akt pathway induced eNOS activation: The phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt signaling pathway is a cell survival pathway that regulates cell proliferation and apoptosis, as well as an endogenous negative feedback regulator that functions in anti-inflammation and anti-apoptosis effects in IR.

PI3K can activate Akt to act on the phosphorylation of eNOS. It has been proven that telluric acid has a hepatoprotective effect by elevating the expression of eNOS, which is accompanied with elevated expression of p-PI3K and p-Akt proteins. Besides, the activation of PI3K/Akt also inhibits NF-κB and activates nuclear erythroid-related factor-2, reducing pro-inflammation cytokine expression and inducing anti-oxidative effects[42]. Moreover, through the PI3K/Akt pathway, apelin preconditioning can increase the expression of eNOS and counteract the pathological effects of the angiotensin II/angiotensin II type 1 receptor system in HIRI[43]. Thus, the activation of the PI3K/Akt pathway leads to the phosphorylation of eNOS and continuous catalysation of NO production, which is essential to counteract HIRI.

KLF2 induced eNOS activation: There may exist other ways of influencing the eNOS activity during IR. It has been proven that WIR injury can decrease the expression of KLF2 in endothelial cells. Also, this reduction is accompanied by a decrease in phosphorylated eNOS (p-eNOS), one of the KLF2 targets. And the IR damage can be mitigated by pretreatment with simvastatin through a KLF2-dependent mechanism, upregulating the mRNA expression of *KLF2* and *eNOS* as well as the protein expression of KLF2 and p-eNOS[16,44]. Hu *et al*[45] also demonstrated that hypothermic machine perfusion inhibited NF-κB signaling and activated eNOS/NO signaling through KLF2 expression, thereby alleviating the inflammatory response and oxidative stress injury. It has demonstrated that KLF2 activators can be candidate therapeutic agents for HIRI.

AMPK induced eNOS activation: AMPK plays a key role in the regulation of cellular energy homeostasis. The activation of this kinase is a response to the stimulus. Mahfoudh *et al*[46] reported that repeated administration of trimetazidine protected against WIR injury by decreasing liver damage and oxidative stress. The underlying mechanism involves the activation of the AMPK/eNOS signaling pathway. In addition, similar mechanisms have been identified in the protective effect of Institut Georges Lopez 1 solution on cold-stored fatty liver grafts. The effect is mainly exerted through the activation of the AMPK pathway, which targets eNOS to produce NO, offsetting aggravated microcirculatory changes, and improving vascular resistance and function during IR[47,48].

Other pathways: SEW2871, a selective sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor 1 (S1PR1) agonist, can restore



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.504

Figure 1 Hepatoprotective effects of endothelial nitric oxide synthase-derived nitric oxide during hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury and underlying mechanisms. Nrf2: Nuclear erythroid-related factor; HO-1: Heme oxygenate-1; IL-1: Interleukin-1; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; NF-κB: Nuclear factor-κ-gene binding; LTC4: Leukotriene C4; GSH: Glutathione; COX-2: Cyclooxygenase 2; ROS: Reactive oxygen species; ICAM-1: Intracellular cell adhesion molecule-1; AMPK: Adenosine monophosphate activated protein kinase; MAPK: Mitogen-activated protein kinase; iNOS: Inducible nitric oxide synthase.

the expression of eNOS and vascular endothelial (VE) cadherin in sinusoidal endothelial cells during HIRI *in vivo* and does not influence the expression of p-Akt. Thus, there may be a regulation pathway between S1PR1 and eNOS[49]. And the expression of VE-cadherin is important for vascular integrity, which is the basis for eNOS expression[49].

Moreover, ischemia preconditioning (IPC) can protect HIRI through p38 MAPK activation, which induces eNOS-derived NO expression to enhance cell autophagy in HIRI[35]. However, pretreatment with 3,7-dimethyl-1-propargylxanthine, an adenosine A2 receptor (A2AR) antagonist, can repeal the protective effect induced by IPC. Therefore, it can be inferred that there may be a relationship between the A2AR and eNOS[50].

The study of Kebschull *et al*[51] showed that low-dose erythropoietin (EPO) treatment significantly increased hepatic NO bioavailability by up-regulating eNOS expression. EPO-mediated eNOS phosphorylation is promoted by EPOR-mediated activation of the Janus kinase 2/PI3K/Akt pathway and common β receptor (βcR)-dependent activation of AMPK. In addition to this, activation of the βcR2-vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-2 complex is also involved in the regulation, but its downstream signaling is currently unclear.

ROLE OF INOS IN HIRI

As mentioned above, iNOS-derived NO may have different functions in HIRI[15]. Although in most cases iNOS is considered to be harmful to the HIRI, it does not affect or even protects the HIRI in some conditions. In a study of models with liver ischemia and partial liver resection, *iNOS* mRNA expression was not found to be significantly altered compared to the sham group. While during 6 to 8 h after hepatectomy, iNOS expression and NO production were promoted by cytokines, thereby improving liver microcirculation and preventing cell apoptosis[52]. The protective effect of iNOS has only been demonstrated in a few specific experiments and lacks widespread validation. Due to differences in experimental subjects, measurement criteria, and experimental time constraints, iNOS-derived NO exhibits a more complex and unclear role than eNOS.

iNOS aggravates HIRI

Hide *et al*[14] found a surge of NO in WIR in aged livers, which was mainly induced by iNOS

production. The surge of NO derived from iNOS can increase the expression of reactive nitrogen species (RNS) and inflammatory cytokines, resulting in cytotoxic damage in hepatocytes. Besides, the damage from iNOS is also confirmed in other studies. As intrahepatic macrophages, KCs are activated in early IRI, producing excessive amounts of iNOS-derived NO and leading to massive production of pro-inflammatory factors, cytokines, and ROS, which are key links to impaired microcirculation in the liver and deteriorate HIRI[5,53].

At the late phase of HIRI, the function of iNOS will be at a prominent stage. Excess NO derived from iNOS has cytotoxic effects that induce inflammation and excessive oxidation, and performs many deleterious functions in HIRI. Increased iNOS expression is associated with increased TNF-α and NF-κB, which leads to increased expression of pro-inflammatory genes, inflammatory mediators, and regulatory enzymes[54]. They are both important to trigger inflammation reactions and may have deleterious effects on IRI. Besides, in studying the role of iNOS/NO in the interferon regulatory factor-1 (IRF1) signaling pathway of primary human hepatocytes, Du *et al*[55] found the existence of a positive-feedback loop between iNOS and IRF1. The IRF1 and p53 can upregulate the p53 up-regulated modulator of apoptosis (PUMA), which is a modulator of apoptosis, resulting in hepatocyte death and further damage to hepatic IRI.

REGULATING INOS AND ENOS EXPRESSION TO PROTECT HIRI

The extent and intensity of eNOS and iNOS in HIRI are both higher than those in the normal state, while excess NO will produce peroxynitrite to aggravate IR damage. These can be reduced by using high doses of tadalafil and pentoxifylline to mitigate the deterioration of nitrosative stress and endothelial cell injury[53].

Iwasaki *et al*[6] demonstrated that L-NAME, an NOS inhibitor, attenuated liver damage in IRI of cholestatic livers by inhibiting the NO production. Comparing the expression of iNOS and eNOS with L-NAME treatment, they found that this kind of protection was mainly mediated by the inhibitory effects of iNOS. It also prevented the increase of asymmetric dimethylarginine, which is an exogenous inhibitor of eNOS, to protect against IRI at the early stage.

Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cell (BMMSC) transplantation can regulate NOS synthesis by increasing eNOS expression as well as inhibiting iNOS expression and excessive NO production to protect HIRI and reduce hepatocyte apoptosis. Its regulations are closely related to the inhibition of NOS-induced macrophage activation, the suppression of large amounts of iNOS and NO synthesized by macrophages, and the amelioration of endothelial damage. And the combined use of BMMSCs and normothermic machine perfusion can increase the balance of ET/NO ratio[5].

Besides, the eNOS traffic inducer (NOSTRIN) can significantly inhibit NO release by decreasing the enzymatic activity of eNOS. Pretreatment with N-acetylcysteine or thymoquinone can up-regulate eNOS along with NO production and down-regulate iNOS and NOSTRIN expression to attenuate HIRI injury, showing the protective effect of increasing eNOS and NO levels and inhibiting iNOS expression against IRI in rat liver[56].

Inhibiting iNOS to protect HIRI

After reperfusion, the expression of inflammatory factors such as macrophage inflammatory protein-2 and iNOS increase with the activation of NF-κB, leading to a series of inflammation reactions. Alpha-lipoic acid can reduce the formation of excess NO during reperfusion by decreasing the expression of *iNOS* mRNA and reduce cellular damage from NO-forming NOS superoxide and peroxide anions[57]. Beyond that, in a study of vildagliptin function in lung injury after hepatic IRI, significant inhibition of *iNOS* mRNA expression and NO was observed by the involvement of the hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF)-α/hepatocyte growth factor/iNOS pathway. The evaluated HIF-α can increase iNOS expression in various models. Therefore, targeting HIF-α expression can reduce tissue damage[58]. Furthermore, hepatic IR-induced iNOS protein expression can be diminished by eupatilin, which also suppresses the Toll-like receptor 2/NF-κB pathway to ameliorate inflammation response[59]. In addition, neural-sphingomyelinase (N-SMase) can produce ceramide, which is a mediator of iNOS expression. Inhibition of N-SMase leads to a decrease in iNOS levels, along with a decrease in protein nitrification and nitrite/nitrate levels in WIR[60].

Inhibiting overexpression of and eNOS

Some studies have demonstrated the hepatoprotective effect of genetic eNOS overexpression in small-for-size liver transplantation and illustrated the importance of promoting eNOS expression for hepato-protection[61]. However, there is insufficient evidence for a protective effect of eNOS overexpression, and evidence that eNOS overexpression is detrimental to HIRI[62]. The dual effect of eNOS in HIRI remains controversial.

The fact is that the expression of eNOS will be deteriorated by oxidative stress and endothelial damage during the progression of ischemia, while the function of iNOS will be stimulated by oxidative stress during reperfusion and aggravate the liver injury. The imbalance of eNOS and iNOS can also

aggravate IRI.

THERAPEUTIC PERSPECTIVES

NOS drugs as well as drugs for the regulation of NOS enzymes may be the way forward for liver protection. However, more in-depth studies are still needed. Not only do drugs need to be stable, but they also need to avoid the harm that NO and NOS can cause to reduce side effects. Besides, despite a number of experimental studies demonstrating the beneficial effects of NO-releasing compounds and some drugs that promote NO release in ameliorating hepatic IRI, the results of trials and evaluations in the clinical setting are still lacking. Perhaps more randomised controlled clinical trials should be strengthened in the future to obtain more therapeutic results.

In a nutshell, increasing or decreasing NO availability in the hepatic tissue may both be ways to prevent and treat HIRI and identifying ways to balance the expression of eNOS and iNOS is important to protect IR and can be a promising direction for clinical research.

CONCLUSION

In general, NO along with eNOS and iNOS can play complex roles in HIRI. NO can down-regulate LTC4S by inhibiting the NFκB pathway, inhibit apoptotic related genes such as *Bax* and *Bcl-2*, enhance autophagic flux, decrease inflammatory cytokines, and reduce ROS by inhibiting the mitochondrial respiratory chain. Furthermore, NO induced by different NOS results in a duality of action in HIRI. NO derived by eNOS prefers to protect endothelial cells and attenuate liver injury in HIRI. However, iNOS promotes the production of NO in response to stimuli, thus exacerbating liver damage. But their role is not set in stone. Overexpression of eNOS also worsens HIRI, whereas iNOS has also been reported to have a protective effect against HIRI. Actually, these views remain controversial, and the underlying mechanisms are urgently needed to be clarified.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zhang YP and Liu XR are co-first authors and contributed equally to this work, and they wrote and revised the paper; Yang MW participated in data collection and revised the paper by making point-by-point responses to the reviewers; Yang SL and Hong FF are co-corresponding authors who contributed equally to this work, and they are responsible for improving grammars and languages, conceptualizing the idea, and obtaining funding.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the authors or other coauthors in this manuscript.

Country/Territory of origin: China

ORCID number: Yi-Ping Zhang 0000-0003-4425-2165; Xin-Ran Liu 0000-0002-6050-2497; Mei-Wen Yang 0000-0002-8322-6181; Shu-Long Yang 0000-0002-1407-6255; Fen-Fang Hong 0000-0001-6440-1311.

S-Editor: Chang KL
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Chang KL

REFERENCES

1 **Ikeda T**, Yanaga K, Kishikawa K, Kakizoe S, Shimada M, Sugimachi K. Ischemic injury in liver transplantation: difference in injury sites between warm and cold ischemia in rats. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 454-461 [PMID: 1639355 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840160226]

2 **Liu Z**, Jiang Y, Yuan H, Fang Q, Cai N, Suo C, Jin L, Zhang T, Chen X. The trends in incidence of primary liver cancer caused by specific etiologies: Results from the Global Burden of Disease Study 2016 and implications for liver cancer prevention. *J Hepatol* 2019; **70**: 674-683 [PMID: 30543829 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.12.001]

3 **Phillips L**, Toledo AH, Lopez-Neblina F, Anaya-Prado R, Toledo-Pereyra LH. Nitric oxide mechanism of protection in ischemia and reperfusion injury. *J Invest Surg* 2009; **22**: 46-55 [PMID: 19191157 DOI: 10.1080/08941930802709470]

4 **Rampes S**, Ma D. Hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in liver transplant setting: mechanisms and protective strategies. *J Biomed Res* 2019; **33**: 221-234 [PMID: 32383437 DOI: 10.7555/JBR.32.20180087]

5 **Yang L**, Cao H, Sun D, Hou B, Lin L, Shen ZY, Song HL. Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells combine with normothermic machine perfusion to improve rat donor liver quality-the important role of hepatic microcirculation in donation after circulatory death. *Cell Tissue Res* 2020; **381**: 239-254 [PMID: 32347385 DOI: 10.1007/s00441-020-03202-z]

6 **Iwasaki J**, Afify M, Bleilevens C, Klinge U, Weiskirchen R, Steitz J, Vogt M, Yagi S, Nagai K, Uemoto S, Tolba RH. The Impact of a Nitric Oxide Synthase Inhibitor (L-NAME) on Ischemia¯Reperfusion Injury of Cholestatic Livers by Pringle Maneuver and Liver Resection after Bile Duct Ligation in Rats. *Int J Mol Sci* 2019; **20** [PMID: 31035686 DOI: 10.3390/ijms20092114]

7 **Donnarumma E**, Ali MJ, Rushing AM, Scarborough AL, Bradley JM, Organ CL, Islam KN, Polhemus DJ, Evangelista S, Cirino G, Jenkins JS, Patel RA, Lefer DJ, Goodchild TT. Zofenopril Protects Against Myocardial Ischemia-Reperfusion Injury by Increasing Nitric Oxide and Hydrogen Sulfide Bioavailability. *J Am Heart Assoc* 2016; **5** [PMID: 27381758 DOI: 10.1161/JAHA.116.003531]

8 **Kim JS**, Ohshima S, Pediaditakis P, Lemasters JJ. Nitric oxide protects rat hepatocytes against reperfusion injury mediated by the mitochondrial permeability transition. *Hepatology* 2004; **39**: 1533-1543 [PMID: 15185294 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20197]

9 **Hara Y**, Teramoto K, Kumashiro Y, Sato E, Nakamura N, Takatsu S, Kawamura T, Arii S. Beneficial effect of tetrahydrobiopterin on the survival of rats exposed to hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury. *Transplant Proc* 2005; **37**: 442-444 [PMID: 15808670 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2004.12.051]

10 **Hibbs JB Jr**, Taintor RR, Vavrin Z, Rachlin EM. Nitric oxide: a cytotoxic activated macrophage effector molecule. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1988; **157**: 87-94 [PMID: 3196352 DOI: 10.1016/s0006-291x(88)80015-9]

11 **Zhang YQ**, Ding N, Zeng YF, Xiang YY, Yang MW, Hong FF, Yang SL. New progress in roles of nitric oxide during hepatic ischemia reperfusion injury. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 2505-2510 [PMID: 28465634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i14.2505]

12 **Crane BR**, Arvai AS, Ghosh DK, Wu C, Getzoff ED, Stuehr DJ, Tainer JA. Structure of nitric oxide synthase oxygenase dimer with pterin and substrate. *Science* 1998; **279**: 2121-2126 [PMID: 9516116 DOI: 10.1126/science.279.5359.2121]

13 **Förstermann U**, Sessa WC. Nitric oxide synthases: regulation and function. *Eur Heart J* 2012; **33**: 829-837, 837a [PMID: 21890489 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/ehr304]

14 **Hide D**, Warren A, Fernández-Iglesias A, Maeso-Díaz R, Peralta C, Le Couteur DG, Bosch J, Cogger VC, Gracia-Sancho J. Ischemia/Reperfusion Injury in the Aged Liver: The Importance of the Sinusoidal Endothelium in Developing Therapeutic Strategies for the Elderly. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci* 2020; **75**: 268-277 [PMID: 30649272 DOI: 10.1093/gerona/glz012]

15 **Abu-Amara M**, Yang SY, Seifalian A, Davidson B, Fuller B. The nitric oxide pathway--evidence and mechanisms for protection against liver ischaemia reperfusion injury. *Liver Int* 2012; **32**: 531-543 [PMID: 22316165 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2012.02755.x]

16 **Hide D**, Ortega-Ribera M, Garcia-Pagan JC, Peralta C, Bosch J, Gracia-Sancho J. Effects of warm ischemia and reperfusion on the liver microcirculatory phenotype of rats: underlying mechanisms and pharmacological therapy. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 22107 [PMID: 26905693 DOI: 10.1038/srep22107]

17 **El-Gohary OA**. Obestatin improves hepatic injury induced by ischemia/reperfusion in rats: Role of nitric oxide. *Gen Physiol Biophys* 2017; **36**: 109-115 [PMID: 27901469 DOI: 10.4149/gpb_2016030]

18 **Cavalieri B**, Perrelli MG, Aragno M, Ramadori P, Poli G, Cutrìn JC. Ischaemic preconditioning modulates the activity of Kupffer cells during *in vivo* reperfusion injury of rat liver. *Cell Biochem Funct* 2003; **21**: 299-305 [PMID: 14624466 DOI: 10.1002/cbf.1028]

19 **Matuschak GM**, Henry KA, Johanns CA, Lechner AJ. Liver-lung interactions following Escherichia coli bacteremic sepsis and secondary hepatic ischemia/reperfusion injury. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med* 2001; **163**: 1002-1009 [PMID: 11282780 DOI: 10.1164/ajrccm.163.4.2003020]

20 **Hong FF**, Wang YF, Liu H, Yang MW, Yang SL. V-PYRRO/NO downregulates mRNA expression levels of leukotriene C4 synthase during hepatic ischemia reperfusion injury in rats *via* inhibition of the nuclear factor-κB activation pathway. *Biomed Rep* 2016; **4**: 112-116 [PMID: 26870346 DOI: 10.3892/br.2015.533]

21 **Zhao P**, Sun X, Chaggan C, Liao Z, In Wong K, He F, Singh S, Loomba R, Karin M, Witztum JL, Saltiel AR. An AMPK-caspase-6 axis controls liver damage in nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Science* 2020; **367**: 652-660 [PMID: 32029622 DOI: 10.1126/science.aay0542]

22 **Gao D**, Xu Z, Qiao P, Liu S, Zhang L, He P, Zhang X, Wang Y, Min W. Cadmium induces liver cell apoptosis through caspase-3A activation in purse red common carp (Cyprinus carpio). *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e83423 [PMID: 24349509 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0083423]

23 **Zhang R**, Yi R, Bi Y, Xing L, Bao J, Li J. The Effect of Selenium on the Cd-Induced Apoptosis *via* NO-Mediated Mitochondrial Apoptosis Pathway in Chicken Liver. *Biol Trace Elem Res* 2017; **178**: 310-319 [PMID: 28062951 DOI: 10.1007/s12011-016-0925-7]

24 **Abdel Moneim AE**. Indigofera oblongifolia Prevents Lead Acetate-Induced Hepatotoxicity, Oxidative Stress, Fibrosis and Apoptosis in Rats. *PLoS One* 2016; **11**: e0158965 [PMID: 27391413 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0158965]

25 **Fouad AA**, Qutub HO, Al-Melhim WN. Punicalagin alleviates hepatotoxicity in rats challenged with cyclophosphamide. *Environ Toxicol Pharmacol* 2016; **45**: 158-162 [PMID: 27310207 DOI: 10.1016/j.etap.2016.05.031]

26 **Zhao J**, Liu T, Ma L, Yan M, Zhao Y, Gu Z, Huang Y. Protective effect of acteoside on immunological liver injury induced by Bacillus Calmette-Guerin plus lipopolysaccharide. *Planta Med* 2009; **75**: 1463-1469 [PMID: 19548187 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1185796]

27 **Yang T**, Wu J, Wang C, Liu Q, Ma X, Peng J, Kaku T, Liu K. Protective effect of JBP485 on concanavalin A-induced liver injury in mice. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 2009; **61**: 767-774 [PMID: 19505367 DOI: 10.1211/jpp.61.06.0009]

28 **Chen KH**, Lin BR, Chien CT, Ho CH. Emblica officinalis Gaertn. attentuates N-nitrosodiethylamine-induced apoptosis, autophagy, and inflammation in rat livers. *J Med Food* 2011; **14**: 746-755 [PMID: 21761987 DOI: 10.1089/jmf.2010.1459]

29 **Tsuchihashi S**, Kaldas F, Chida N, Sudo Y, Tamura K, Zhai Y, Qiao B, Busuttil RW, Kupiec-Weglinski JW. FK330, a novel inducible nitric oxide synthase inhibitor, prevents ischemia and reperfusion injury in rat liver transplantation. *Am J Transplant* 2006; **6**: 2013-2022 [PMID: 16796718 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2006.01435.x]

30 **Lin X**, Zhang S, Huang R, Tan S, Liang S, Wu X, Zhuo L, Huang Q. Protective effect of tormentic acid from Potentilla chinensis against lipopolysaccharide/D-galactosamine induced fulminant hepatic failure in mice. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2014; **19**: 365-372 [PMID: 24560903 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2014.02.009]

31 **Zhao Y**, Zhou P, Liu B, Bambakidis T, Mazitschek R, Alam HB, Li Y. Protective effect of suberoylanilide hydroxamic acid against lipopolysaccharide-induced liver damage in rodents. *J Surg Res* 2015; **194**: 544-550 [PMID: 25479907 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2014.10.056]

32 **Yang BY**, Zhang XY, Guan SW, Hua ZC. Protective Effect of Procyanidin B2 against CCl4-Induced Acute Liver Injury in Mice. *Molecules* 2015; **20**: 12250-12265 [PMID: 26151119 DOI: 10.3390/molecules200712250]

33 **Sherif IO**, Al-Shaalan NH. Vildagliptin Attenuates Hepatic Ischemia/Reperfusion Injury *via* the TLR4/NF-*κ*B Signaling Pathway. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2018; **2018**: 3509091 [PMID: 30405876 DOI: 10.1155/2018/3509091]

34 **Jiang Q**, Pan Y, Cheng Y, Li H. Protection of rat liver against hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury by a novel selenocysteine-containing 7-mer peptide. *Mol Med Rep* 2016; **14**: 2007-2015 [PMID: 27431272 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2016.5464]

35 **Shin JK**, Kang JW, Lee SM. Enhanced nitric oxide-mediated autophagy contributes to the hepatoprotective effects of ischemic preconditioning during ischemia and reperfusion. *Nitric Oxide* 2016; **58**: 10-19 [PMID: 27246638 DOI: 10.1016/j.niox.2016.05.007]

36 **Gracia-Sancho J**, García-Calderó H, Hide D, Marrone G, Guixé-Muntet S, Peralta C, García-Pagán JC, Abraldes JG, Bosch J. Simvastatin maintains function and viability of steatotic rat livers procured for transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2013; **58**: 1140-1146 [PMID: 23428876 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.02.005]

37 **Rodríguez-Reynoso S**, Leal-Cortés C, Portilla-de Buen E, López-De la Torre SP. Ischemic Preconditioning Preserves Liver Energy Charge and Function on Hepatic Ischemia/Reperfusion Injury in Rats. *Arch Med Res* 2018; **49**: 373-380 [PMID: 30554858 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2018.11.004]

38 **Ragy MM**, Aziz NM. Prevention of renal ischemia/perfusion-induced renal and hepatic injury in adult male Albino rats by oxytocin: role of nitric oxide. *J Basic Clin Physiol Pharmacol* 2017; **28**: 615-621 [PMID: 28742516 DOI: 10.1515/jbcpp-2016-0197]

39 **Michel JB**, Feron O, Sacks D, Michel T. Reciprocal regulation of endothelial nitric-oxide synthase by Ca2+-calmodulin and caveolin. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 15583-15586 [PMID: 9188442 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.25.15583]

40 **Fleming I**, Busse R. Molecular mechanisms involved in the regulation of the endothelial nitric oxide synthase. *Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol* 2003; **284**: R1-12 [PMID: 12482742 DOI: 10.1152/ajpregu.00323.2002]

41 **Nakazato PCG**, Victorino JP, Fina CF, Mendes KDS, Gomes MCJ, Evora PRB, D'Albuquerque LAC, Castro-E-Silva O. Liver ischemia and reperfusion injury. Pathophysiology and new horizons in preconditioning and therapy. *Acta Cir Bras* 2018; **33**: 723-735 [PMID: 30208134 DOI: 10.1590/s0102-865020180080000008]

42 **Rabie MA**, Zaki HF, Sayed HM. Telluric acid ameliorates hepatic ischemia reperfusion-induced injury in rats: Involvement of TLR4, Nrf2, and PI3K/Akt signaling pathways. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2019; **168**: 404-411 [PMID: 31386827 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2019.08.001]

43 **Sabry MM**, Ramadan NM, Al Dreny BA, Rashed LA, Abo El Enein A. Protective effect of apelin preconditioning in a rat model of hepatic ischemia reperfusion injury; possible interaction between the apelin/APJ system, Ang II/AT1R system and eNOS. *United European Gastroenterol J* 2019; **7**: 689-698 [PMID: 31210947 DOI: 10.1177/2050640619826847]

44 **Liu Z**, Lai CH, Zhang X, Luo J, Huang X, Qi X, Wang W, Zhong Z, Xiaoli F, Li L, Xiong Y, Senninger N, Wang Y, Ye Q, Ye S. Simvastatin ameliorates total liver ischemia/reperfusion injury *via* KLF2-mediated mechanism in rats. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2019; **43**: 171-178 [PMID: 30274910 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2018.08.014]

45 **Hu X**, Wang W, Zeng C, He W, Zhong Z, Liu Z, Wang Y, Ye Q. Appropriate timing for hypothermic machine perfusion to preserve livers donated after circulatory death. *Mol Med Rep* 2020; **22**: 2003-2011 [PMID: 32582977 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2020.11257]

46 **Mahfoudh Boussaid A**, Selmi R, Bejaoui M, Hadj Ayed K, Zaouali MA, Ben Abdennebi H. Effectiveness of a single *vs* repeated administration of trimetazidine in the protection against warm ischemia/reperfusion injury of rat liver. *Turk J Med Sci* 2016; **46**: 1258-1264 [PMID: 27513433 DOI: 10.3906/sag-1505-102]

47 **Panisello Rosello A**, Teixeira da Silva R, Castro C, G Bardallo R, Calvo M, Folch-Puy E, Carbonell T, Palmeira C, Roselló Catafau J, Adam R. Polyethylene Glycol 35 as a Perfusate Additive for Mitochondrial and Glycocalyx Protection in HOPE Liver Preservation. *Int J Mol Sci* 2020; **21** [PMID: 32784882 DOI: 10.3390/ijms21165703]

48 **Panisello-Roselló A**, Verde E, Amine Zaouali M, Flores M, Alva N, Lopez A, Folch-Puy E, Carbonell T, Hotter G, Adam R, Roselló-Catafau J. The Relevance of the UPS in Fatty Liver Graft Preservation: A New Approach for IGL-1 and HTK Solutions. *Int J Mol Sci* 2017; **18** [PMID: 29088097 DOI: 10.3390/ijms18112287]

49 **Ito T**, Kuriyama N, Kato H, Matsuda A, Mizuno S, Usui M, Sakurai H, Isaji S. Sinusoidal protection by sphingosine-1-phosphate receptor 1 agonist in liver ischemia-reperfusion injury. *J Surg Res* 2018; **222**: 139-152 [PMID: 29273365 DOI: 10.1016/j.jss.2017.09.048]

50 **Robertson FP**, Fuller BJ, Davidson BR. An Evaluation of Ischaemic Preconditioning as a Method of Reducing Ischaemia Reperfusion Injury in Liver Surgery and Transplantation. *J Clin Med* 2017; **6** [PMID: 28708111 DOI: 10.3390/jcm6070069]

51 **Kebschull L**, Theilmann LFC, Mohr A, Uennigmann W, Stoeppeler S, Heitplatz B, Spiegel HU, Bahde R, Palmes DM, Becker F. $EPOR_2/\beta cR_2$-independendent effects of low-dose epoetin-*α* in porcine liver transplantation. *Biosci Rep* 2017; **37** [PMID: 29127105 DOI: 10.1042/BSR20171007]

52 **Athanasopoulos P**, Mastoraki A, Papalois A, Nastos C, Kondi-Pafiti A, Kostopanagiotou G, Smyrniotis V, Arkadopoulos N. Expression of Inflammatory and Regenerative Genes in a Model of Liver Ischemia/Reperfusion and Partial

Hepatectomy. *J Invest Surg* 2016; **29**: 67-73 [PMID: 26375364 DOI: 10.3109/08941939.2015.1060280]

53 **Bektas S**, Karakaya K, Can M, Bahadir B, Guven B, Erdogan N, Ozdamar SO. The effects of tadalafil and pentoxifylline on apoptosis and nitric oxide synthase in liver ischemia/reperfusion injury. *Kaohsiung J Med Sci* 2016; **32**: 339-347 [PMID: 27450022 DOI: 10.1016/j.kjms.2016.05.005]

54 **Atef Y**, El-Fayoumi HM, Abdel-Mottaleb Y, Mahmoud MF. Effect of cardamonin on hepatic ischemia reperfusion induced in rats: Role of nitric oxide. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2017; **815**: 446-453 [PMID: 28966130 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2017.09.037]

55 **Du Q**, Luo J, Yang MQ, Liu Q, Heres C, Yan YH, Stolz D, Geller DA. iNOS/NO is required for IRF1 activation in response to liver ischemia-reperfusion in mice. *Mol Med* 2020; **26**: 56 [PMID: 32517688 DOI: 10.1186/s10020-020-00182-2]

56 **Ren Y**, Wang LH, Deng FS, Li JS, Jiang L. Protective effect and mechanism of alpha-lipoic acid on partial hepatic ischemia-reperfusion injury in adult male rats. *Physiol Res* 2019; **68**: 739-745 [PMID: 31424256 DOI: 10.33549/physiolres.934095]

57 **Sherif IO**, Al-Shaalan NH. Alleviation of remote lung injury following liver ischemia/reperfusion: Possible protective role of vildagliptin. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2021; **91**: 107305 [PMID: 33388732 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2020.107305]

58 **Lee HM**, Jang HJ, Kim SS, Kim HJ, Lee SY, Oh MY, Kwan HC, Jang DS, Eom DW. Protective Effect of Eupatilin Pretreatment Against Hepatic Ischemia-Reperfusion Injury in Mice. *Transplant Proc* 2016; **48**: 1226-1233 [PMID: 27320593 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2016.01.024]

59 **Unal B**, Ozcan F, Tuzcu H, Kırac E, Elpek GO, Aslan M. Inhibition of neutral sphingomyelinase decreases elevated levels of nitrative and oxidative stress markers in liver ischemia-reperfusion injury. *Redox Rep* 2017; **22**: 147-159 [PMID: 27077455 DOI: 10.1080/13510002.2016.1162431]

60 **Abd-Elbaset M**, Arafa EA, El Sherbiny GA, Abdel-Bakky MS, Elgendy AN. Thymoquinone mitigate ischemia-reperfusion-induced liver injury in rats: a pivotal role of nitric oxide signaling pathway. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 2017; **390**: 69-76 [PMID: 27717985 DOI: 10.1007/s00210-016-1306-7]

61 **Zhang B**, Liu QH, Zhou CJ, Hu MZ, Qian HX. Protective effect of eNOS overexpression against ischemia/reperfusion injury in small-for-size liver transplantation. *Exp Ther Med* 2016; **12**: 3181-3188 [PMID: 27882135 DOI: 10.3892/etm.2016.3762]

62 **Palanisamy AP**, Cheng G, Sutter AG, Liu J, Lewin DN, Chao J, Chavin K. Adenovirus-mediated eNOS expression augments liver injury after ischemia/reperfusion in mice. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e93304 [PMID: 24667691 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0093304]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 516-524

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.516

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Renal manifestations of hepatitis E among immunocompetent and solid organ transplant recipients

Karthik Kovvuru, Nicholas Carbajal, Abhinandan Reddy Pakanati, Charat Thongprayoon, Panupong Hansrivijit, Boonphiphop Boonpheng, Pattharawin Pattharanitima, Voravech Nissaisorakarn, Wisit Cheungpasitporn, Swetha R Kanduri

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B, B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Kayesh MEH, Manrai M, Tanaka Y

Received: June 25, 2021
Peer-review started: June 25, 2021
First decision: July 27, 2021
Revised: August 4, 2021
Accepted: February 23, 2022
Article in press: February 23, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Karthik Kovvuru, Nicholas Carbajal, Swetha R Kanduri, Department of Medicine, Ochsner Clinic Foundation, New Orleans, LA 70121, United States

Abhinandan Reddy Pakanati, Department of Medicine, The Kidney Clinic LLC, Snellville, GA 30078, United States

Charat Thongprayoon, Department of Nephrology and Hypertension, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN 55905, United States

Panupong Hansrivijit, Department of Internal Medicine, UPMC Pinnacle, Harrisburg, PA 17104, United States

Boonphiphop Boonpheng, Department of Nephrology, David Geffen School of Medicine, University of California, Los Angeles, CA 90095, United States

Pattharawin Pattharanitima, Department of Internal Medicine, Faculty of Medicine, Thammasat University, Pathum Thani 12121, Thailand

Voravech Nissaisorakarn, Department of Internal Medicine, MetroWest Medical Center, Tufts University School of Medicine, Boston, MA 01760, United States

Wisit Cheungpasitporn, Department of Medicine, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN 55905, United States

Corresponding author: Wisit Cheungpasitporn, FACP, Associate Professor, Department of Medicine, Mayo Clinic, 200 First St. SW, Rochester, MN 55905, United States.
wcheungpasitporn@gmail.com

Abstract

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infections are generally self-limited. Rare cases of hepatitis E induced fulminant liver failure requiring liver transplantation are reported in the literature. Even though HEV infection is generally encountered among developing countries, a recent uptrend is reported in developed countries. Consumption of unprocessed meat and zoonosis are considered to be the likely transmission modalities in developed countries. Renal involvement of HEV generally holds a benign and self-limited course. Although rare cases of cryoglobulinemia are reported in immunocompetent patients, glomerular

manifestations of HEV infection are frequently encountered in immunocompromised and solid organ transplant recipients. The spectrum of renal manifestations of HEV infection include pre-renal failure, glomerular disorders, tubular and interstitial injury. Kidney biopsy is the gold standard diagnostic test that confirms the pattern of injury. Management predominantly includes conservative approach. Reduction of immunosuppressive medications and ribavirin (for 3-6 mo) is considered among patients with solid organ transplants. Here we review the clinical course, pathogenesis, renal manifestations, and management of HEV among immunocompetent and solid organ transplant recipients.

Key Words: Hepatitis E; Acute kidney injury; Glomerular disorders; Kidney biopsy; Solid organ transplant; Kidney transplant

Core Tip: Hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection is infrequently associated with significant mortality and morbidity. HEV infection is not only restricted to developing countries, but is also identified among developed nations and predominantly holds zoonotic transmission. Renal manifestations of HEV infection range from acute tubular necrosis to immune-mediated glomerular injury. Conservative approach is routinely employed in management of acute kidney injury from HEV. Ribavirin and reduction of immunosuppression are considered among patients with solid organ transplants as they are prone to develop chronic hepatitis E infection. Plasma exchange and pulse steroids are sometimes used in management of crescentic glomerular nephritis associated with HEV infection.

Citation: Kovvuru K, Carbajal N, Pakanati AR, Thongprayoon C, Hansrivijit P, Boonpheng B, Pattharanitima P, Nissaisorakarn V, Cheungpasitporn W, Kanduri SR. Renal manifestations of hepatitis E among immunocompetent and solid organ transplant recipients. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 516-524
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/516.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.516

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis E virus (HEV) has a pronounced worldwide distribution. It is a spherical, single-strand RNA virus consisting of three partially overlapping open reading frames (ORF) ORF1, ORF2, and ORF3[1]. HEV belongs to hepeviridae family, and eight genotypes of HEV (HEV1 to HEV 8) have been identified [2,3]. Genotypes HEV1 and HEV2 are routinely encountered in developing countries and are transmitted through fecal-oral route. HEV3 and HEV4 are associated with sporadic autochthonous infection among western countries and are predominantly transmitted through animal reservoirs and ingestion of uncooked meat[4-6]. Additionally, HEV genome 3 related infection is associated with solid organ transplant recipients and immunocompromised patients. Other uncommon modalities of transmission could occur through blood products and solid organ transplants[7,8]. Transfusion-related transmission is not common in the United States, but is reported in countries like China and Japan[9, 10]. Lastly, vertical transmission of HEV infection from mother to fetus could be up to 100%, as reported by Kumar *et al*[11] and is associated with fatal outcomes.

CLINICAL COURSE

HEV infection commonly holds a benign, self-limiting course, and the case-fatality rate in developing countries is estimated to be 0.5%-4%[12,13]. Clinical presentation of HEV infection is similar to that of hepatitis A. Majority of the infected patients sustain mild and asymptomatic course. Acute HEV infection is accompanied by jaundice, icteric eyes, malaise, anorexia, and abdominal discomfort. Severe infection is usually reported among patients with underlying chronic liver disease and is associated with increased mortality[14]. Additionally, solid organ transplant recipients encounter a more sustained course[15]. Among such patients, HEV antibody production could be delayed, often leading to sustained viremia with progression to chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis[16,17].

Pregnant women can suffer a complicated course with fulminant HEV infection and sustain higher mortality rates compared to non-pregnant cohorts. It is estimated that fatality rates reach 10%-40% among pregnant women[11,18]. Both obstetric and non-obstetric complications are encountered. Non-obstetric complications include fulminant hepatic failure, acute liver failure, acute cerebral edema and

obstetric complications include pre-term delivery, antepartum hemorrhage, intrauterine fetal demise[19-21].

RENAL MANIFESTATIONS OF HEV INFECTION

Non-glomerular manifestations

Renal manifestations of hepatitis B and hepatitis C (HBV, HCV) infection are well described. The association between HEV infection and kidney is established as the HEV particles are isolated from the urine of infected patients[22,23]. Additionally, when urine of infected monkeys was induced into healthy animals, the development of HEV infection was well appreciated and confirmed the infectious nature of the viral particles shed in the urine[23]. HEV-associated renal manifestations include prerenal or intrinsic renal disorders. Among intrinsic renal conditions, glomeruli and tubules are the affected sites[24,25].

HEV infection is less commonly associated with the progression of kidney disease in immunocompetent patients. Chronic HEV infection and subsequent development of decompensated liver cirrhosis are frequently encountered among solid organ transplant recipients. Hepatorenal physiology secondary to increased circulating vasoactive agents like nitric oxide is often noted. Similar to other cirrhotic patients, HEV-associated liver dysfunction patients could have increased vasodilatory mediators released secondary to shear stress on the portal vasculature, leading to splanchnic vasodilatation, portosystemic shunting, and bacterial translocation. Additionally, reduction in effective arterial blood volume perpetuates decrease in renal perfusions that ultimately leads to renal vasoconstriction[26]. Urine sodium levels remain low, indicating prerenal failure. However, prolongation of renal hypoperfusion contributes to ischemic injury of the proximal tubule with manifestations of acute tubular necrosis[13].

Bile cast nephropathy, also called cholemic nephrosis, is typically encountered among patients with cholestasis secondary to advanced cirrhosis or acute liver failure. Nayak *et al*[27] reported a case of cholemic nephrosis secondary to acute HEV infection. Historically, the diagnosis is made by kidney biopsy with the presence of bile cast obstructing distal tubules. The pathogenesis of cholemic nephrosis is not completely understood, however, it is hypothesized secondary to intraluminal obstruction of the bile cast along with direct tubular toxicity[28,29].

Cases of hemolysis and subsequent renal failure are reported with HEV infection. Karki *et al*[30] reported a case of massive hemolysis in a patient with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, heme pigment causing direct proximal tubular toxicity. Development of hemoglobin cast further leads to intratubular obstruction and subsequent development of acute kidney injury. It is hypothesized that the liver dysfunction secondary to acute HEV leads to accumulation of toxins along with the depletion of antioxidants like glutathione. Additionally, if patients have underlying G6PD deficiency, massive hemolysis, and acute kidney injury are encountered[31] (Figure 1).

Glomerular manifestation

Glomerular manifestations of HEV infection are reported among solid organ transplant recipients associated with HEV genotype 3. However, it is unclear if renal manifestations and presentation differ among various organ transplant recipients. While glomerular manifestations are commonly noted among immunocompromised patients[32,33], autochthonous HEV-induced membranoproliferative glomerular pattern was reported in an immunocompetent individual[33].

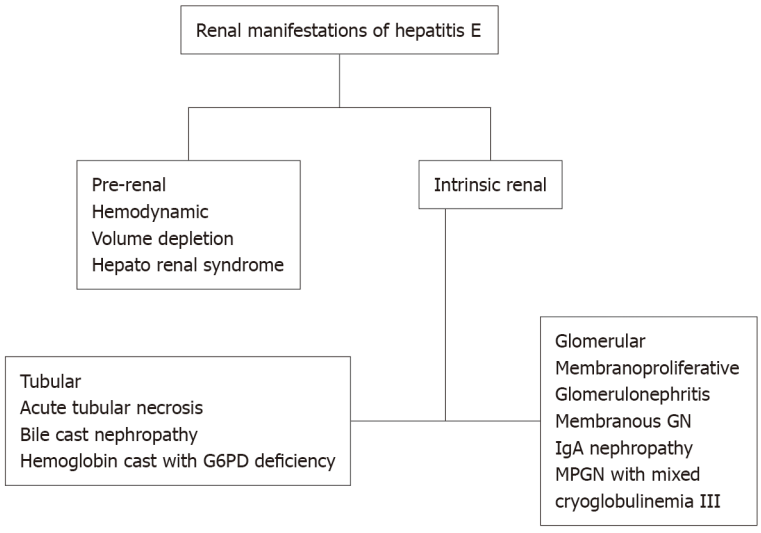
Study by Kamar *et al*[34] evaluated the renal function of patients with HEV infection in solid organ transplants recipients. Out of total 51 cases of genotype 3 HEV infections, 43.2% were cleared of the virus spontaneously within 6 mo of infection, whereas 56.8% progressed to chronic hepatitis. Among 36 kidney and kidney-pancreas-transplant patients, glomerular filtration rate (GFR) significantly decreased from baseline of 52.9 ± 17.7 mL/min at four-month median before HEV infection to 48.8 ± 18.7 mL/min during acute HEV infection (P = 0.04). Acute rejection episode, infection, modification in immunosuppressant type or dose, and functional renal insufficiency were ruled out, and the GFR decline is attributed to acute HEV infection. Proteinuria levels significantly increased in four kidney-transplant patients at HEV diagnosis, which subsequently improved with improvement in renal functions and HEV clearances.

Kidney biopsy performed during acute phase revealed patterns of membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis, cryoglobulinemia II and III types, and IgA nephropathy[34]. Additionally, among patients who developed chronic hepatitis, 12 patients who received anti-viral therapy with ribavirin for three months had clearances of HEV with subsequent improvement in GFR at 6 mo follow up. Interestingly, In the subgroup who received anti- viral therapy, cryoglobulinemia was detected in 70% of patients before therap, eventually became undetectable in all patients after viral clearance. Renal manifestations of the reported cases of HEV infection among immunocompetent and solid organ recipients are summarized in Table 1.

Table 1 Renal manifestations of the reported cases of hepatitis E virus infection among immunocompetent and solid organ recipients

Case study	Status	Age	Sex	Country	Serum creatinine/eGFR	Renal manifestations	Treatment	Follow up	Outcomes
Karki *et al*[30]	I.C	48 yr	M	India	8.1 mg/dL	ATN(Hemoglobin Cast)	Hemodialysis; Supportive care	3 mo	Improved kidney function
Verschuuren *et al*[13]	I.C	34 yr	F	Netherlands	10 mg/dL	ATN	Hemodialysis; Supportive care	3 wk	Complete kidney function recovery
Biliotti *et al*[51]	I.C	57 yr	M	Italy	44 mL/min	NR	Sofosbuvir; Ribavarin	3 wk	Patient died from MRSA infection
Guinault *et al*[33]	I.C	48 yr	M	France	3.6 mg/dL	MPGN	Steroids	4 mo	
Kamar *et al*[34]	K.T	33 yr	M	France	2.1 mg/dL	MPGN	Steroids	16 mo	Improved kidney function
Kamar *et al*[34]	K.T	26 yr	M	France	2.4 mg/dL	IgAN	Ribavarin 3 mo	9 mo	Stable kidney function
Kamar *et al*[34]	K.T	40 yr	M	France	2.1 mg/dL	IgAN	Change in IS + Rituximab	3 mo	
Kamar *et al*[34]	K.T	24 yr	M	France	2.3 mg/dL	MPGN	Rituximab	3 yr	Renal replacement therapy
Kamar *et al*[52]	K.T	28 yr	M	France	2.4 mg/dL	ATN	None	3 mo	Serum creatinine returned to baseline
Del Bello *et al*[32]	K.T	46 yr	M	France	2 mg/dL	MPGN	Ribavarin 30 mo	12 mo	Improved serum creatinine

NR: Not reported; eGFR: Estimated glomerular filtration rate; I.C: Immunocompromised; K.T: Kidney transplant; M: Male; F: Female; ATN: Acute tubular necrosis; MPGN: Membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis; IgAN: IgA nephropathy.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.516

Figure 1 Causes of acute kidney injury in acute hepatitis E virus-infected patients.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF HEV-INDUCED RENAL INJURY

Pathophysiology of HEV-induced kidney injury is not completely known. HEV-mediated renal manifestations were thought to be a result of direct cytopathic injury due to the viral infection per se or related to immune-mediated mechanisms. Similar to HBV and HCV, it is hypothesized that HEV plays a role in precipitating glomerular injury through immune complex-mediated mechanisms[35]. The study by El- Mokhtar *et al*[36] assessed the role of immune-mediated mechanisms in HEV-induced renal dysfunction. CD10 and CD13 positive proximal tubular epithelial cells were isolated and challenged *in vitro* with HEV inoculum. HEV infection minimally upregulated inflammatory markers in the absence

of peripheral blood mononuclear cells, and no measurable changes were noted in lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) levels, kidney injury molecules, or transcription of chemokines. However, when the HEV infected proximal tubular cells were inoculated with peripheral blood mononuclear cells, there was upregulation of inflammatory molecules, kidney injury markers, and LDH levels, indicating that HEV infection per se might not be completely responsible for glomerular injury. Thus, it is the intersection between immune cells, HEV infection, and proximal tubular epithelial cells that contribute to renal injury[36].

MANAGEMENT OF RENAL MANIFESTATIONS OF HEV INFECTION

Diagnostics

Over the recent years, HEV laboratory testing has been refined drastically. Two main methods for testing HEV currently are indirect and direct serological tests. With regards to indirect studies, there are commercially available kits for serological testing for the presence of anti-HEV IgM and anti-HEV IgG that relies on the presence of antibodies in the serum to detect infection[37]. In addition, indirect studies rely heavily on patient's immune response to HEV infection, decreasing sensitivity in immunocompromised patients to some degree[38]. Direct testing predominately uses more advanced nucleic acid testing, that works *via* detecting the presence of viral genetic material in the form of nucleic acid sequences (HEV RNA) to determine the presence or absence of infection along with detection of viral capsid antigens[39,40].

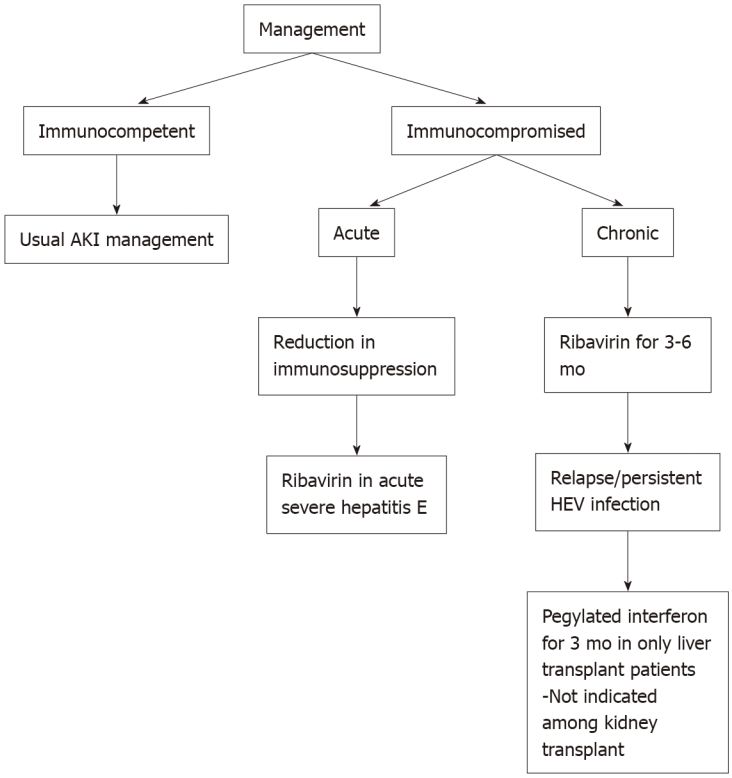
In Immunocompetent patients, it is advised to check anti-HEV IgM initially for suspected HEV infection[41]. A negative test rules out the disease, however, if the test is positive, HEV RNA analysis is needed. On the other hand, among immunocompromised patients, it is recommended to test HEV-RNA even with negative anti-HEV IgM in blood and in stool before ruling out HEV infection[37]. Urine studies and electrolytes give subtle clues in identifying various causes of AKI. Urine microscopy adds an additional advantage to diagnose patients with acute tubular necrosis in the presence of muddy brown granular cast. Kidney biopsy remains the gold standard diagnostic testing for glomerular disorders and tubular obstructions, including bile cast nephropathy, while evaluating renal manifestations of HEV. Patients with acute or chronic hepatitis with new-onset proteinuria should be considered for kidney biopsy[42].

Treatment

Management of HEV-associated renal manifestations depends on the clinical presentation. Treatment is predominantly based on a conservative approach given benign course of the disease. Acute infection with HEV usually does not require anti-viral therapy. In patients with severe acute infection or acute on chronic liver disease, ribavirin therapy is considered[42]. For patients with acute kidney injury secondary to acute tubular necrosis or bile cast nephropathy, routine care to maintain mean arterial pressures, avoid nephrotoxic agents, and further insults are recommended. Indications for initiation of renal replacement therapy are similar to routine indications of dialysis initiation. Management of HEV-associated glomerular disorders should be based on underlying pathology. Guinault *et al*[33] reported a case of HEV–induced cryoglobulinemic glomerulonephritis in an immunocompetent patient with serum monoclonal IgG k light chain type II cryoglobulin. Renal biopsy results were consistent with lobular membranoproliferative exudative glomerulonephritis with fibrinoid necrosis and cellular crescents with a ruptured Bowman capsule. The patient was subsequently treated with seven sessions of plasma exchange along with pulse steroids with improvement in HEV RNA titers and cryoglobulinemic levels. Occasionally acute HEV infection follows a fulminant course as reported in pregnant individuals and could manifest as acute cerebral edema, seizures, acute fatty liver and are associated with increased mortality[43].

While managing patients with solid organ transplants, benefits of treatment need to be weighed against risks of rejection. Reduction of immunosuppression is considered the first-line approach[44], allowing HEV clearance in about one-third of patients. Ribavirin, an anti-viral agent, is considered in patients with severe acute or acute on chronic liver failure[45,46]. It has also been postulated that ribavirin acts by inhibiting HEV viral replication and increases the expression of interferon stimulating genes leading to immune modulation[47]. In a study done by Kamar *et al*[34], patients who received anti-viral therapy with ribavirin, cryoglobulinemia was detected in 70% of patients before therapy and became undetectable in all patients after viral clearance. Ribavirin is also used successfully to treat HEV-associated membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis in a solid organ transplant recipient[32] (Figure 2).

In a multicenter retrospective study by Karmer *et al*, solid-organ transplant recipients were treated with ribavirin at a median dose of 600 (range, 29-1200) mg/d for three months. Similar virological remission was observed in patients who received ribavirin for three months as compared to those who were treated for more than three months. In patients with detectable HEV RNA in the serum and/or in the stool, at the end of three months, ribavirin monotherapy can be continued for an additional three months[48] Hence it is indicated to treat with ribavirin initially for three months and evaluate the



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.516

Figure 2 Management of acute kidney injury in acute hepatitis E infected patients.

response. With non-sustained virological remission, ribavirin is recommended to be continued for a total of 6 mo. Among liver transplant recipients, interferon (IFN) α has shown to achieve sustained virological remission among patients with HEV after liver transplant. However, the use of IFNα is not recommended among other solid organ transplant recipients due to the risk of graft rejection (Table 1).

Sofosbuvir, a nucleotide analog, is evaluated along with ribavirin in patients who failed ribavirin monotherapy. Wezel *et al*[49] evaluated two solid organ transplant recipients who failed ribavirin monotherapy and observed that sofosbuvir showed variable antiviral activity in chronic HEV patients. Sofosbuvir was ineffective in achieving sustained virological response. Pegylated IFNα has shown efficacy in achieving a sustained virological response in patients with hemodialysis and liver transplants [50]. However, given the concern of interference with graft and risk of acute rejection, interferon α is contraindicated in patients with other solid organ transplants[47].

CONCLUSION

HEV infection is a global health concern and is uncommonly associated with mortality and morbidity. HEV infection is restricted not only to developing countries, but is increasingly identified among developed countries. Renal manifestations of HEV range from prerenal failure, acute tubular necrosis, glomerular disorders, and intratubular obstruction form bile cast nephropathy. Similar to HBV and HCV infections, immune-mediated mechanisms are hypothesized in development of HEV-associated glomerular diseases. Conservative approach is routinely employed in cases of renal involvement from acute hepatitis in immunocompetent patients. Among solid organ transplant recipients, ribavirin is considered in patients with chronic HEV infection for a duration of 3-6 mo along with reduction of immunosuppression. IFNα has shown to achieve sustained virological remission among patients with HEV after liver transplant. However, the use of IFNα is not recommended among other solid organ transplant recipients secondary to the risk of graft rejection. In patients who failed monotherapy with ribavirin, sofosbuvir has been evaluated in conjunction with ribavirin with variable anti-viral effects. Plasma exchange, in addition to pulse steroids is occasionally used in management of crescentic glomerular nephritis associated with HEV infection.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Kovvuru K, Carbajal N, Pakanati AR, Thongprayoon C, Hansrivijit P, Boonpheng B, Pattharanitima P, Nissaisorakarn V and Kanduri SR contributed to acquisition of data, drafting the article; Cheungpasitporn W contributed to overall supervision and final approval.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declared no potential conflicts of interest.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Karthik Kovvuru 0000-0003-2640-724X; Nicholas Carbajal 0000-0002-8034-9223; Abhinandan Reddy Pakanati 0000-0002-3370-0471; Charat Thongprayoon 0000-0002-8313-3604; Panupong Hansrivijit 0000-0002-5041-4290; Boonphiphop Boonpheng 0000-0002-3022-8861; Pattharawin Pattharanitima 0000-0002-6010-0033; Voravech Nissaisorakarn 0000-0002-9389-073X; Wisit Cheungpasitporn 0000-0001-9954-9711; Swetha R Kanduri 0000-0002-7190-6665.

S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhang H

REFERENCES

1 **Lu L**, Li C, Hagedorn CH. Phylogenetic analysis of global hepatitis E virus sequences: genetic diversity, subtypes and zoonosis. *Rev Med Virol* 2006; **16**: 5-36 [PMID: 16175650 DOI: 10.1002/rmv.482]
2 **Smith DB**, Simmonds P, Izopet J, Oliveira-Filho EF, Ulrich RG, Johne R, Koenig M, Jameel S, Harrison TJ, Meng XJ, Okamoto H, Van der Poel WHM, Purdy MA. Proposed reference sequences for hepatitis E virus subtypes. *J Gen Virol* 2016; **97**: 537-542 [PMID: 26743685 DOI: 10.1099/jgv.0.000393]
3 **Sayed IM**, Vercouter AS, Abdelwahab SF, Vercauteren K, Meuleman P. Is hepatitis E virus an emerging problem in industrialized countries? *Hepatology* 2015; **62**: 1883-1892 [PMID: 26175182 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27990]
4 **Meng XJ**, Purcell RH, Halbur PG, Lehman JR, Webb DM, Tsareva TS, Haynes JS, Thacker BJ, Emerson SU. A novel virus in swine is closely related to the human hepatitis E virus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1997; **94**: 9860-9865 [PMID: 9275216 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.18.9860]
5 **Pavio N**, Meng XJ, Doceul V. Zoonotic origin of hepatitis E. *Curr Opin Virol* 2015; **10**: 34-41 [PMID: 25588602 DOI: 10.1016/j.coviro.2014.12.006]
6 **Domanović D**, Tedder R, Blümel J, Zaaijer H, Gallian P, Niederhauser C, Sauleda Oliveras S, O'Riordan J, Boland F, Harritshøj L, Nascimento MSJ, Ciccaglione AR, Politis C, Adlhoch C, Flan B, Oualikene-Gonin W, Rautmann G, Strengers P, Hewitt P. Hepatitis E and blood donation safety in selected European countries: a shift to screening? *Euro Surveill* 2017; **22** [PMID: 28449730 DOI: 10.2807/1560-7917.ES.2017.22.16.30514]
7 **Pourbaix A**, Ouali N, Soussan P, Roque Afonso AM, Péraldi MN, Rondeau E, Peltier J. Evidence of hepatitis E virus transmission by renal graft. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2017; **19** [PMID: 27775205 DOI: 10.1111/tid.12624]
8 **Kamar N**, Bendall R, Legrand-Abravanel F, Xia NS, Ijaz S, Izopet J, Dalton HR. Hepatitis E. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 2477-2488 [PMID: 22549046 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61849-7]
9 **Satake M**, Matsubayashi K, Hoshi Y, Taira R, Furui Y, Kokudo N, Akamatsu N, Yoshizumi T, Ohkohchi N, Okamoto H, Miyoshi M, Tamura A, Fuse K, Tadokoro K. Unique clinical courses of transfusion-transmitted hepatitis E in patients with immunosuppression. *Transfusion* 2017; **57**: 280-288 [PMID: 28144952 DOI: 10.1111/trf.13994]
10 **Zhang L**, Jiao S, Yang Z, Xu L, Liu L, Feng Q, Zhang X, Hou Y, He S, Saldanha J, Wang S, Wang B. Prevalence of hepatitis E virus infection among blood donors in mainland China: a meta-analysis. *Transfusion* 2017; **57**: 248-257 [PMID: 28035774 DOI: 10.1111/trf.13937]
11 **Kumar RM**, Uduman S, Rana S, Kochiyil JK, Usmani A, Thomas L. Sero-prevalence and mother-to-infant transmission of hepatitis E virus among pregnant women in the United Arab Emirates. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2001; **100**: 9-15 [PMID: 11728649 DOI: 10.1016/s0301-2115(01)00448-1]
12 **Krawczynski K**, Aggarwal R, Kamili S. Hepatitis E. *Infect Dis Clin North Am* 2000; **14**: 669-687 [PMID: 10987115 DOI: 10.1016/s0891-5520(05)70126-4]
13 **Verschuuren EA**, Haagsma EB, Zijlstra JG, Stegeman CA. Non-oliguric acute renal failure associated with hepatitis E. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1997; **12**: 799-801 [PMID: 9141018 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/12.4.799]
14 **Péron JM**, Bureau C, Poirson H, Mansuy JM, Alric L, Selves J, Dupuis E, Izopet J, Vinel JP. Fulminant liver failure from acute autochthonous hepatitis E in France: description of seven patients with acute hepatitis E and encephalopathy. *J Viral Hepat* 2007; **14**: 298-303 [PMID: 17439518 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2007.00858.x]
15 **Hering T**, Passos AM, Perez RM, Bilar J, Fragano D, Granato C, Medina-Pestana JO, Ferraz ML. Past and current hepatitis E virus infection in renal transplant patients. *J Med Virol* 2014; **86**: 948-953 [PMID: 24619955 DOI: 10.1002/jmv.23915]
16 **Pas SD**, de Man RA, Mulders C, Balk AH, van Hal PT, Weimar W, Koopmans MP, Osterhaus AD, van der Eijk AA.

Hepatitis E virus infection among solid organ transplant recipients, the Netherlands. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2012; **18**: 869-872 [PMID: 22516170 DOI: 10.3201/eid1805.111712]

17 **Versluis J**, Pas SD, Agteresch HJ, de Man RA, Maaskant J, Schipper ME, Osterhaus AD, Cornelissen JJ, van der Eijk AA. Hepatitis E virus: an underestimated opportunistic pathogen in recipients of allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation. *Blood* 2013; **122**: 1079-1086 [PMID: 23794068 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2013-03-492363]

18 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Jameel S. Vertical transmission of hepatitis E virus. *Lancet* 1995; **345**: 1025-1026 [PMID: 7723501 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(95)90761-0]

19 **Navaneethan U**, Al Mohajer M, Shata MT. Hepatitis E and pregnancy: understanding the pathogenesis. *Liver Int* 2008; **28**: 1190-1199 [PMID: 18662274 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2008.01840.x]

20 **Khuroo MS**, Teli MR, Skidmore S, Sofi MA, Khuroo MI. Incidence and severity of viral hepatitis in pregnancy. *Am J Med* 1981; **70**: 252-255 [PMID: 6781338 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(81)90758-0]

21 **Khuroo MS**, Kamili S, Khuroo MS. Clinical course and duration of viremia in vertically transmitted hepatitis E virus (HEV) infection in babies born to HEV-infected mothers. *J Viral Hepat* 2009; **16**: 519-523 [PMID: 19228284 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2893.2009.01101.x]

22 **Ma H**, Zheng L, Liu Y, Zhao C, Harrison TJ, Ma Y, Sun S, Zhang J, Wang Y. Experimental infection of rabbits with rabbit and genotypes 1 and 4 hepatitis E viruses. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e9160 [PMID: 20161794 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009160]

23 **Geng Y**, Zhao C, Huang W, Harrison TJ, Zhang H, Geng K, Wang Y. Detection and assessment of infectivity of hepatitis E virus in urine. *J Hepatol* 2016; **64**: 37-43 [PMID: 26362822 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2015.08.034]

24 **Wilkinson SP**, Davies MH, Portmann B, Williams R. Renal failure in otherwise uncomplicated acute viral hepatitis. *Br Med J* 1978; **2**: 338-341 [PMID: 687905 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.2.6133.338]

25 **Geltner D**, Naot Y, Zimhoni O, Gorbach S, Bar-Khayim Y. Acute oliguric renal failure complicating type A nonfulminant viral hepatitis. A case presentation and review of the literature. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 1992; **14**: 160-162 [PMID: 1556432 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-199203000-00019]

26 **Velez JCQ**, Therapondos G, Juncos LA. Reappraising the spectrum of AKI and hepatorenal syndrome in patients with cirrhosis. *Nat Rev Nephrol* 2020; **16**: 137-155 [PMID: 31723234 DOI: 10.1038/s41581-019-0218-4]

27 **Nayak S**, Sharma M, Kataria A, Tiwari SC, Rastogi A, Mukund A. Cholemic Nephrosis from Acute Hepatitis E Virus Infection: A Forgotten Entity? *Indian J Nephrol* 2018; **28**: 250-251 [PMID: 29962682 DOI: 10.4103/ijn.IJN_168_17]

28 **van der Wijngaart H**, van Dam B, van den Berg JG, Krul-Poel YH, Klemt-Kropp M, Bax WA. A 73-year-old male with jaundice and acute kidney injury. Bile cast nephropathy. *Neth J Med* 2014; **72**: 95, 99 [PMID: 24659594]

29 **Betjes MG**, Bajema I. The pathology of jaundice-related renal insufficiency: cholemic nephrosis revisited. *J Nephrol* 2006; **19**: 229-233 [PMID: 16736428]

30 **Karki P**, Malik S, Mallick B, Sharma V, Rana SS. Massive Hemolysis Causing Renal Failure in Acute Hepatitis E Infection. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2016; **4**: 345-347 [PMID: 28097104 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2016.00042]

31 **Arese P**, De Flora A. Pathophysiology of hemolysis in glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. *Semin Hematol* 1990; **27**: 1-40 [PMID: 2405494]

32 **Del Bello A**, Guilbeau-Frugier C, Josse AG, Rostaing L, Izopet J, Kamar N. Successful treatment of hepatitis E virus-associated cryoglobulinemic membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis with ribavirin. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2015; **17**: 279-283 [PMID: 25708383 DOI: 10.1111/tid.12353]

33 **Guinault D**, Ribes D, Delas A, Milongo D, Abravanel F, Puissant-Lubrano B, Izopet J, Kamar N. Hepatitis E Virus-Induced Cryoglobulinemic Glomerulonephritis in a Nonimmunocompromised Person. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2016; **67**: 660-663 [PMID: 26682764 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2015.10.022]

34 **Kamar N**, Weclawiak H, Guilbeau-Frugier C, Legrand-Abravanel F, Cointault O, Ribes D, Esposito L, Cardeau-Desangles I, Guitard J, Sallusto F, Muscari F, Peron JM, Alric L, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Hepatitis E virus and the kidney in solid-organ transplant patients. *Transplantation* 2012; **93**: 617-623 [PMID: 22298032 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e318245f14c]

35 **Ozkok A**, Yildiz A. Hepatitis C virus associated glomerulopathies. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 7544-7554 [PMID: 24976695 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i24.7544]

36 **El-Mokhtar MA**, Seddik MI, Osman A, Adel S, Abdel Aziz EM, Mandour SA, Mohammed N, Zarzour MA, Abdel-Wahid L, Radwan E, Sayed IM. Hepatitis E Virus Mediates Renal Injury *via* the Interaction between the Immune Cells and Renal Epithelium. *Vaccines (Basel)* 2020; **8** [PMID: 32824088 DOI: 10.3390/vaccines8030454]

37 **Kar P**, Karna R. A Review of the Diagnosis and Management of Hepatitis E. *Curr Treat Options Infect Dis* 2020; 1-11 [PMID: 32837339 DOI: 10.1007/s40506-020-00235-4]

38 **Abravanel F**, Chapuy-Regaud S, Lhomme S, Miedougé M, Peron JM, Alric L, Rostaing L, Kamar N, Izopet J. Performance of anti-HEV assays for diagnosing acute hepatitis E in immunocompromised patients. *J Clin Virol* 2013; **58**: 624-628 [PMID: 24183927 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2013.10.003]

39 **Trémeaux P**, Lhomme S, Chapuy-Regaud S, Peron JM, Alric L, Kamar N, Izopet J, Abravanel F. Performance of an antigen assay for diagnosing acute hepatitis E virus genotype 3 infection. *J Clin Virol* 2016; **79**: 1-5 [PMID: 27038538 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2016.03.019]

40 **Sauleda S**, Ong E, Bes M, Janssen A, Cory R, Babizki M, Shin T, Lindquist A, Hoang A, Vang L, Piron M, Casamitjana N, Koppelman M, Danzig L, Linnen JM. Seroprevalence of hepatitis E virus (HEV) and detection of HEV RNA with a transcription-mediated amplification assay in blood donors from Catalonia (Spain). *Transfusion* 2015; **55**: 972-979 [PMID: 25403913 DOI: 10.1111/trf.12929]

41 **Goel A**, Aggarwal R. Advances in hepatitis E - II: Epidemiology, clinical manifestations, treatment and prevention. *Expert Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2016; **10**: 1065-1074 [PMID: 27148907 DOI: 10.1080/17474124.2016.1185365]

42 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines on hepatitis E virus infection. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 1256-1271 [PMID: 29609832 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.03.005]

43 **El Sayed Zaki M**, El Razek MM, El Razek HM. Maternal-Fetal Hepatitis E Transmission: Is It Underestimated? *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2014; **2**: 117-123 [PMID: 26356414 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2014.00006]

44 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Selves J, Garrouste C, Esposito L, Lavayssière L, Cointault O, Ribes D, Cardeau I, Nogier MB, Mansuy JM, Muscari F, Peron JM, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Influence of immunosuppressive therapy on the natural history of genotype 3 hepatitis-E virus infection after organ transplantation. *Transplantation* 2010; **89**: 353-360 [PMID: 20145528 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181c4096c]

45 **Gerolami R**, Borentain P, Raissouni F, Motte A, Solas C, Colson P. Treatment of severe acute hepatitis E by ribavirin. *J Clin Virol* 2011; **52**: 60-62 [PMID: 21764632 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.06.004]

46 **Goyal R**, Kumar A, Panda SK, Paul SB, Acharya SK. Ribavirin therapy for hepatitis E virus-induced acute on chronic liver failure: a preliminary report. *Antivir Ther* 2012; **17**: 1091-1096 [PMID: 22910532 DOI: 10.3851/IMP2317]

47 **Rostaing L**, Izopet J, Baron E, Duffaut M, Puel J, Durand D, Suc JM. Preliminary results of treatment of chronic hepatitis C with recombinant interferon alpha in renal transplant patients. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 1995; **10** Suppl 6: 93-96 [PMID: 8524507 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/10.supp6.93]

48 **Kamar N**, Izopet J, Tripon S, Bismuth M, Hillaire S, Dumortier J, Radenne S, Coilly A, Garrigue V, D'Alteroche L, Buchler M, Couzi L, Lebray P, Dharancy S, Minello A, Hourmant M, Roque-Afonso AM, Abravanel F, Pol S, Rostaing L, Mallet V. Ribavirin for chronic hepatitis E virus infection in transplant recipients. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 24645943 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1215246]

49 **van Wezel EM**, de Bruijne J, Damman K, Bijmolen M, van den Berg AP, Verschuuren EAM, Ruigrok GA, Riezebos-Brilman A, Knoester M. Sofosbuvir Add-on to Ribavirin Treatment for Chronic Hepatitis E Virus Infection in Solid Organ Transplant Recipients Does Not Result in Sustained Virological Response. *Open Forum Infect Dis* 2019; **6**: ofz346 [PMID: 31404927 DOI: 10.1093/ofid/ofz346]

50 **Kamar N**, Abravanel F, Garrouste C, Cardeau-Desangles I, Mansuy JM, Weclawiak H, Izopet J, Rostaing L. Three-month pegylated interferon-alpha-2a therapy for chronic hepatitis E virus infection in a haemodialysis patient. *Nephrol Dial Transplant* 2010; **25**: 2792-2795 [PMID: 20494897 DOI: 10.1093/ndt/gfq282]

51 **Biliotti E**, Franchi C, Spaziante M, Garbuglia AR, Volpicelli L, Palazzo D, De Angelis M, Esvan R, Taliani G. Autochthonous acute hepatitis E: treatment with sofosbuvir and ribavirin. *Infection* 2018; **46**: 725-727 [PMID: 29946850 DOI: 10.1007/s15010-018-1168-7]

52 **Kamar N**, Mansuy JM, Esposito L, Legrand-Abravanel F, Peron JM, Durand D, Rostaing L, Izopet J. Acute hepatitis and renal function impairment related to infection by hepatitis E virus in a renal allograft recipient. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2005; **45**: 193-196 [PMID: 15696460 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2004.09.006]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 525-534

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.525

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

MINIREVIEWS

Safety of direct acting antiviral treatment for hepatitis C in oncologic setting: A clinical experience and a literature review

Anna Maria Spera

Specialty type: Infectious diseases

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Negro F, Sira AM

Received: November 25, 2021
Peer-review started: November 25, 2021
First decision: December 27, 2021
Revised: January 11, 2022
Accepted: February 15, 2022
Article in press: February 15, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Anna Maria Spera, Infectious Disease Unit, Universitary Hospital OO RR San Giovanni di Dio e Ruggi d'Aragona, Salerno 84131, Italy

Corresponding author: Anna Maria Spera, MD, PhD, Doctor, Infectious Disease Unit, Universitary Hospital OO RR San Giovanni di Dio e Ruggi d'Aragona, Largo Ippocrate, Salerno 84131, Italy. annamariaspera@hotmail.it

Abstract

With a globally estimated 58 million people affected by, chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection still represents a hard challenge for scientific community. A chronic course can occur among patients with a weak innate ad adaptive response with cirrhosis and malignancies as main consequences. Oncologic patients undergoing chemotherapy represent a special immunocompromised population predisposed to HCV reactivation (HCVr) with undesirable changes in cancer treatment and outcome. Aim of the study highlight the possibility of HCVr in oncologic population eligible to chemotherapy and its threatening consequences on cancer treatment; underline the importance of HCV screening before oncologic therapy and the utility of direct aging antivirals (DAAs). A comprehensive overview of scientific literature has been made. Terms searched in PubMed were: "HCV reactivation in oncologic setting" "HCV screening", "second generation DAAs". Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamics characteristics of DAAs are reported, along with drug - drug interactions among chemotherapeutic drug classes regimens and DAAs. Clinical trials conducted among oncologic adults with HCV infection eligible to both chemotherapy and DAAs were analyzed. Viral eradication with DAAs in oncologic patients affected by HCV infection is safe and helps liver recovery, allowing the initiation of cancer treatment no compromising its course and success.

Key Words: Hepatitis C Virus; Direct aging antivirals; Drug interactions; Pharmacodynamic; Pharmacokinetic; Pre-emptive therapy

Core Tip: Chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is a hard clinical challenge, especially regarding oncologic patients eligible to chemotherapy. HCV reactivation in this setting of population is due to iatrogenic immunosuppression and can impair cancer treatment and outcome. Several specialists still do not prescribe direct aging antivirals to oncologic patients affected by HCV infection, because no univocal guidelines on HCV treatment in oncologic setting are available. The review highlights the importance of screening HCV infection before starting oncologic treatment, the safety of direct aging antivirals treatment under chemotherapy and the utility of treating HCV infection in oncologic setting no compromising chemotherapy course and success.

Citation: Spera AM. Safety of direct acting antiviral treatment for hepatitis C in oncologic setting: A clinical experience and a literature review. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 525-534
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/525.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.525

INTRODUCTION

Hepatitis C is a viral infection due to a single-stranded RNA enveloped virus, with a mainly hepatic trophism. Eight genotypes of hepatitis C virus (HCV) along with several different subtypes have been identified[1,2]. Since its discovery, in 1989, 184 million patients with hepatitis C have been reported worldwide[3], and 40% of hepatic transplantations performed until 2009 were due to HCV-based liver cirrhosis[1]. According to the World Health Organization, an estimated 58 million people worldwide live with chronic HCV infection in 2021, with approximately 1.5 million new infections occurring per year, and approximately 400000 people died from hepatitis C, mostly from cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma, in 2019[3].

BIOLOGICAL COURSE OF HCV INFECTION

The interplay between viral replication and a patient's immune response determines the biological course of HCV infection[4], considering that viral immune tropism secondary to hepatocyteinfection activates the innate and adaptive immune systems.

The typical outcome of primary infection in immunocompetent subjects is a self-limited illness with spontaneous resolution after an acute phase, characterized by host-protective antibody production. Otherwise, a chronic course of hepatitis has been often described in exposed patients, with weak innate and adaptive immune responses determining an insufficient reduction in viral load, despite concomitant liver function recovery[4]. Consequences of chronicity are cirrhosis and hepatocarcinogenesis[5,6], along with haematologic malignancies, including B cell non-Hodgkin's lymphoma[7], intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma and other solid tumours, such as head and neck, colorectal, renal, and pancreatic cancers[7,8,9]. Any kind of immune central reconstitution after immunosuppressive medication can trigger viral reactivation in this chronic setting of HCV, with diversified clinical manifestations ranging from asymptomatic flares of transaminases to severe liver damage[4].

Approximately two weeks before hepatitis flares, an increase in viral RNA often occurs[4]. Hepatitis C reactivation is therefore defined by an increase in HCV-RNA > 1 Log IU/mL over baseline, while the detection of anti-HCV antibodies cannot help in distinguishing between acute and chronic infection but can determine only the occurrence of an infection[10]. Early identification of HCV infection and/or its reactivation can be merely ensured only by liver function testing and anti-HCV and viral load level surveillance.

HCV REACTIVATION IN AN ONCOLOGIC SETTING

According to Rung Li *et al*[11], HCV reactivation (HCVr) in an oncologic setting is promoted by immunosuppression due to chemotherapy, often resulting in deleterious changes in the cancer treatment plan and its outcomes. HCVr prevalence rates in cancer patients receiving chemotherapy range from 1.5% to 32% worldwide[12]. Although less fearful than HBV reactivation, HCVr is challenging for oncologists and HCV treating physicians, who often avoid administering antiviral treatment to patients under chemotherapy because of a lack of data about the safety of this treatment combination[12,10]. The multicentre, prospective cohort study performed by Ramsey and colleagues[13] among more than 5000 new oncologic patients found an observed infection rate of 2.4% (95%CI: 1.9% to 3.0%) for HCV, with a substantial proportion of patients being unaware of their viral status at the time

of cancer diagnosis (31%) and having no identifiable related risk factors (32.4%). Finally, according to this cohort study, therapeutic decisions were changed in 8% of patients because of their viral status[4, 13]. In an observational study conducted at MD Anderson Cancer Center, an HCVr rate of 23% was estimated among patients with cancer (36% in haematologic and 10% in solid tumour settings), with a more frequent recurrence in patients with prolonged lymphopenia (median 95 *vs* 22 d, $P < 0.001$) and in patients receiving rituximab (44% *vs* 9%), bendamustine (22% *vs* 0%), high-dose steroids (57% *vs* 21%) and purine analogues (22% *vs* 5%). The study also showed an unanticipated discontinuation or dose reduction of chemotherapy for 26% (6 of 23) of oncologic patients with HCVr[4]. In both studies, it was concluded that the early identification and treatment of chronic HCV hepatitis prevent HCVr after iatrogenic immunodepression and the remodulation of chemotherapy itself. Thus, screening for HCV infection before cancer treatment appears to be useful and advisable. Figure 1 shows an HCV screening recommendation flowchart for oncologic patients eligible for chemotherapy.

HCV INFECTION THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES

HCV infection therapeutic strategies have changed over time[2]. The first therapeutic combination employed against HCV infection in 1990 was based on interferon (IFN) plus ribavirin, which was associated with suboptimal response rates and short- and long-term toxicity even related to drug-to-drug interactions with other medications taken[14]. Moreover, because of intrinsic contraindications for each element of the compound, patients with unbalanced mood unbalanced or anaemia were excluded from the treatment[14]. The first direct-acting antivirals (DAAs), boceprevir and telaprevir, were approved in 2011; since then, the HCV cure rates have markedly improved, and they have been added to the classic dual therapy represented by IFN + ribavirin[15]. After the introduction of the combined regimens based on glecaprevir/pibrentasvir [Glecaprevir (GLE)/Pibrentasvir (PIB)], sofosbuvir/velpatasvir [(SOF)/Velpatasvir (VEL)] with, or without voxilaprevir (VOX), and elbasvir/grazoprevir [Elbasvir (EBR)/Grazoprevir (GZR)], summarized in Table 1, the majority of chronic HCV-infected patients have been treated since 2015, achieving sustained virologic response (SVR)[16-20].

PHARMACOKINETIC CHARACTERISTICS OF CURRENTLY USED DAAS

In relation to the pharmacokinetic characteristics of currently used DAAs, the time to maximal plasma concentration (tmax), maximal plasma concentration (cmax), area under the concentration time curve (AUC) and minimal plasma concentration (cmin) are considered with regard to absorption, while the apparent volume of distribution (Vd/L) and percentage of protein binding are considered in relation to distribution. Metabolism is described in terms of the type of substrate elicited by DAAs and excretion as the elimination half-life (T ½)[1].

The pharmacokinetic characteristics of currently used DAAs are summarized in Table 2.

EBR/ GZR

Absorption: EBR is a substrate of P-gp, with a median tmax of 3 h and a range of 3-6 h. The bioavailability is estimated approximately 32%. Absorption (AUC 11% and Cmax 15%) can be decreased by a high-fat meal (900 kcal; 500 kcal fat). GZR acts as a substrate for P-gp and has a median tmax of 2 h with a range of 0.5-3 h. The absolute bioavailability varies from 15 to 27% after a single dose and from 20 to 40% after multiple doses. Absorption (AUC 50% and Cmax 108%) can be increased by a high-fat meal (900 kcal; 500 kcal fat). HCV-infected patients have increased exposure (approximately 2-fold) compared with healthy individuals. Steady state is reached at approximately the sixth day of administration[21, 22].

Distribution: EBR and GZR are highly bound to albumin for > 99.9% and to α1-acid glycoprotein for > 98.8%[23,24]. The estimated Vd/L values for EBR and GZR are 680 and 1250 L, respectively. The hepatic transporter OATP1B1/3 actively transports GZR[25]. EBR inhibits P-gp. EBR and GZR inhibit BCRP[21, 22].

Metabolism: EBR and GZR are metabolized by CYP3A4, but no circulating metabolites can be found in plasma. CYP3A4 is weakly inhibited by GZR[21,22].

Excretion: EBR and GZR are excreted mainly by liver; more than 99% of the excreted dose can be found in faeces. The apparent t1/2 of EBR and GZR is 24 and 31 h[21,22].

SOF/VEL

Absorption: The SOF Cmax after administration is 0.5-1 h. The AUC∞ of SOF can be increased by 60% and 78% by a moderate- and high-fat meal, respectively. However, the SOF Cmax is not affected by food [23,24]. The VEL median tmax is estimated around 3 h, while the AUC and Cmax values are lower in healthy volunteers (41% and 37%), when compared to those of HCV-infected subjects. The AUC of VEL

Table 1 Currently used direct aging antiviral characteristics

Trade name	Compound	Year of FDA/EMA approval	Mechanism of action	Pharmaceutical form	Dose	Genotypes
Zepatier	Elbasvir/grazoprevir	2016	NS5A inhibitor/protease inhibitor	Film-coated tablet	50 mg/100 mg qd	1a, 1b, 4
Epclusa	Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir	2016	NS5B inhibitor/ NS5A inhibitor	Film-coated tablet	400 mg/100 mg	Pangenotypic
Maviret	Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir	2017	Protease inhibitor/NS5A inhibitor	Film-coated tablet	100 mg/40 mg qd	Pangenotypic
Vosevi	Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir	2018/2017	NS5B inhibitor /NS5A inhibitor/protease inhibitor	Film-coated tablet	400 mg/100 mg/100 mg	Pangenotypic

DAA: Direct aging antiviral; FDA: Food and drug administration; EMA: European Medicines Agency.

Table 2 Pharmacokinetics of currently used direct aging antivirals

DAAs		Absorption				Distribution		Metabolism	Excretion
Tradename	Compound	*Tmax* (h)	*Cmax* (ng/mL)	*Cmin* (ng/mL)	AUC (ng·h/mL)	Vd/F	Protein binding (%)	Substrate of	T ½, (h)
Zepatier	Elbasvir	3	121	48.4	1920	680	> 99.9	P-gp	31
	Grazoprevir	2	165	18.0	1420	1250	> 98.8	P-gp	24
Epclusa	Sofosbuvir	0.5-1/3	566/868	NR	1260/13970	NR	61-65 minim	P-gp and BCRP	0.5/25
	Velpatasvir	4	311	NR	2970	NR	> 99.5	P-gp, OATP1B, and BCRP	15
Maviret	Glecaprevir	5.0	597	NR	4800	NR	97	P-gp	6-9
	Pibrentasvir	5.0	110	NR	1430	NR	> 99.9	P-gp	23-29
Vosevi	Sofosbuvir	2/4	678/744	NR	1665/12,834	NR	61-65 minim	P-gp and BCRP	0.5/29
	Velpatasvir	4	311	NR	4041	NR	> 99	P-gp, OATP1B1/3, and BCRP	17
	Voxilaprevir	4	192	47	2577	NR	> 99	P-gp and BCRP	33

DAAs: Direct aging antivirals; NR: Data not reported and/or available; T ½: Elimination half time.

can be increased after a moderate- (600 kcal; 30% fat) and high-fat (800 kcal; 50% fat) meals, while the Cmax increases by only 34% and 5%, respectively. The solubility of VEL is pH-dependent: In fact the increase of pH determines a reduction in solubility and absorption[23,24].

Distribution: Circulation proteins highly protein bind VEL (> 99.5%), regardless of the concentration range 0.09-1.8 μg/mL of the drug. SOF acts as a substrate of BCRP and P-gp. VEL acts as a substrate of BCRP, P-gp and OATP1B[25,26]. Plasma proteins that are not dose-dependent (1-20 μg/mL) bind SOF at 61%-65%[23,24].

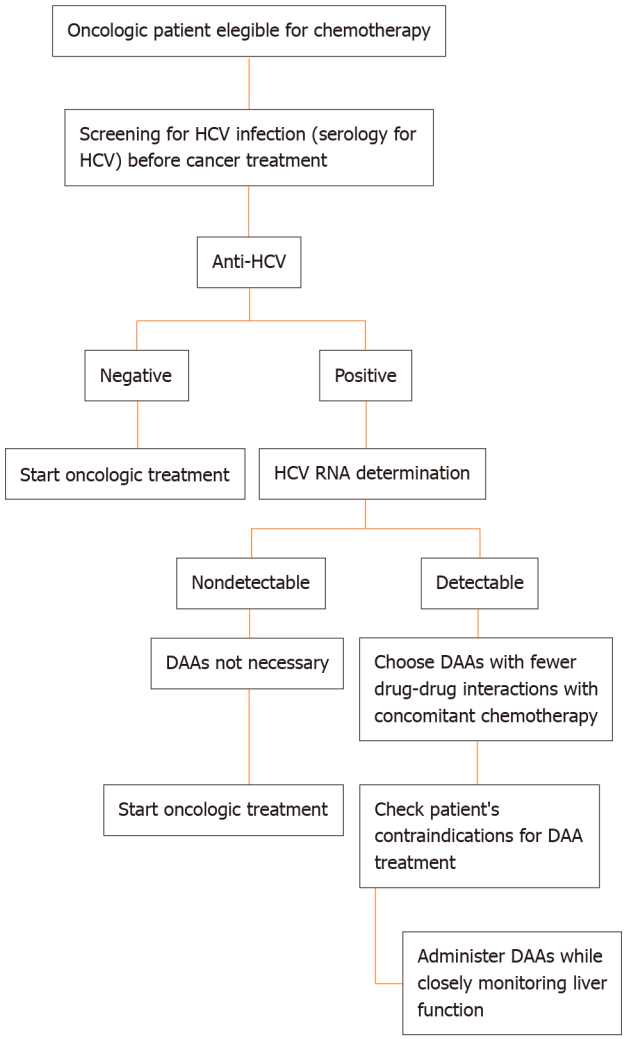
Metabolism: VEL is metabolized by CYP2B6, CYP2C8, and CYP3A4, but > 98% of the parent drug can be found in the blood after a single dose. VEL inhibits P-gp, BCRP, and OATP1B1/3[23,24]. Refers to the SOF/VEL/VOX paragraph for SOF metabolism.

Excretion: The clearance of VEL is mainly hepatic, VEL is retrieved in faeces for > 94% and in urine for 0.4%. The t1/2 of VEL is approximately 15 h[25,26]. SOF is mainly excreted by kidneys (80%) as GS-331007 (78%). The t1/2 of SOF is 0.5 h, while the t1/2 of GS-331007 is 25 h[23,24].

GLE/PIB

Absorption: The tmax of GLE/PIB is about 5 h. Fat meals (moderate and high) can increase the absorption of GLE/PIB: The exposure of GLE after a meal is increased 83%-163% and the exposure of PIB is increased 40%-53%. Both drugs are P-gp substrates[25,26].

Distribution: Plasma proteins highly bind 97.5% to GLE and > 99.9% to PIB, both of drugs are actively



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.525

Figure 1 Hepatitis C virus screening flowchart for oncologic patients eligible for chemotherapy. HCV: Hepatitis C virus; DAA: Direct aging antiviral.

transported by BCRP. GLE constitutes also a substrate of OATP1B1/3[25,26].

Metabolism: GLE is metabolized by CYP3A4, and PIB does not undergo biotransformation[25,26].

Excretion: GLE is primarily excreted by the liver; in fact, 92.1% of a radioactive dose is retrieved in faeces. The t1/2 is 6-9 h at steady state. PIB is also primarily found in stool (96.6%), with a t1/2 of 23–29 h [25,26].

SOF/VEL/VOX

Absorption: The Cmax of VOX, VEL, and a major metabolite of SOF, namely, GS-331007 is reached after approximately 4 h; the Cmax of SOF is reached after 2 h. The AUC and Cmax of VEL are 41% and 39% decreased in patients, respectively, while the AUC and Cmax of VOX are both elevated by 260% when comparing HCV-infected individuals and healthy volunteers[27,28]. The AUC∞ and Cmax of SOF increasefrom 64 to 114% and 9% to 76%, respectively, after a meal. The Cmax of GS-331007 after a meal decreases (19%-35%). The AUC∞ and Cmax of VEL increase (40%-166% and 37%-187%, respectively). The AUC of VOX increases from 112% to 435%, while the Cmax of VOX increases from 147% to 680% [27,28].

Distribution: Plasma proteins highly bind to SOF, VEL, and VOX (61%-65%, > 99%, and > 99%, respectively), with a concentration independent pharmacokinetics (ranging from 1 to 20 and 0.09 to 1.8 μg/mL, respectively) for SOF and VEL. SOF acts as a substrate of P-gp and BCRP, while VEL acts as a substrate of P-gp, OATP1B1/3, and BCRP. Finally, VOX acts as a substrate of P-gp and BCRP[27,28].

Metabolism: VOX is a substrate of CYP3A4. VOX is an inhibitor of P-gp, BCRP, and OATP1B1/3[27, 28]. The metabolism of SOF and VEL is reported in the paragraph on SOF/VEL combination therapy

above.

Excretion: SOF is excreted by the kidneys (80%), mainly in the form of GS-331007 (78%). The t1/2 of SOF is 0.5 h and the t1/2 of GS-331007 is 29 h[28,29]. The clearance of VEL is mainly hepatic. The t1/2 of VEL is approximately 17 h (27). The excretion is mainly biliary[27,28].

PHARMACODYNAMICS OF CURRENTLY USED DAAS

Intended as the balance between the effect (reduction of HCV-RNA under therapy) and toxicity (adverse effects), the pharmacodynamics of currently used DAAs consist of the duration of therapy, safety profile and estimated adverse effects.

EBR/GZR is efficacious for subjects affected by genotypes 1 and 4 HCV infection treated for 12 wk. EBR/GZR is approved for patients with renal insufficiency and compensated cirrhosis. This combination is approved in the fixed dose combination of 50 mg/100 mg once daily. The favourable safety profile with low discontinuation rates (< 5%) makes this compound suitable for HCV-infected patients with genotypes 1 and 4. The most frequent adverse effects are fatigue, headache, asthenia, nausea, rash, and an increase in ALT/AST and ALP[1,21].

SOF/VEL combination for 12 wk is valid in HCV pangenotypic patients treatment-experienced and/or treatment-naïve. Mild described adverse events are headache, fatigue, nausea and insomnia. Combination therapy with ribavirin leads to anaemia in over 10% of patients[1,24].

GLE/PIB is a pangenotypic regimen that is highly effective when administered for 8 to 12 wk once daily at doses of 100 mg/40 mg. Naïve and experienced patients with or without cirrhosis can be treated with this compound, whichhas a mild toxicity profile, in which headache, fatigue, nasopharyngitis and nausea can arise[1,25].

Finally, the pangenotypic highly effective SOF/VEL/VOX combination is licenced for patients who fail to respond to IFN/riba and DAAs and those with or without compensated cirrhosis. The adverse effects described are headache, diarrhoea, fatigue, nausea and constipation[1,27].

The pharmacodynamic properties of currently used DAAs are summarized in Table 3.

DRUG TO DRUG INTERACTIONS

Drug-drug interactions are challenging in the course of cotreatment with chemo-therapy and DAAs because most of these compounds are substrates and inhibitors of drug transporters and CYP enzymes [7]. Consulting the HEP drug interaction website can be extremely useful for clinical decision-making [29]: A report listing the summaries of potential interactions (*i.e.*, "red", "amber" and “yellow” classifications) for the drugs considered can be downloaded to guide the choice on a case-by-case basis. Potential interactions between currently used DAAs and the following drug classes of chemotherapy regimens are reported in this review: Platinum-containing agents (cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin), folate antagonists (methotrexate, pemetrexed), pyrimidine compounds (fluorouracil, capecitabine, cytarabine, gemcitabine, decitabine), purine analogues (mercaptopurine, fludarabine, cladribine, clofarabine), alkylating agents (cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, melphalan, bendamustine, busulfan), anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, idarubicin, bleomycin), topoisomerases (topotecan, etoposide, irinotecan), cytidine analogues (azacytidine, decitabine), immunosuppressants (tacrolimus, cyclosporine), immunomodulatory drugs (lenalidomide, thalidomide), mitotic inhibitors (paclitaxel, docetaxel, vinblastine, vincristine), hormonal therapies (tamoxifen), targeted therapies other than rituximab (*e.g.*, cetuximab, bortezomib, alemtuzumab). Interactions between DAAs and the main oncologic therapeutic categories considered in this review are summarized in Table 4.

According to the Liverpool HEP chart, drugs that absolutely should not be coadministered (RED interactions) are as follows: Elbasvir/grazoprevir + immunosuppressants (cyclosporine): Concomitant use of elbasvir/grazoprevir with OATP1B inhibitors, such as cyclosporine, is contraindicated. The coadministration of multiple doses of elbasvir/grazoprevir and a single dose of cyclosporin increases the grazoprevir AUC by 15-fold. The risk of ALT elevations may be increased due to the significant increase in grazoprevir plasma concentrations caused by OATP1B1/3 inhibition[29].

Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir + folate antagonists (methotrexate): Coadministration has not been studied but would not be recommended due to increased exposure tomethotrexate due to BCRP inhibition by voxilaprevir[29]. Sofos-buvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir + immunosuppressants (cyclosporine): Coadministration has been studied with sofosbuvir, velpatasvir or voxilaprevir, and coadministration with sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir is not recommended. Concentrations of voxilaprevir increased by 19.0-fold due to OATP1B1 inhibition by cyclosporine. The safety of this increase has not been established[29].

According to the Liverpool HEP chart, potential clinically significant interactions-likely to require additional monitoring and an alteration of drug dosage or the timing of administration (AMBER

Table 3 Pharmacodynamics of currently used direct aging antivirals

Trade name	Compound	Efficacy	Toxicity
Zepatier	Elbasvir/grazoprevir	Effective regimen used for 12 wk against HCV genotype 1 and 4. Approved for patients with renal insufficiency and compensated cirrhosis. Fixed dose combination of 50 mg/100 mg once daily. Favourable safety profile with low discontinuation rates (< 5%)	Fatigue, headache, asthenia, nausea, rash, ALT/AST and ALP increase
Epclusa	Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir	Treatment for 12 wk highly effective in both treatment-experienced and treatment-naïve HCV pangenotypic patients	Fatigue, headache, nausea and insomnia. Combination therapy with ribavirin led to anaemia in over 10% of patients
Maviret	Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir	Pangenotypic highly effective regimen. Administered for 8 to 12 wk once daily at doses of 100 mg/40 mg. Naïve and experienced patients with or without cirrhosis	Headache, fatigue, nasopharyngitis and nausea
Vosevi	Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir	Pangenotypic, highly effective, licenced for patients in whom IFN/riba and DAAs *failed*	Headache, diarrhoea, fatigue, nausea and constipation

ALT: Alanine transaminase; AST: Aspartate transaminase; DAAs: Direct aging antivirals; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; IFN: Interferon.

Table 4 Chemotherapy drug classes employed

Chemotherapy drug classes	Examples
Platinum-containing agents	(Cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin)
Folate antagonists	(Methotrexate, pemetrexed)
Pyrimidine compounds	(Fluorouracil, capecitabine, cytarabine, gemcitabine, decitabine)
Purine analogues	(Mercaptopurine, fludarabine, cladribine, clofarabine)
Alkylating agents	(Cyclophosphamide, ifosfamide, melphalan, bendamustine, busulfan)
Anthracyclines	(Daunorubicin, doxorubicin, epirubicin, idarubicin, bleomycin)
Topoisomerases	(Topotecan, etoposide, irinotecan)
Cytidine analogues	(Azacytidine, decitabine)
Immunosuppressants	(Tacrolimus, cyclosporine)
Immunomodulatory drugs	(Ienalidomide, thalidomide)
Mitotic inhibitors	(Paclitaxel, docetaxel, vinblastine, vincristine)
Hormonal therapies	(Tamoxifen)
Targeted therapies other than rituximab	(*e.g.*, cetuximab, bortezomib, alemtuzumab)

interactions)-are described among the following: Elbasvir/grazoprevir + folate antagonists (methotrexate): Coadministration has not been studied. Methotrexate is a substrate of BCRP, and concentrations could increase due to inhibition by elbasvir/grazoprevir. No a priori dose alteration is recommended, but patients should be closely monitored[29]. Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir + folate antagonists (methotrexate): Coadministration has not been studied. Methotrexate is a substrate of BCRP, and concentrations may increase due to inhibition by sofosbuvir/velpatasvir. Although no a priori dose alteration is required, close monitoring is recommended[29]. Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir + immunosuppressants (cyclosporine): Concomitant use of glecaprevir/pibrentasvir with cyclosporine requires close monitoring of doses, as concentrations of glecaprevir/pibrentasvir may increase due to the inhibition of OATP1B. The coadministration of gleca-previr/pibrentasvir and cyclosporine (100 mg) increased glecaprevir/pibrentasvir concentrations within acceptable parameters (glecaprevir Cmax, AUC and Cmin by 30%, 37% and 34%, respectively; no change in pibrentasvir Cmax and AUC, but Cmin increased by 26%). However, at higher doses of cyclosporine (400 mg), glecaprevir concentrations increased significantly (Cmax 4.51-fold, AUC 5.08-fold). Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir is not recommended for use in patients requiring stable cyclosporinedosesat 100 mg/d[29]. Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir + anthracyclines (doxorubicin): Coadministration has not been studied. Doxorubicin is metabolized by CYP enzymes and is a substrate for P-gp. Since gleca-previr/pibrentasvir inhibits P-gp and is a mild inhibitor of CYP3A4, there is the potential for increased doxorubicin exposure,and a clinically significant interaction has to be considered[29]. Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir + folate antagonists

(methotrexate): Coadministration has not been studied. Methotrexate is a substrate of BCRP, and concentrations could increase due to the inhibition of BCRP by gleca-previr/pibrentasvir. Patients should be closely monitored for methotrexate-associated toxicities[29]. Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir + immunosuppressants (tacrolimus): The coadministration of glecaprevir/pibrentasvir with systemic tacrolimus (1 mg single dose) increased tacrolimus Cmax and AUC by 1.5-fold and 1.45-fold, respectively. There was no change in the Cmax, AUC or Cmin of glecaprevir or pibrentasvir. As tacrolimus is a narrow therapeutic index drug, it should be used with caution. Therapeutic blood monitoring should be performed[29]. Sofos-buvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir + immunosuppressant (tacrolimus): Coadministration with sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir has not been studied. No clinically significant drug interactions were observed with sofosbuvir and tacrolimus. The coadministration of tacrolimus (5 mg single dose) and sofosbuvir (400 mg single dose, n = 16) decreased tacrolimus Cmax by 27% and increased AUC by 9%; sofosbuvir Cmax decreased by 3% but AUC increased by 13%. No effect of velpatasvir or voxilaprevir is expected. However, in the absence of data, the monitoring of tacrolimus concentrations should be considered[29]. Elbasvir/grazoprevir + mitotic inhibitors (paclitaxel): Coadministration has not been studied. Paclitaxel is primarily metabolized by CYP2C8 and to a lesser extent by CYP3A4. Grazoprevir is a weak inhibitor of CYP3A4 and could potentially increase paclitaxel exposure. Paclitaxel-induced toxicity should be monitored[29]. Glecaprevir/pibrentasvir + mitotic inhibitors (paclitaxel): Coadministration has not been studied. Paclitaxel is primarily metabolized by CYP2C8 and to a lesser extent by CYP3A4. Glecaprevir is a weak inhibitor of CYP3A4 and could potentially increase paclitaxel exposure. Paclitaxel-induced toxicity should be monitored[29]. Elbasvir/grazoprevir + immunosuppressants (tacrolimus): The coadministration of elbasvir/grazoprevir with systemic tacrolimus increased tacrolimus AUC by 43% (due to weak inhibition of CYP3A4 by grazoprevir) but had no effect on the concentrations of grazoprevir and elbasvir. Frequent monitoring of tacrolimus whole-blood concentrations, changes in renal function, and tacrolimus-associated adverse events upon the initiation of coadministration is recommended[29].

According to the Liverpool HEP chart, potentially weak interactions-for which additional action/monitoring or dosage adjustment is unlikely to be required (YELLOW interactions)-are described among the following: Sofosbuvir/velpatasvir + hormonal therapies (tamoxifen): Coadministration has not been studied. Tamoxifen is mainly metabolized by CYP3A4 and CYP3A5, which are not affected by sofosbuvir/velpatasvir. However, tamoxifen induces CYP3A4 and could potentially decrease the concentrations of velpatasvir, although to a moderate extent. Coadministration with food is suggested if tamoxifen is coadministered with sofos-buvir/velpatasvir as this increases exposure to velpatasvir[29]. Sofosbuvir/ velpatasvir/voxilaprevir + hormonal therapies (tamoxifen): Coadministration has not been studied. Tamoxifen is mainly metabolized by CYP3A4 and CYP3A5, which are not affected by sofosbuvir/velpatasvir/voxilaprevir. However, tamoxifen induces CYP3A4 and could potentially decrease theconcentrations of velpatasvir and voxilaprevir, although to a moderate extent. Coadministration with food is suggested if tamoxifen is coadministered with sofosbuvir/ velpatasvir/voxilaprevir as this increases exposure tovelpatasvir and voxilaprevir[29].

Some comedications with a green classification may require dose adjustment due to hepatic impairment.

MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC HCV INFECTION IN PATIENTS WITH CANCER

HCV-infected oncologic patients represent a special population needing guided treatment[12]: The updated guidelines provided by the AASL and IDSA[4] for the first time address treatment in this setting, supporting that the virologic and hepatic benefits of DAA treatment in oncologic patients with HCV infection overcome the risk of no treatment[7,30,31]. In fact, the quick eradication of chronic HCV infection prior to cancer therapy helps liver recovery, normalizes liver enzymes and avoids potentially decompensating hepatitis flares; in other words, it allows the initiation of cancer treatment that could be hampered by persistent elevated ALT levels due to HCV virus infection[12]. The eradication of HCV in oncologic patients can also diminish the risk of HCVr, allow patients to participate in experimental oncologic clinical trials based on new drug strategies against cancer, reduce the risk of the development of HCV-associated cancers[4], minimize drug-induced hepatotoxicity and avoid detrimental dose reduction.

DAA-based therapy can also promote liver disease progression[12]. In clinical practice, the temporary suspension of cancer treatment during DAA-based therapy has often been observed to avoid overlapping toxicities and DDIs. However, the present review proves that when cancer treatment cannot be interrupted, currently used DAAs can be simultaneously administered under close comonitoring by oncologists and hepatologists, especially during the first month of this dual therapy, since serious observed adverse events most usually appear within the first 2-4 wk of concomitant treatment.

CONCLUSION

Economides *et al*[12] stated that DAA therapy in cancer patients was efficacious and durable in terms of SVR, and few drug-drug interactions were observed. Otherwise, prospective data on HCV in oncologic patients remain limited.

This review, in the absence of current specific available guidelines for the use of DAA therapy in HCV-infected cancer patients, tried to clarify that treatment with DAAs for oncologic patients undergoing chemotherapy affected by HCV infection is safe and favourably impacts oncologic outcomes.

Finally, given that cancer treatment can negatively impact untreated chronic HCV-related liver disease, it appears clear that pre-emptive antiviral therapy in the oncologic setting is necessary to pursue chemotherapy without risking the progression of viral liver disease.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Spera AM studied conception and design; data collection; analysis and interpretation of results; draft manuscript preparation; Spera AM finally reviewed the results and approved the final version of the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Country/Territory of origin: Italy

ORCID number: Anna Maria Spera 0000-0003-1292-3040.

S-Editor: Liu JH
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Liu JH

REFERENCES

1 **Smolders EJ**, Jansen AME, Ter Horst PGJ, Rockstroh J, Back DJ, Burger DM. Viral Hepatitis C Therapy: Pharmacokinetic and Pharmacodynamic Considerations: A 2019 Update. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 2019; **58**: 1237-1263 [PMID: 31114957 DOI: 10.1007/s40262-019-00774-0]

2 **Gao LH**, Nie QH, Zhao XT. Drug-Drug Interactions of Newly Approved Direct-Acting Antiviral Agents in Patients with Hepatitis C. *Int J Gen Med* 2021; **14**: 289-301 [PMID: 33536776 DOI: 10.2147/IJGM.S283910]

3 **Hepatitis C – World Health Organization**. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/hepatitis-c

4 **Ziogas DC**, Kostantinou F, Cholongitas E, Anastasopoulou A, Diamantopoulos P, Haanen J, Gogas H. Reconsidering the management of patients with cancer with viral hepatitis in the era of immunotherapy. *J Immunother Cancer* 2020; **8** [PMID: 33067316 DOI: 10.1136/jitc-2020-000943]

5 **Hwang JP**, LoConte NK, Rice JP, Foxhall LE, Sturgis EM, Merrill JK, Torres HA, Bailey HH. Oncologic Implications of Chronic Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *J Oncol Pract* 2019; **15**: 629-637 [PMID: 31825756 DOI: 10.1200/JOP.19.00370]

6 **Perz JF**, Armstrong GL, Farrington LA, Hutin YJ, Bell BP. The contributions of hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus infections to cirrhosis and primary liver cancer worldwide. *J Hepatol* 2006; **45**: 529-538 [PMID: 16879891 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2006.05.013]

7 **Torres HA**, Shigle TL, Hammoudi N, Link JT, Samaniego F, Kaseb A, Mallet V. The oncologic burden of hepatitis C virus infection: A clinical perspective. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2017; **67**: 411-431 [PMID: 28683174 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21403]

8 **Mahale P**, Sturgis EM, Tweardy DJ, Ariza-Heredia EJ, Torres HA. Association Between Hepatitis C Virus and Head and Neck Cancers. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2016; **108** [PMID: 27075854 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djw035]

9 **Balakrishnan M**, Glover MT, Kanwal F. Hepatitis C and Risk of Nonhepatic Malignancies. *Clin Liver Dis* 2017; **21**: 543-554 [PMID: 28689592 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2017.03.009]

10 **Torres HA**, Hosry J, Mahale P, Economides MP, Jiang Y, Lok AS. Hepatitis C virus reactivation in patients receiving cancer treatment: A prospective observational study. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 36-47 [PMID: 28653760 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29344]

11 **Li YR**, Hu TH, Chen WC, Hsu PI, Chen HC. Screening and prevention of hepatitis C virus reactivation during chemotherapy. *World J Gastroenterol* 2021; **27**: 5181-5188 [PMID: 34497443 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v27.i31.5181]

12 **Economides MP**, Mahale P, Kyvernitakis A, Turturro F, Kantarjian H, Naing A, Hosry J, Shigle TL, Kaseb A, Torres HA.

Concomitant use of direct-acting antivirals and chemotherapy in hepatitis C virus-infected patients with cancer. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **44**: 1235-1241 [PMID: 27730654 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13825]

13 **Ramsey SD**, Unger JM, Baker LH, Little RF, Loomba R, Hwang JP, Chugh R, Konerman MA, Arnold K, Menter AR, Thomas E, Michels RM, Jorgensen CW, Burton GV, Bhadkamkar NA, Hershman DL. Prevalence of Hepatitis B Virus, Hepatitis C Virus, and HIV Infection Among Patients With Newly Diagnosed Cancer From Academic and Community Oncology Practices. *JAMA Oncol* 2019; **5**: 497-505 [PMID: 30653226 DOI: 10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.6437]

14 **Ghany MG**, Liang TJ. Current and future therapies for hepatitis C virus infection. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 679-680 [PMID: 23944318 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1307589]

15 **Strader DB**, Seeff LB. A brief history of the treatment of viral hepatitis C. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2012; **1**: 6-11 [PMID: 31186837 DOI: 10.1002/cld.1]

16 **Smith BD**, Jorgensen C, Zibbell JE, Beckett GA. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention initiatives to prevent hepatitis C virus infection: a selective update. *Clin Infect Dis* 2012; **55** Suppl 1: S49-S53 [PMID: 22715214 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis363]

17 **Garrison KL**, German P, Mogalian E, Mathias A. The Drug-Drug Interaction Potential of Antiviral Agents for the Treatment of Chronic Hepatitis C Infection. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2018; **46**: 1212-1225 [PMID: 29695614 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.117.079038]

18 **Chahine EB**, Kelley D, Childs-Kean LM. Sofosbuvir/Velpatasvir/Voxilaprevir: A Pan-Genotypic Direct-Acting Antiviral Combination for Hepatitis C. *Ann Pharmacother* 2018; **52**: 352-363 [PMID: 29115151 DOI: 10.1177/1060028017741508]

19 **Karaoui LR**, Mansour H, Chahine EB. Elbasvir-grazoprevir: A new direct-acting antiviral combination for hepatitis C. *Am J Health Syst Pharm* 2017; **74**: 1533-1540 [PMID: 28947524 DOI: 10.2146/ajhp160558]

20 **Yao Y**, Yue M, Wang J, Chen H, Liu M, Zang F, Li J, Zhang Y, Huang P, Yu R. Grazoprevir and Elbasvir in Patients with Genotype 1 Hepatitis C Virus Infection: A Comprehensive Efficacy and Safety Analysis. *Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **2017**: 8186275 [PMID: 28164081 DOI: 10.1155/2017/8186275]

21 **European Medicines Agency**. Summary of product characteristics: Zepatier. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/documents/product-information/zepatier-epar-product-information_en.pdf

22 **US Food and Drug Administration**. Highlights of prescribing information: Zepatier. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/Label/2017/208261s002Lbl.pdf

23 **European Medicines Agency**. Summary of product characteristics: Epclusa [in Dutch]. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/documents/product-information/epclusa-epar-product-information_nl.pdf

24 **US Food and Drug Administration**. Highlights of prescribing information: Epclusa. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/Label/2017/208341s007Lbl.pdf

25 **European Medicines Agency**. Summary of product characteristics: Maviret 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/documents/product-information/maviret-epar-product-information_nl.pdf

26 **US Food and Drug Administration**. Highlights of prescribing information: Maviret. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/Label/2017/209394s000Lbl.pdf

27 **European Medicines Agency**. Summary of product characteristics: Vosevi. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.ema.europa.eu/documents/product-information/vosevi-epar-product-information_en.pdf

28 **US Food and Drug Administration**. Highlights of prescribing information: Vosevi. 2019. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/Label/2017/209195s000Lbl.pdf

29 DAAs-chemotherapies drug-drug interactions according to Liverpool Drug Interactions Group, University of Liverpool, Pharmacology Research Labs, 1st Floor Block H, 70 Pembroke Place, LIVERPOOL, L69 3GF. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.hep-druginteractions.org

30 **Torres HA**, Pundhir P, Mallet V. Hepatitis C Virus Infection in Patients With Cancer: Impact on Clinical Trial Enrollment, Selection of Therapy, and Prognosis. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **157**: 909-916 [PMID: 30797794 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.01.271]

31 **AASLD-IDSA**. Hcv guidance: recommendations for testing, managing, and treating hepatitis C. Accessed 16 Nov 2021. Available from: https://www.Hcvguidelines.Org

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 535-550

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.535

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Fertaric acid amends bisphenol A-induced toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes in the liver, kidney, and testis

Khaled Mohamed Mohamed Koriem

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Pallottini V, Su XJ

Received: September 27, 2021
Peer-review started: September 29, 2021
First decision: November 7, 2021
Revised: November 10, 2021
Accepted: February 23, 2022
Article in press: February 23, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Khaled Mohamed Mohamed Koriem, Department of Medical Physiology, National Research Centre, Giza 12622, Egypt

Corresponding author: Khaled Mohamed Mohamed Koriem, PhD, Professor, Department of Medical Physiology, National Research Centre, 33 El-Buhouth Street, Dokki, Giza 12622, Egypt. kkoriem@yahoo.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Bisphenol A (BPA) is present in many plastic products and food packaging. On the other hand, fertaric acid (FA) is a hydroxycinnamic acid.

AIM

To investigate the effect of FA on BPA-related liver, kidney, and testis toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathology in male rats.

METHODS

Thirty male albino rats were divided into five equal groups (6 rats/group): Control, paraffin oil, FA-, BPA-, and FA + BPA-treated groups. The control and paraffin oil groups were administered orally with 1 mL distilled water and 1 mL paraffin oil, respectively. The FA-, BPA-, and FA+ BPA-treated groups were administered orally with FA (45 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL distilled water, BPA (4 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL paraffin oil, and FA (45 mg/kg, bw) followed by BPA (4 mg/kg, bw), respectively. All these treatments were given once a day for 6 wk.

RESULTS

BPA induced a significant decrease in serum alkaline phosphatase, acid phosphatase, sodium, potassium and chloride, testosterone, dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, and testis protein levels but a highly significant increase in serum aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, lactate dehydrogenase, bilirubin, urea, creatinine, uric acid, luteinizing hormone, follicle stimulating hormone, sex hormone binding globulin, blood urea nitrogen, and testis cholesterol levels. Also, FA inhibited the degradation of liver, kidney, and testis DNA content. Oral administration of FA to BPA-treated rats restored all the above parameters to normal levels.

CONCLUSION
FA ameliorates BPA-induced liver, kidney, and testis toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes.

Key Words: Bisphenol A; Fertaric acid; Liver; Kidney; Testis; Toxicity; DNA

Core Tip: BPA induced a significant decrease in serum alkaline phosphatase, acid phosphatase, sodium, potassium and chloride, testosterone, dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, and testis protein levels but a highly significant increase in serum aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, lactate dehydrogenase, bilirubin, urea, creatinine, uric acid, luteinizing hormone, follicle stimulating hormone, sex hormone binding globulin, blood urea nitrogen, and testis cholesterol levels. Also, FA inhibited DNA degradation in the liver, kidney, and testis. Oral administration of FA to BPA-treated rats restored all the above parameters to normal levels. Therefore, FA ameliorates BPA-induced liver, kidney, and testis toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes.

Citation: Koriem KMM. Fertaric acid amends bisphenol A-induced toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes in the liver, kidney, and testis. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 535-550
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/535.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.535

INTRODUCTION

Industrial pollutants such as bisphenol A (BPA), octylphenols, and nonylphenols are known as endocrine-disrupting compounds[1]. BPA is present in many consumer plastic products, food packaging, and in the dentistry for the manufacturing of resin materials[2]. The burning of dumped waste in an open air transfers BPA from plastic waste into the environment. The human and animal exposure to BPA is rapid and continuous[3]. The world production of BPA was 1 million tons in the 1980s[4], which increased to more than 2.2 million tons in 2009[5] and became 3.6 million tons of BPA-derived chemicals in 2015[6]. BPA is released into the surrounding environment by pre-consumer and post-consumer leakage. The pre-consumer leakage into the environment is directly from staining manufacturers, coat, and plastics. The post-consumer BPA is from wastewater treatment plants, agriculture irrigation pipes, ocean-borne plastic trash, and papers or materials recycling companies[7]. BPA affects reproduction, growth, and development of aquatic invertebrates, amphibians, reptiles, and fish at lower doses (1μg/L to 1 mg/L)[8]. BPA is a precursor to important plastics such as plastic bottles including baby bottles, water bottles, and food storage containers. BPA is a monomer that is part of polycarbonates and epoxy resins. However, it can improve the properties of other plastics, which is why it is found in many objects. BPA is similar in its structure to estrogen. Therefore, it interacts with estrogen receptors (in the cell membrane and in the cytoplasm/nucleus). It plays an important role in cardiovascular physiology and diseases such as hypertension[9]. BPA weakened liver function by increasing alkaline phosphatase, aspartate and alanine aminotransferases, triglyceride, cholesterol, globulin, and total bilirubin levels. BPA caused kidney damage by increasing blood urea nitrogen and serum creatinine levels. Histology study exhibited damages of the liver and kidney. The apoptosis of liver and kidney cells was increased by exposure to BPA[10]. BPA decreased sperm quality and serum testosterone (Ts) level. Exposure to a low dose of BPA (0.2 μg/mL) impaired mouse sperm quality by damaging germ cell proliferation, leading to declined male fertility[11]. The dose used in this study (4 mg/kg/d) is not a high dose because the US Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has calculated its human acceptable daily-intake level, known as the reference dose, by dividing the rodent "lowest effect" level of 50 mg/kg/d by 1000. This calculation is based on the assumption that humans are 10 times more sensitive than rodents to BPA exposure and a sensitive human is 10 times more sensitive than a typical human[12,13]. That is mean oral administration of 4 mg/kg/d in rats = oral administration of 4 μg/kg/d in human. Furthermore, BPA has been in use commercially for over 50 years, and workers producing BPA and its products (such as epoxy resins) have been exposed to an average air levels of 10 mg over decades[13], which is equal to double and half the dose used in this research.

Therefore, it becomes a challenging responsibility to find a safe and effective way to overcome the BPA toxicity in regions where BPA is already present in water bottles and food packaging and people are therefore exposed to BPA toxicity day and night. The use of herbal plants in the medicine has been known for a long time and today it has made a comeback in all over the world. This is because of their

minor side effects and good therapeutic effects. A large number of secondary metabolites derived from natural sources are currently undergoing evaluation in clinical trials. Fertaric acid (FA) is a hydroxycinnamic acid found in grapefruit[14]. It is formed by the binding of ferulic acid with tartaric acid. FA publications are very rare. Maier *et al*[15] developed a method for the isolation of FA as well as caftaric and coutaric acids from grape pomace. The purities of FA, caftaric acid, and coutaric acid were 90.4%, 97.0%, and 97.2%, respectively. Moreover, Koriem and Arbid[16] proved that FA ameliorated liver function, antioxidants, and inflammatory cytokines in the 4-tert-octylphenol-induced toxicity. In addition, Wetchakul *et al*[17] stated that Thai traditional preparation (Jatu-Phala-Tiga [JPT]; FA is a major constituent in JPT) exhibited strong antioxidant activities. Thus, FA is a promising agent for anti-aging and oxidative stress prevention. Furthermore, Lukić *et al*[18] used liquid chromatography with mass spectrometry method to determinate FA in 173 wines made from 4 red and 6 white grape varieties. Moreover, Abdallah *et al*[19] isolated FA with a protective effect in ameliorating liver function and antioxidants in t-BHP-induced HepG2 hepatic carcinoma cells. Additionally, FA occurs in vine seeds (*Vitis vinifera* L.) and it has antioxidant activity. FA is among 14 antioxidant components in grape seeds [20].

The aim of this study was to investigate the protective effect of FA in ameliorating oral BPA-induced toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes in liver, kidney, and testis tissues in male rats.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Materials

The kits used for the detection of liver function were obtained from Stanbio Laboratory, United States. The kidney function and serum electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride) were measured with analytical kits from Bio-Diagnostics, United Kingdom. Ts, luteinizing hormone (LH), follicle stimulating hormone (FSH), and dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-SO_4) kits were purchased from BioSource Co., Nivelles, Belgium. The sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG), γ-glutamyl transpeptidase (γ-GT), glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD), and 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (3βHSD) kits were obtained from IBL Co., Hamburg, Germany. BPA (purity = 99%) was obtained from Sigma-Aldrich, United States, while FA (purity = 98.2%) was purchased from Riven International PVT, LTD, India.

Animals

The animal house of the National Research Centre (NRC), Giza, Egypt provided the necessary animals for this study. This study included male albino adult rats of *Spargue Dawley* strains (10 wk old, 120 ± 10g). These rats were preserved in plastic polycarbonate (without bisphenol A) cages [special cages were manufactured without PBA in Faculty of Agriculture, Cairo University, Giza, Egypt]. The rats were maintained with ordinary food and tap water. This research was started after the approval form was received from the ethical committee of NRC, Giza, Egypt and in accordance with the regulations for the suitable care and use of laboratory animals (NIH Publication No 85:23, revised 1985). The experimental conditions included 12 h light and 12 h dark cycle, laboratory temperature of 27-30 °C, and experimental room humidity of 40%-70%.

Experimental design

Thirty male albino rats were divided into six equal groups (6 rats/ group) as follows: Control, paraffin oil, FA-, BPA-, and FA + BPA-treated groups. The control group was administered orally with 1 mL of distilled water once a day for 6 wk. The paraffin oil group was administered orally with 1 mL of paraffin oil once a day for 6 wk. Paraffin oil was chosen because this oil had no antioxidant activity in contrast to corn oil, olive oil, and safflower oil which contain vitamin E with an antioxidant effect. The FA-treated group was administered orally with FA (45 mg/kg body weight [bw])[16] dissolved in 1 mL of distilled water once a day for 6 wk. The BPA-treated group was administered orally with BPA (4 mg/kg, bw) [21] dissolved in 1 mL of paraffin oil once a day for 6 wk. The 4 mg/kg of BPA is equivalent to 10% of the LD_{50} of BPA; the median lethal dose (LD_{50}) of BPA is 40 mg/kg[22] and 10% of the LD_{50} is a safe dose[23,24]. The FA+ BPA-treated group was initially orally administered with FA (45 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL of distilled water. After 1 h, the rats were administered orally with BPA (4 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL of paraffin oil. Both FA and BPA were administered orally once a day for 6 wk.

The animals were observed daily for any clinical symptoms or animal death. During the experimental period, the food ingestion, water drinking, and body weight were calculated and recorded daily until the end of this study.

Determination of urine volume

The urine volume was determined according to the method of Kau *et al*[25], with minor modifications where urine of each rat was collected daily throughout the whole experiment and urine volume was calculated.

Blood sampling and handling

After 6 wk of the research, the blood samples were collected from the retro-orbital plexus of the animals. Then, the blood samples were transferred to capillary tubes. After the coagulation of the blood samples, the samples were centrifuged at 4000 rpm for 15 min to obtain the serum. These serum samples were stored at -80 °C for detection of liver and kidney function and male sex hormones.

Liver, kidney, and testicular tissue preparation

The next step following blood collection was the execution of the animals by cervical dislocation in this study. Liver, kidney, and testis tissues were collected from each group for histological and genetic analyses. Briefly, liver, kidney, and testis organs were taken and washed with saline solution. The filter papers were used to obtain dry liver, kidney, and testis organs. These organs were homogenized in a homogenizer apparatus for 30 min and the resulting liver, kidney, and testis homogenates were stored at -80 °C for the detection of liver, kidney, and testis DNA.

Biochemical investigation

Serum transaminases (AST and ALT) were determined according to Reitman and Frankel[26]. Serum alkaline phosphatase (ALP) and acid phosphatase (ACP) were determined as described by Kind and King[27]. Serum γ-glutamyl transferase (γ-GT) activity was measured according to the method of Szasz [28]. Serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) activity was estimated according to the method of Weisshaar *et al*[29]. Serum total bilirubin determination was performed according to the method of Walter and Gerard[30]. Serum urea was calculated according to the method of Patton and Crouch[31]. Serum creatinine was determined by the kinetic method as described by Houot[32]. Serum uric acid was measured according to the method of Kabasakalian *et al*[33]. Blood urea nitrogen was estimated according to the method of Zhu *et al*[34]. Serum electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride) were analyzed colorimetrically according to the methods of Jooste and Strydom[35], Wang *et al*[36], and Hassan *et al*[37], respectively. Urinary and testicular proteins were determined according to the method of Gornall *et al*[38]. Urinary albumin was measured using the method of Drupt[39]. Serum Ts was determined according to the method of Maruyama *et al*[40]. Serum LH was calculated using the method of Knobil[41]. Serum FSH was estimated according to the method of Odell *et al*[42]. Serum DHEA-SO_4 was obtained according to the method of De-Peretti and Forest[43]. Serum SHBG was evaluated according to the method of Selby[44]. Testicular G6PD was determined according to the method of Chan *et al*[45]. Testicular 3βHSD was calculated using the method of Talalay[46]. Testicular cholesterol level was estimated according to the method of Kim and Goldnerg[47].

Determination of DNA content in liver, kidney, and testis

Feulgen-stained slides were prepared for the nuclear DNA analysis using the Leica Qwin 500 Image Analyzer (LEICA Imaging Systems Ltd, Cambridge, UK). The system was calibrated before each measurement session using the calibration slides provided with the system at high power magnification (400×). The optical density of the selected nuclei in each microscopic field was measured and automatically converted by the system into DNA content. The DNA fields were selected by the desired number of nuclei (100-150). The results are presented as a frequency histogram on the monitor by plotting the DNA content against the number of nuclei calculated. The DNA histograms were divided according to Danqu *et al*[48], Darzynkiewicz *et al*[49], Darzynkiewicz *et al*[50], and El-Gamal[51] into: (1) Diploid (DNA index ranging from 0.9-1.1), (2) tetraploid (DNA index ranging from 1.8-2.2), and (3) aneuploid (when at least 10% of the total events showed distinct abnormal peak outside the 2c or 4c) based on the amount of DNA related to the normal control. Liver, left kidney, and left testis tissues were used in DNA determination.

Histopathological investigation

The liver, right kidney, and right testis tissues were fixed in 10% formalin solution and then processed for routine technique by embedding in paraffin. The tissue blocks were sectioned (5 μm thick) and then stained with hematoxylin and eosin for histopathological examination under a light microscope.

Statistical analysis

The results obtained are expressed as the mean ± standard deviations (SD). Data distribution was tested by the Kolmogorov-Smirnov test. Statistical analyses were calculated through one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) using SPSS program, followed by a *post-hoc* test using Tukey's analysis. A P value ≤ 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Protective effect of FA on body weight, food and water intake, urine volume, and urinary protein, albumin, and albumin/protein ratio in rats exposed to BPA

The effect of FA on body weight, food and water intake, urine volume, and urinary protein and albumin in the BPA-treated group is shown in Table 1. BPA induced significant decrease in body weight, food intake, and water consumption while causing a significant increase in urinary volume, protein, albumin, and albumin/globulin ratio compared to the control group. On the other side, FA oral administration with BPA administration increased body weight, food intake, and water consumption, but decreased urinary volume, protein, albumin, and albumin/globulin ratio in the BPA-treated group to approach the control levels. Furthermore, paraffin oil and FA oral administration showed an insignificant impact on body weight, food intake and water consumption, urinary volume, protein, albumin, and albumin/globulin ratio compared to the control group. There was not any edema, hair loss, death, or other clinical symptoms observed in animals throughout the experimental period of the study.

Protective effect of FA on liver, kidney, and testis toxicity following BPA exposure

The protective effect of FA on liver toxicity in BPA-treated rats is shown in Table 2. It is clear from the data in this table that the oral administration of distilled water, paraffin oil, and FA in normal rats did not induce any changes in serum AST, ALT, ALP, ACP, γGT, LDH, and bilirubin levels. On the contrary, the oral administration of BPA caused a highly significant decrease in serum ALP and ACP but a highly significant increase in serum AST, ALT, γGT, LDH, and bilirubin compared with control rats. Furthermore, the oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats caused an increase in serum ALP and ACP levels and a decrease in serum AST, ALT, γGT, LDH, and bilirubin levels compared to these liver parameters in the BPA-treated group.

The protective effect of FA on kidney toxicity and serum electrolytes in BPA-treated rats is shown in Table 3. It is clear from the data in this table that the oral intake of distilled water, paraffin oil, and FA in normal rats did not induce any changes in serum urea, creatinine, uric acid, sodium, potassium, and chloride levels, as well as blood urea nitrogen. On the contrary, the oral administration of BPA caused a highly significant increase in serum urea, creatinine, uric acid, and blood urea nitrogen but a highly significant decrease in serum sodium, potassium, and chloride levels compared with control rats. Furthermore, the oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats caused a decrease in serum urea, creatinine, uric acid, and blood urea nitrogen levels and an increase in serum sodium, potassium, and chloride levels compared to these kidney parameters in the BPA-treated group.

The protective effect of FA on male sex hormones in BPA-treated rats is shown in Table 4. It is clear from the data in this table that the oral administration of distilled water, paraffin oil, and FA in normal rats did not induce any changes in serum Ts, LH, FSH, DHEA-S, and SHBG, as well as testicular G6PD, 3βHSD, cholesterol, and protein levels. On the contrary, the oral administration of BPA caused a highly significant decrease in serum Ts, DHEA-S, G6PD, 3βHSD, and protein levels but a highly significant increase in serum LH, FSH, SHBG, and cholesterol levels compared with control rats. Furthermore, the oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats caused an increase in serum Ts, DHEA-S, G6PD, 3βHSD, and protein levels and a decrease in serum LH, FSH, SHBG, and cholesterol levels compared to these testicular parameters in the BPA-treated group.

Protective effect of FA on liver, kidney, and testis DNA content after BPA exposure

The data presented in Table 5 exhibit the liver content in male rats. It is clear from the data in this table that control rats revealed 65.77% of diploid cells (2c), 11.71% of triploid cells (3c) (medium proliferation index), 0.90% of tetraploid cells (4c), and 0.0% of aneuploid cells (> 5c) (diploid-medium proliferation index). In BPA-treated rats, the liver tissue displayed 22.64% of diploid cells, 9.43% of triploid cells (low proliferation index), 31.13% of tetraploid cells, and 36.79% of aneuploidy cells (aneuploid-low proliferation index). In rats administered with FA before BPA exposure, the liver tissue presented 33.65% of diploid cells, 15.89% of triploid cells (high proliferation index), 40.19% of tetraploid cells, and 10.28% of aneuploid cells (diploid-high proliferation index).

The data presented in Table 6 display the kidney content in male rats. It is clear from the data in this table that control rats demonstrated 72.90% of diploid cells, 14.95% of triploid cells (medium proliferation index), 0.0% of tetraploid cells, and 0.0% of aneuploid cells (diploid-medium proliferation index). In the BPA-treated group, the kidney tissue exhibited 19.81% of diploid cells, 31.13% of triploid cells (high proliferation index), 28.30% of tetraploid cells, and 20.76% of aneuploidy cells (tetraploid-high proliferation index)]. In rats treated with FA before BPA exposure, the kidney tissue exhibited 57.80% of diploid cells, 29.36% of triploid cells (medium proliferation index), 5.51% of tetraploid cells, and 7.34% of aneuploid cells (diploid-medium proliferation index).

The data presented in Table 7 show the testis content in male rats. It is clear from the data in this table that control rats displayed 66.37% of diploid cells, 12.39% of triploid cells (medium proliferation index), 0.89% of tetraploid cells, and 0.0% of aneuploid cells (diploid-medium proliferation index)]. In the BPA-treated group, the testis tissue revealed 23.85% of diploid cells, 11.01% of triploid cells (high proliferation index), 27.52% of tetraploid cells, and 37.62% of aneuploidy cells (tetraploid-high prolif-

Table 1 Protective effect of fertaric acid on body weight, food and water intake, urine volume, and urinary protein, albumin, and albumin/protein ratio in rats exposed to bisphenol A

Parameter	Group				
	Control	Paraffin oil	FA	BPA	FA + BPA
Initial body weight (g)	132.5 ± 14.5	133.1 ± 15.6	131.8 ± 14.2	134.8 ± 13.9	135.0 ± 15.3
Final body weight (g)	185.0 ± 16.8	187.1 ± 17.2	186.3 ± 18.64	87.8 ± 12.5[d]	183.75 ± 16.7[b]
Initial food consumption (g/d)	11.5 ± 1.3	11.3 ± 1.0	11.4 ± 1.2	11.7 ± 1.1	11.6 ± 1.4
Final food consumption (g/d)	14.1 ± 1.1	14.3 ± 1.4	14.2 ± 1.3	5.7 ± 1.0[d]	14.0 ± 1.2[b]
Initial water intake (mL/d)	12.2 ± 1.5	12.4 ± 1.3	12.1 ± 1.2	12.3 ± 1.4	12.5 ± 1.0[b]
Final water intake (mL/d)	15.4 ± 1.6	15.2 ± 1.3	15.3 ± 1.0	6.8 ± 0.9[d]	15.1 ± 1.2[b]
Urine volume (mL/100 g/8 h)	0.98 ± 0.07	0.96 ± 0.09	0.99 ± 0.08	1.26 ± 0.15[c]	1.01 ± 0.08[a]
Urinary protein excretion (g/dL)	4.06 ± 0.24	4.04 ± 0.21	4.07 ± 0.26	5.29 ± 0.19[c]	4.08 ± 0.25[a]
Urinary albumin excretion (g/dL)	2.30 ± 1.4	2.28 ± 1.1	2.32 ± 1.3	4.13 ± 1.5[d]	2.31 ± 1.2[b]
Urinary albumin/protein excretion ratio	0.57 ± 0.05	0.56 ± 0.03	0.57 ± 0.04	0.78 ± 0.02[c]	0.57 ± 0.03[a]

[a]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to bisphenol A (BPA).
[b]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to BPA.
[c]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to control.
[d]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to control. Number of animals = 6 rats/group. Initial body weight, food consumption, and water intake = body weight, food consumption, and water intake at the first day (day 0) of the experiment. Final body weight, food consumption, and water intake = body weight, food consumption, and water intake at the final day of the experiment. Values are expressed as the mean ± SD. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A.

Table 2 Protective effect of fertaric acid on liver toxicity in rats exposed to bisphenol A

Parameter	Group				
	Control	Paraffin oil	FA	BPA	FA + BPA
Serum AST (U/L)	121.8 ± 2.64	122.4 ± 3.26	124.0 ± 2.73	175.2 ± 0.72[d]	130.4 ± 4.17[b]
Serum ALT (U/L)	60.9 ± 2.37	61.9 ± 2.18	63.1 ± 2.59	86.7 ± 1.96[d]	65.1 ± 2.9[b]
Serum ALP (U/100 mL)	14.9 ± 1.27	14.7 ± 1.46	16.2 ± 1.56	5.65 ± 0.82[d]	13.7 ± 1.22[b]
Serum ACP (U/100 mL)	17.0 ± 2.79	16.2 ± 2.48	15.8 ± 2.75	6.86 ± 2.01[d]	12.15 ± 2.34[b]
Serum γGT (U/L)	8.42 ± 1.32	8.52 ± 1.25	9.90 ± 1.37	13.6 ± 2.30[d]	10.2 ± 1.57[b]
Serum LDH (U/L)	261.0 ± 43.6	257.9 ± 35.8	257.4 ± 36.8	755.9 ± 53.17[d]	277.8 ± 52.8[b]
Serum bilirubin (mg/dL)	0.53 ± 0.08	0.55 ± 0.09	0.58 ± 0.06	0.82 ± 0.05[d]	0.54 ± 0.04[b]

[a]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to bisphenol A (BPA).
[b]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to BPA.
[c]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to control.
[d]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to control. Number of animals = 6 rats/group. Values are expressed as the mean ± SD. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ACP: Acid phosphatase; γ-GT: γ-Glutamyl transferase; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase.

eration index). In rats treated with FA and then BPA, the testis tissue revealed 36.94% of diploid cells, 22.52% of triploid cells (medium proliferation index), 28.83% of tetraploid cells, and 11.71% of aneuploid cells (diploid-medium proliferation index)].

Protective effect of FA on liver, kidney, and testis histopathology after BPA exposure

Figure 1 exhibits the histology of liver tissue in the control, paraffin oil, and FA, BPA, and FA + BPA-treated groups. It is clear from this figure that in the control, paraffin oil, and FA-treated groups, the hepatocytes were large in size, rounded, and bounded by a distinct nuclear envelope. The structure of the liver in the control, paraffin oil, and FA-treated groups showed normal hepatocytes, vascular sinusoids, and centro-lobular vein (Figure 1A-C). The oral administration of BPA caused rim edema in

Table 3 Protective effect of fertaric acid on kidney toxicity and serum electrolytes in rats exposed to bisphenol A

Parameter	Group				
	Control	Paraffin oil	FA	BPA	FA + BPA
Serum urea (mg/dL)	26.5 ± 2.83	27.2 ± 2.54	25.8 ± 2.59	34.0 ± 2.59[c]	28.2 ± 2.74[a]
Serum creatinine (mg/dL)	0.75 ± 0.08	0.76 ± 0.06	0.74 ± 0.07	0.98 ± 0.09[c]	0.76 ± 0.09[a]
Serum uric acid (mg/dL)	8.21 ± 0.43	8.16 ± 0.52	8.28 ± 0.64	17.65 ± 0.82[d]	9.16 ± 0.58[b]
Blood urea nitrogen (mg/dL)	16.25 ± 1.54	16.47 ± 1.39	16.18 ± 1.52	34.42 ± 1.80[d]	17.18 ± 1.71[b]
Serum sodium (mmol/L)	154.60 ± 3.29	155.28 ± 3.61	153.81 ± 3.50	110.24 ± 4.16[d]	144.9 ± 3.28[a]
Serum potassium (mmol/L)	5.62 ± 0.19	5.71 ± 0.15	5.59 ± 0.24	2.71 ± 0.28[d]	5.43 ± 0.18[a]
Serum chloride (mmol/L)	102.83 ± 2.19	103.20 ± 2.34	102.36 ± 2.75	81.47 ± 1.85[d]	101.26 ± 2.39[a]

[a]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to bisphenol A (BPA).
[b]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to BPA.
[c]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to control.
[d]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to control. Number of animals = 6 rats/group. Values are expressed as the mean ± SD. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A.

Table 4 Protective effect of fertaric acid on testicular toxicity in rats exposed to bisphenol A

Parameter	Group				
	Control	Paraffin oil	FA	BPA	FA + BPA
Serum Ts (ng/mL)	5.98 ± 0.42	6.00 ± 0.51	5.96 ± 0.62	3.14 ± 0.49[c]	5.89 ± 0.68[a]
Serum LH (mIU/mL)	18.28 ± 1.85	18.31 ± 1.64	17.96 ± 1.93	33.30 ± 2.21[d]	18.15 ± 5.14[b]
Serum FSH (mIU/mL)	1.05 ± 0.13	1.03 ± 0.19	0.98 ± 0.15	2.32 ± 0.22[d]	1.02 ± 0.18[b]
Serum DHEA-SO_4 (μg/dL)	197.50 ± 23.29	198.25 ± 26.12	195.74 ± 21.84	154.25 ± 13.56[c]	193.72 ± 19.71[a]
Serum SHBG (nmol/L)	6.65 ± 0.49	6.67 ± 0.62	6.63 ± 0.51	9.06 ± 1.84[c]	6.71 ± 4.95[a]
Testis G6PD (U/g tissue)	11.92 ± 0.66	11.94 ± 0.86	11.89 ± 0.73	5.64 ± 0.43[d]	10.86 ± 1.52[b]
Testis 3βHSD (U/g tissue)	4.46 ± 0.86	4.48 ± 0.75	4.43 ± 0.62	2.15 ± 0.36[d]	4.35 ± 0.88[b]
Testis Chol (mg/g tissue)	130.67 ± 8.16	132.17 ± 6.90	128.86 ± 7.48	192.53 ± 8.44[d]	129.21 ± 7.51[b]
Testis protein (mg/g tissue)	290.6 ± 14.23	288.9 ± 16.51	292.19 ± 13.64	187.60 ± 15.18[d]	289.45 ± 11.59[b]

[a]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to bisphenol A (BPA).
[b]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to BPA.
[c]$P \leq 0.05$ compared to control.
[d]$P \leq 0.01$ compared to control. Number of animals = 6 rats/group. Values are expressed as the mean ± SD. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A; Ts: Testosterone; LH: Luteinizing hormone; FSH: Follicle stimulating hormone; DHEA-SO_4: Dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate; SHBG: Sex hormone binding globulin; G6PD: Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase; 3βHSD: 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase; Chol: Cholesterol.

the periportal area, which compressed the surrounding hepatocytes. Intra-cytoplasm vacuolation was also found after BPA oral administration (Figure 1D). The oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats resulted in preserved hepatic lobular architecture and normal structure of the hepatocytes and dilated hepatic sinusoids where the hepatocytes were within normal limits and preserved their plate pattern (Figure 1E).

Figure 2 displays the histology of kidney tissue in the control, paraffin oil, and FA, BPA, and FA + BPA-treated groups. It is clear from this figure that in the control, paraffin oil, and FA-treated groups, the glomeruli showed a normal size with normal tubules (Figure 2C). Figure 2D reveals that the BPA-treated group showed widespread coagulated necrosis with dilatation, vacuolar degeneration, epithelial desquamation, and intraluminal cast formation. Figure 2E shows that the FA + BPA-treated group revealed marked improvement in the histological picture which was comparable to that of the control group.

Figure 3 reveals the histology of testis tissue in the control, paraffin oil, and FA, BPA, and FA + BPA-treated groups. It is clear from this figure that in the control, paraffin oil, and FA-treated groups, the testis tissue revealed well-layered seminiferous tubules with germ cells (Figure 3C). In the BPA-treated group, the testis tissue showed disrupted basement membrane and tubular epithelium (Figure 3D). The

Table 5 Liver DNA content in different groups

Control				BPA				FA + BPA			
Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index
All	111	100.0%	1.000	All	106	100.0%	2.374	All	107	100.0%	1.923
5cER	0	0.0%	-	5cER	39	36.79%	2.948	5cER	11	10.28%	2.815
< 1.5c	24	21.62%	0.679	< 1.5c	0	0.0%	-	< 1.5c	0	0.0%	-
1.5c-2.5c	73	65.77%	1.031	1.5c-2.5c	24	22.64%	1.045	1.5c-2.5c	36	33.65%	1.181
2.5c-3.5c	13	11.71%	1.359	2.5c-3.5c	10	9.43%	1.558	2.5c-3.5c	17	15.89%	1.595
3.5c-4.5c	1	0.90%	1.779	3.5c-4.5c	33	31.13%	2.033	3.5c-4.5c	43	40.19%	2.273

Number of animals = 6 rats/group. The results are presented as a frequency histogram on the monitor generated by plotting the DNA content against the number of nuclei calculated. 2c: Diploid cells containing two copies of DNA; 3c: Proliferation index (S-phase cells containing three strands of DNA); 4c: Tetraploid cells containing four copies of DNA; > 4c: Cells with more than 4c DNA content; < 1.5c: Cells containing less than 1.5c DNA content. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A.

Table 6 Kidney DNA content in different groups

Control				BPA				FA + BPA			
Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index
All	107	100.0%	1.000	All	106	100.0%	1.628	All	109	100.0%	1.136
5cER	0	0.0%	-	5cER	22	20.76%	2.716	5cER	8	7.34%	-
< 1.5c	13	12.15%	0.650	< 1.5c	0	16.04%	0.623	< 1.5c	0	8.26%	0.663
1.5c-2.5c	78	72.90%	0.984	1.5c-2.5c	21	19.81%	0.984	1.5- 2.5c	63	57.80%	1.008
2.5c-3.5c	16	14.95%	1.364	2.5c-3.5c	33	31.13%	1.364	2.5c-3.5c	32	29.36%	1.411
3.5c-4.5c	0	0.0%	-	3.5c-4.5c	30	28.30%	1.988	3.5c-4.5c	6	5.51%	1.842

Number of animals = 6 rats/group. The results are presented as a frequency histogram on the monitor generated by plotting the DNA content against the number of nuclei calculated. 2c: Diploid (cells containing two copies of DNA; 3c: Proliferation index (S-phase cells containing three copies of DNA); 4c: Tetraploid cells containing four copies of DNA; > 4 c: Cells with more than 4c DNA content; < 1.5 c: Cells containing less than 1.5 c DNA content. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A.

FA + BPA-treated group (Figure 3E) exhibited normal seminiferous tubules with germ cells.

DISCUSSION

BPA is an environmental pollutant that belongs to the endocrine disrupting chemicals. BPA is present in many consumer plastic products, such as water bottles and food packaging, and in the dentistry for the manufacturing of resin materials[2]. The burning of dumped waste in an open air transfers BPA from plastic waste into the environment and consequently the human and animal exposure to BPA is rapid and continuous[3]. On the other hand, FA is a hydroxycinnamic acid found in grapefruit.

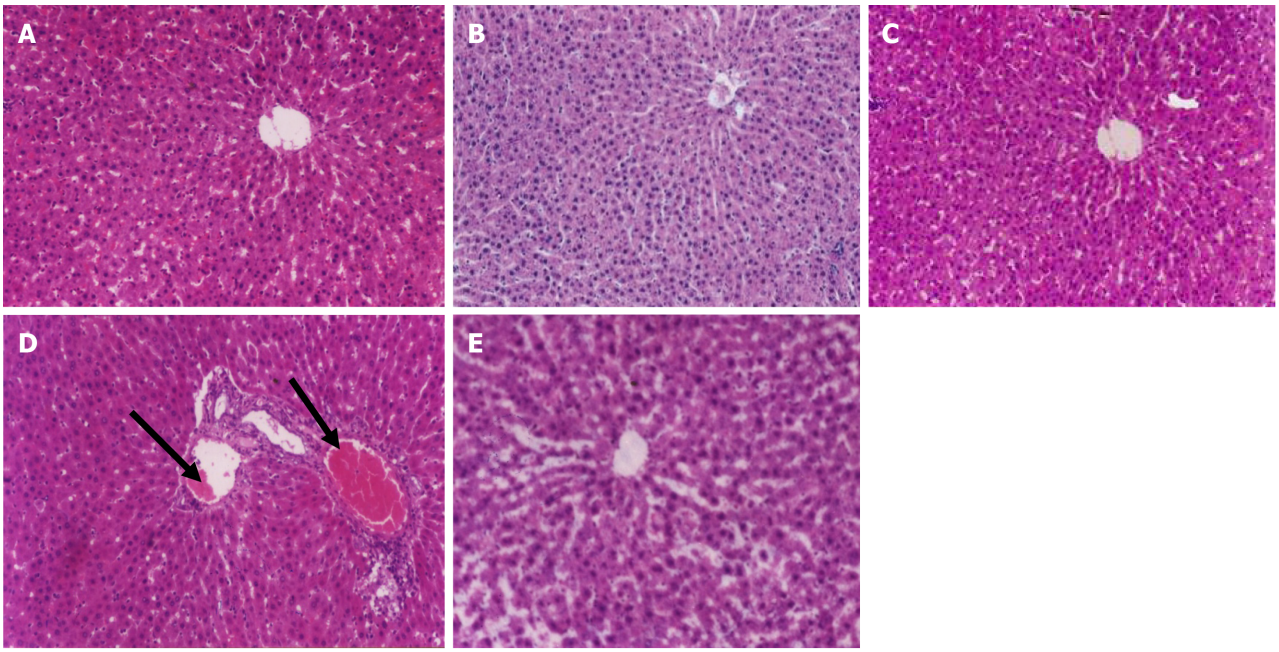
The aim of this study was to evaluate the protective effect of FA on the oral BPA-induced toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes of the liver, kidney, and testis induced.

BPA induced a significant decrease in body weight, food intake, and water consumption while causing a significant increase in urinary volume, protein, albumin, and albumin/globulin ratio compared to the control group. On the other side, oral administration of FA increased the body weight, food intake, and water consumption while decreasing urinary volume, protein, albumin, and albumin/globulin ratio in BPA-treated rats to approach the control levels. These results are in agreement with that of Kazemi *et al*[52] who found that oral administration with 5, 25 and 125 μg/kg of BPA for 35 d decreased the body weight of rats and this weight loss was more evident at doses of 25 and 125 μg/kg. On the other hand, oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats led all the above mentioned parameters to approach the normal levels and these effects are similar to the effect of FA (45

Table 7 Testis DNA content in different groups

Control				BPA				FA + BPA			
Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index	Range	Total cells	% cells	DNA index
All	113	100.0	1.000	All	109	100.0	2.614	All	111	100.0	1.951
5cER	0	0.0	-	5cER	41	37.62	2.953	5cER	13	11.71	2.726
< 1.5c	23	20.35	0.662	< 1.5c	0	0.0	-	< 1.5c	0	0.0	-
1.5c- 2.5c	75	66.37	1.071	1.5c- 2.5c	26	23.85	1.805	1.5c- 2.5c	41	36.94	1.250
2.5c- 3.5c	14	12.39	1.412	2.5c- 3.5c	12	11.01	1.741	2.5c- 3.5c	25	22.52	1.803
3.5c- 4.5c	1	0.89	1.503	3.5c- 4.5c	30	27.52	2.019	3.5c- 4.5c	32	28.83	1.948

Number of animals = 6 rats/group. The results are presented as a frequency histogram on the monitor generated by plotting the DNA content against the number of nuclei calculated. 2c: Diploid cells containing two copies of DNA; 3c: Proliferation index (S-phase cells contained three copies of DNA); 4c: Tetraploid cells containing four copies of DNA; > 4 c: Cells with more than 4c DNA content; < 1.5 c: Cells containing less than 1.5 c DNA content. FA: Fertaric acid; BPA: Bisphenol A.

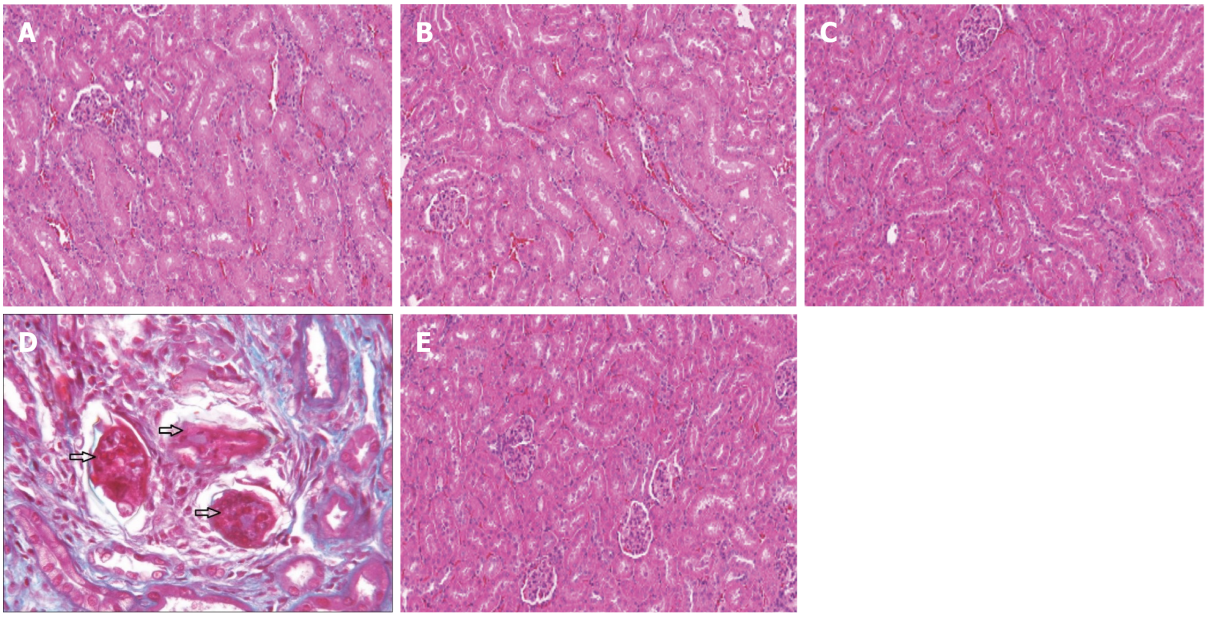


DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.535

Figure 1 Pathological changes in the liver after treatment. A: Control group; B: Paraffin oil-treated group; C: Fertaric acid (FA)-treated group; D: Bisphenol A (BPA)-treated group; E: FA + BPA-treated group. The control, paraffin oil, and FA-treated rats (A, B, and C; H&E staining, 200 ×) showed a normal hepatic architecture with preserved hepatic architecture. On the contrary, in BPA-treated rats (D), there was rim edema in the periportal area (black arrows) which compressed the surrounding hepatocytes. Intra-cytoplasm vacuolation was noted. FA + BPA-treated rats (E) had a preserved hepatic lobular architecture.

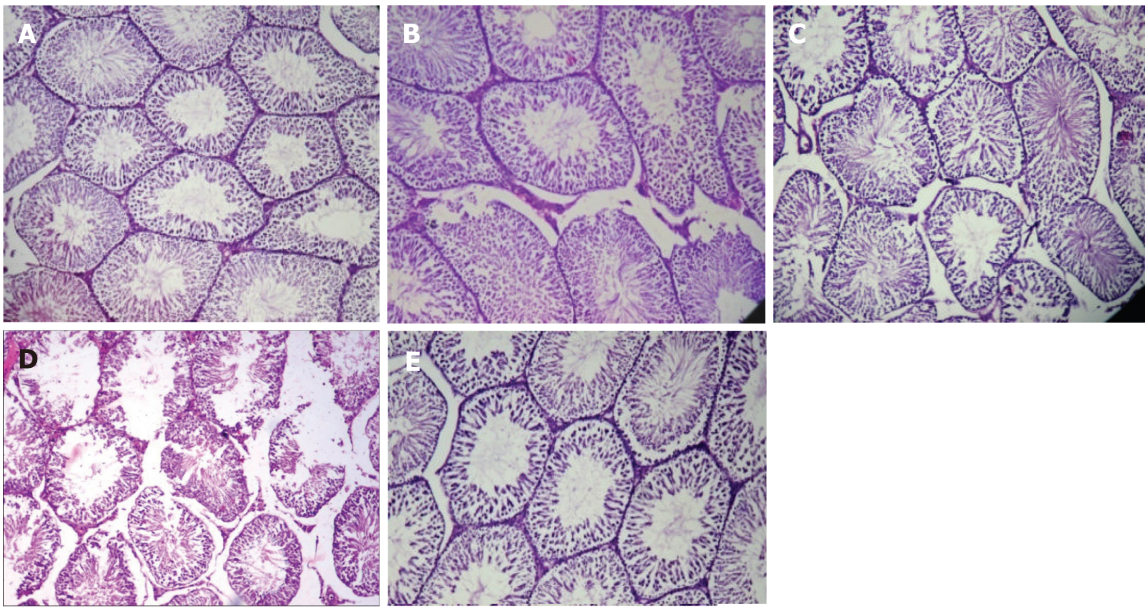
mg/kg) to increase food consumption, water intake, and body weight in endocrine disrupting chemicals exposed rats[16].

The liver is the main site of toxicity disposal or degradation in the human body. Therefore, any changes in the liver transaminases (AST and ALT) are indicators of liver dysfunction[53] and hepatic toxicity[54]. In this study, both AST and ALT activities showed a highly significant increase in BPA-treated rats. Thus, the oral intake of BPA changed the hepatocytes and liver metabolism and liver toxicity occurred. Moreover, all liver enzymes such as serum ALP, ACP γ-GT, LDH, and bilirubin were increased in this study, which indicated hepatic toxicity[55,56]. These observations are in agreement with that of Sun *et al*[57] who found that BPA induced an increase in liver enzymes (AST, ALT, and γ-GT), inflammatory cell infiltration, and hepatocyte necrosis. The authors of that paper[57] used 500 mg/kg BPA, which was higher than the dose of BPA in the present study (4 mg/kg), but Kazemi *et al*[52] used oral doses of 5, 25, and 125 μg/kg of BPA (induced liver toxicity in adult rats), which were lower than our dose. Moreover, Sun *et al*[57] found an increase in ALP as a result of liver toxicity after



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.535

Figure 2 Pathological changes in the kidney after treatment. A: Control group; B: Paraffin oil-treated group; C: Fertaric acid (FA)-treated group; D: Bisphenol A (BPA)-treated group; E: FA + BPA-treated rats. It is clear from these figures (H&E staining, 200 ×) that control, paraffin oil-, and FA-treated rats showed a normal size of glomeruli with normal tubules (A-C). BPA-treated rats (D) showed widespread coagulated necrosis with dilatation, vacuolar degeneration, epithelial desquamation, and intraluminal cast formation. FA + BPA-treated rats (E) revealed marked improvement in the histological picture which is comparable to that of the control group.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.535

Figure 3 Pathological changes of the testis after treatment. A: Control group; B: Paraffin oil-treated group; C: Fertaric acid (FA)-treated group; D: Bisphenol A (BPA)-treated group; E: FA+BPA-treated group. It is clear from these figures that control, paraffin oil-, and FA-treated rats revealed well-layered seminiferous tubules with germ cells (A-C). In BPA-treated rats, testis tissue showed disrupted basement membrane and tubular epithelium (D). FA + BPA-treated rats (E) exhibited normal seminiferous tubules with germ cells.

BPA oral administration but Kazemi *et al*[52] reported a decrease in ALP level after oral administration of lower doses (5, 25, and 125 μg/kg) of BPA, and these observations are in parallel to our result. Also, Akçay *et al*[58] found that BPA is a reason of liver steatosis, which leads to the formation of metabolic syndrome. Further, Elswefy *et al*[59] found that BPA induced hepatic damage and fibrosis. On the contrary, the oral administration of FA in the BPA-treated group returned all the above mentioned liver function to approach the control levels and this effect was related to the ability of FA to protect the liver against the harmful effects of BPA. Such results are in agreement of that of Koriem and Arbid[16] who

proved that FA at a dose of 45 mg/kg ameliorated liver function, antioxidants, and inflammatory cytokines in the endocrine-disrupting chemical 4-tert-octylphenol-induced toxicity. The authors proved that FA ameliorated serum AST, ALT, γ-GT, LDH, ALP, ACP, and bilirubin. Also, Sochorova *et al*[20] found that FA had antioxidant activity, and it therefore quenched BPA-related oxidative stress and increased the antioxidant effect of the cells to fight against the harmful effects of BPA.

The kidney excretes many of waste products produced by metabolism into the urine. These include the nitrogenous wastes urea (from protein catabolism) and uric acid (from nucleic acid metabolism). The kidney participates in human homeostasis, regulating acid-base balance, electrolyte concentrations, extracellular fluid volume, and blood pressure. Therefore, any clinical and diagnostic changes are associated with the changes in kidney function (serum urea, creatinine, and uric acid) as mentioned by Martin and Friedman [55] and Plaa and Hewitt [56]. Thus, the increase in kidney function parameters (serum urea, creatinine, uric acid, and blood urea nitrogen) levels and the decrease in serum electrolytes (sodium, potassium, and chloride) levels in BPA-treated rats suggested an indication of kidney toxicity caused by BPA exposure. Such observation is in accordance with Jiang *et al*[60] who found that BPA induced kidney toxicity in rats after 5 wk of treatment. Also, Esplugas *et al*[61] found that BPA (25 μg/kg bw) caused renal and liver damage evidenced by oxidative stress in mice. Furthermore, Ola-Davies and Olukole[62] found that oral administration of BPA at 10 mg/kg for 14 d in male rats increased renal reactive oxygen species and declined the antioxidant system. BPA induced significant increases in serum urea and creatinine in BPA-treated rats. Lesions of the kidney including inflammation, vascular congestion, and erosion of epithelial cells were also observed in BPA-treated rats.

BPA-exposed rats revealed renal dysfunction and histopathological abnormalities, oxidative stress, apoptosis, mitochondrial functional impairment, mitochondrial dynamic changes, and mitophagy disproportion. Sodium, chloride, and potassium are electrolytes that work together to regulate nutrients within the cells and regulate body fluids. Potassium is the main electrolyte in the fluid inside of cells, while sodium is the principal electrolyte in the fluid outside of cells. Chloride is an electrolyte that is important in keeping the suitable amount of fluids inside and outside the cells. The drastic decline of serum sodium, potassium, and chloride electrolytes after BPA exposure in this research was related to BPA exposure-stimulated accumulation of more sodium in the small intestine in male rats[63], which in turn decreased serum sodium and consequently both serum potassium and chloride decreased to keep sodium/potassium pump in normal state and to sustain body homeostasis of electrolytes. On the contrary, the decline in the levels of kidney function parameters and the increase in serum electrolytes in the FA + BPA-treated group indicated the ability of FA to protect the kidney against the harmful effect of BPA. Such observation is in accordance with that of Koriem and Arbid[16] who proved that FA at a dose of 45 mg/kg ameliorated serum and liver antioxidants such as serum and hepatic superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, and catalase. Also, Sochorova *et al*[20] found that FA had antioxidant activity and therefore quenched BPA-related oxidative stress and increased the antioxidant effect of the cells to fight against BPA-related oxidative stress.

The testis is a male reproductive organ. The function of the testis is to produce both sperm and androgens (Ts). Testosterone is controlled by LH but sperm production is controlled both by and Ts. The testis is well known to be very sensitive to injury, especially from endocrine disturbing chemicals such as BPA. These are because endocrine disturbing chemicals such as BPA can affect the size and function of the testis. The oral administration of BPA in this study caused a decrease in serum Ts, DHEA-S, G6PD, 3βHSD, and protein levels but an increase in serum LH, , SHBG, and cholesterol levels. The decrease of Ts is attributed to: (1) The inhibitory effect of BPA on human chronic gonadotropin-stimulated Ts biosynthesis by both cultured rat precursor and immature Leydig cells[64]; or (2) the ability of BPA to convert cholesterol to androstenedione through inhibiting 17-α-hydroxylase and 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase-isomerase steps[65]. The decrease of 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase activity in this study was accompanied with an increase LH and levels in BPA-treated rats. The increase in LH and levels following BPA exposure is related to: (1) LH-induced Leydig cell secretion of Ts (which participated in the regulation of spermatogenesis by targeting androgen receptors in the germinal epithelium); and (2) targeting of receptors inside Sertoli cell to control spermatogenesis by stimulating many Sertoli cell factors. The decrease of testicular cholesterol and protein in this study was linked to testicular dysfunction. On the contrary, FA oral administration in BPA-treated rats increased the number of Leydig cells, ameliorated Ts levels, and consequently restored testicular function[66]. Such observations are in agreement with that of Koriem and Arbid[16] who proved that FA at a dose of 45 mg/kg ameliorated serum and liver antioxidants as well as inflammatory cytokines in endocrine disturbing chemical-exposed rats. Also, Sochorova *et al*[20] found that FA had antioxidant activity and therefore quenched BPA-related oxidative stress and increased the antioxidant effect of the cells to protect against the harmful effects of BPA.

In this study, content in the liver, kidney, and testis was determined in BPA-treated rats and FA + BPA-treated rats. BPA caused a very high increase in breakdown in these organs. Such observation is in agreement with that of Akram *et al*[67] who found that BPA increased damage in liver, kidney, and brain tissues. The very low concentrations of BPA caused toxic effects *via* affecting the physiological and biochemical parameters in multiple tissues of fish. Also, Panpatil *et al*[68] found that the BPA-treated groups exhibited significantly higher mean levels of damage in the liver and kidney as compared to the untreated control group. Furthermore, Pan *et al*[69] found that BPA declined sperm chromatin integrity

while increased damage in mouse spermatogenic cells. On the contrary, the oral administration of FA in BPA-treated rats resulted in the return of the content in liver, kidney, and testis tissues to the normal diploid level. These observations were recorded due to the antioxidant activity of FA. These results are in accordance with those of Koriem and Arbid[16] and Sochorova *et al*[20] who found that FA had antioxidant activity, which increased the antioxidant activity in the liver, kidney, and testis of BPA-treated rats. These results are in agreement with that of Koriem and Arbid[16] who proved that FA at a dose of 45 mg/kg counteracted the inhibitory action on the gene expression of liver proteins induced by the endocrine-disrupting chemical 4-tert-octylphenol, where FA prevented the degradation of liver , and consequently reformation occurred. Also, Sochorova *et al*[20] found that FA had antioxidant activity and therefore quenched BPA-related oxidative stress and increased the antioxidant effect of the cells to protect against the harmful effects of BPA.

The mechanism sustaining the protective effect of FA against BPA-induced liver, kidney, and testis-related toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes depends on the antioxidant effect of FA. Therefore, FA increases serum and tissue superoxide dismutase, glutathione peroxidase, and catalase in BPA-treated rats. This will stop the BPA-related side effects such as liver, kidney, and testicular toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes [16,20].

The implication of the results of this research to the human population is that daily oral administration of FA protects against the harmful effect of low-dose exposure to BPA. The significant impact of this research is that FA is available, very cheap, and without any side effects to protect against the toxicity related to daily exposure of babies, children, young, and elderly people to BPA. The FA dose used in this research is very useful to babies, children, and elderly people because these human groups are very susceptible to lower doses of BPA caused by daily exposure to cumulative amounts of BPA doses through foods, drinks, and inhalation.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, this study proved that FA can be used as a protective agent in ameliorating the BPA-induced toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathology of the liver, kidney, and testis, which suggests the use of this acid in preventing the toxicity of BPA that is present in plastic industry such as water bottles and food packages.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Bisphenol A (BPA) is present in many plastic products and food packaging. On the other hand, fertaric acid (FA) is a hydroxycinnamic acid.

Research motivation

It is a challenging responsibility to find a safe and effective way to overcome the toxicity of BPA toxicity in regions where BPA is already present in water bottles and food packaging and people are therefore exposed to BPA toxicity day and night. The use of herbal plants in the medicine has been known for a long time ago and today it has made a comeback in all over the world. This is because of their minor side effects and good therapeutic effects.

Research objectives

To investigate the effect of FA on BPA-related liver, kidney, and testis toxicity, DNA breakdown, and histopathological changes in male rats.

Research methods

Thirty male albino rats were divided into five equal groups (6 rats/group); Control, paraffin oil, FA-, BPA-, and FA + BPA-treated groups. The control and paraffin oil groups were administered orally with 1 mL distilled water and 1 mL paraffin oil, respectively. The FA-, BPA-, and FA+ BPA-treated groups were administered orally with FA (45 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL distilled water, BPA (4 mg/kg, bw) dissolved in 1 mL paraffin oil, and FA (45 mg/kg, bw) followed by BPA (4 mg/kg, bw), respectively. All these treatments were given once a day for 6 wk.

Research results

The results showed that BPA induced a significant decrease in serum alkaline phosphatase, acid phosphatase, sodium, potassium and chloride, testosterone, dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, and testis protein levels but a highly significant increase in serum aspartate aminotransferase, alanine aminotransferase, γ-glutamyl

transpeptidase, lactate dehydrogenase, bilirubin, urea, creatinine, uric acid, luteinizing hormone, follicle stimulating hormone, sex hormone binding globulin, blood urea nitrogen, and testis cholesterol levels. Also, FA inhibited the degradation of liver, kidney, and testis DNA content. Oral administration of FA to BPA-treated rats restored all the above parameters to normal levels.

Research conclusions

This study for the first time proposed that FA can amend the bisphenol A-induced toxicity, DNA content, and histopathological changes in the liver, kidney, and testis.

Research perspectives

The direction of the future research is to apply FA in clinical study and it will be interesting to prove that FA can amend the BPA-induced toxicity clinically.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Koriem KMM designed the study, conceived of the manuscript, wrote and edited the first and final versions of the manuscript, conducted the literature search, and read and approved the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of the National Research Centre (NRC), Giza, Egypt (Approval No. 21831).

Institutional animal care and use committee statement: All procedures involving animals were reviewed and approved by the Institutional Animal Care and Use Committee of the National Research Centre (NRC), Giza, Egypt (Approval No. 21831).

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors declare that there are no conflict of interest to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

ARRIVE guidelines statement: The authors have read the ARRIVE Guidelines, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the ARRIVE Guidelines.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement-checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement-checklist of items.

CONSORT 2010 statement: The authors have read the CONSORT 2010 statement, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the CONSORT 2010 statement.

Country/Territory of origin: Egypt

ORCID number: Khaled Mohamed Mohamed Koriem 0000-0002-1323-1700.

S-Editor: Wang LL
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Wang LL

REFERENCES

1 **Rocha MJ**, Cruzeiro C, Reis M, Pardal MÂ, Rocha E. Pollution by oestrogenic endocrine disruptors and β-sitosterol in a south-western European river (Mira, Portugal). *Environ Monit Assess* 2016; **188**: 240 [PMID: 27004433 DOI: 10.1007/s10661-016-5236-0]

2 **Kechagias K**, Anastasaki P, Kyriakidou M, Dedi KD. Bisphenol A in Dentistry. *Eur J Prosthodont Restor Dent* 2020; **28**: 3-9 [PMID: 32036634 DOI: 10.1922/EJPRD_01950Kechagias07]

3 **Abraham A**, Chakraborty P. A review on sources and health impacts of bisphenol A. *Rev Environ Health* 2020; **35**: 201-210 [PMID: 31743105 DOI: 10.1515/reveh-2019-0034]

4 **Fiege H**, Voges HW, Hamamoto T, Umemura S, Iwata T, Miki H, Fujita Y, Buysch HJ, Garbe D, Paulus W. Phenol Derivatives, In Ullmann's Encyclopedia of Industrial Chemistry. Weinheim: Wiley-VCH, 2000 [DOI: 10.1002/14356007.a19_313]

5 **Experts demand European action on plastics chemical**. Reuters, 2010
6 **Le Corre L**, Besnard P, Chagnon MC. BPA, an energy balance disruptor. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* 2015; **55**: 769-777 [PMID: 24915348 DOI: 10.1080/10408398.2012.678421]
7 **Corrales J**, Kristofco LA, Steele WB, Yates BS, Breed CS, Williams ES, Brooks BW. Global Assessment of Bisphenol A in the Environment: Review and Analysis of Its Occurrence and Bioaccumulation. *Dose Response* 2015; **13**: 1559325815598308 [PMID: 26674671 DOI: 10.1177/1559325815598308]
8 **Bisphenol A Action Plan**. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Retrieved, 2010
9 **Wehbe Z**, Nasser SA, El-Yazbi A, Nasreddine S, Eid AH. Estrogen and Bisphenol A in Hypertension. *Curr Hypertens Rep* 2020; **22**: 23 [PMID: 32114652 DOI: 10.1007/s11906-020-1022-z]
10 **Shi R**, Liu Z, Liu T. The antagonistic effect of bisphenol A and nonylphenol on liver and kidney injury in rats. *Immunopharmacol Immunotoxicol* 2021; **43**: 527-535 [PMID: 34282716 DOI: 10.1080/08923973.2021.1950179]
11 **Liu X**, Wang Z, Liu F. Chronic exposure of BPA impairs male germ cell proliferation and induces lower sperm quality in male mice. *Chemosphere* 2021; **262**: 127880 [PMID: 32777607 DOI: 10.1016/j.chemosphere.2020.127880]
12 **Integrated Risk Information System**. Bisphenol A. United States Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, National Center for Environmental Assessment. Washington DC, United States. [cited 13 August 2021]. Available from: http://www.epa.gov/iris/subst/0356.htm
13 **Kamrin MA**. Bisphenol A: a scientific evaluation. *MedGenMed* 2004; **6**: 7 [PMID: 15520629]
14 **Mozetic B**, Tomažic I, Škvarc A, Trebse P. Determination of Polyphenols in white grape berries cv. Rebula. *Acta Chim Slov* 2006; **53**: 58-64
15 **Maier T**, Sanzenbacher S, Kammerer DR, Berardini N, Conrad J, Beifuss U, Carle R, Schieber A. Isolation of hydroxycinnamoyltartaric acids from grape pomace by high-speed counter-current chromatography. *J Chromatogr A* 2006; **1128**: 61-67 [PMID: 16860334 DOI: 10.1016/j.chroma.2006.06.082]
16 **Koriem KMM**, Arbid MSS. Fertaric Acid Protects from Octylphenol-Related Hepatotoxicity in Rats: Biochemical, Molecular, and Histopathological Studies. *J Diet Suppl* 2019; **16**: 152-165 [PMID: 29561242 DOI: 10.1080/19390211.2018.1443190]
17 **Wetchakul P**, Goon JA, Adekoya AE, Olatunji OJ, Ruangchuay S, Jaisamut P, Issuriya A, Kunworarath N, Limsuwan S, Chusri S. Traditional tonifying polyherbal infusion, Jatu-Phala-Tiga, exerts antioxidant activities and extends lifespan of Caenorhabditis elegans. *BMC Complement Altern Med* 2019; **19**: 209 [PMID: 31409340 DOI: 10.1186/s12906-019-2626-1]
18 **Lukić I**, Radeka S, Budić-Leto I, Bubola M, Vrhovsek U. Targeted UPLC-QqQ-MS/MS profiling of phenolic compounds for differentiation of monovarietal wines and corroboration of particular varietal typicity concepts. *Food Chem* 2019; **300**: 125251 [PMID: 31357018 DOI: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2019.125251]
19 **Abdallah H**, Farag M, Osman S, Kim DH, Kang K, Pan CH, Abdel-Sattar E. Isolation of major phenolics from Launaea spinosa and their protective effect on HepG2 cells damaged with t-BHP. *Pharm Biol* 2016; **54**: 536-541 [PMID: 26052623 DOI: 10.3109/13880209.2015.1052885]
20 **Sochorova L**, Prusova B, Jurikova T, Mlcek J, Adamkova A, Baron M, Sochor J. The Study of Antioxidant Components in Grape Seeds. *Molecules* 2020; **25** [PMID: 32824270 DOI: 10.3390/molecules25163736]
21 **Chen Z**, Li T, Zhang L, Wang H, Hu F. Bisphenol A exposure remodels cognition of male rats attributable to excitatory alterations in the hippocampus and visual cortex. *Toxicology* 2018; **410**: 132-141 [PMID: 30312744 DOI: 10.1016/j.tox.2018.10.002]
22 **Pant J**, Deshpande SB. Acute toxicity of bisphenol A in rats. *Indian J Exp Biol* 2012; **50**: 425-429 [PMID: 22734254]
23 **Koriem KM**, Gad IB, Nasiry ZK. Protective effect of Cupressus sempervirens extract against indomethacin-induced gastric ulcer in rats. *Interdiscip Toxicol* 2015; **8**: 25-34 [PMID: 27486357 DOI: 10.1515/intox-2015-0006]
24 **Koriem KMM**, Arbid MS, El-Attar MA. Acute and subacute toxicity of *Ammi visnaga* on rats. *Interdiscip Toxicol* 2019; **12**: 26-35 [PMID: 32189984 DOI: 10.2478/intox-2019-0004]
25 **Kau ST**, Keddie JR, Andrews D. A method for screening diuretic agents in the rat. *J Pharmacol Methods* 1984; **11**: 67-75 [PMID: 6717030 DOI: 10.1016/0160-5402(84)90054-8]
26 **Reitman S**, Frankel S. A colorimetric method for the determination of serum GOT and GPT. *Am J Clin Pathol* 1987; **28**: 56-63
27 **KIND PR**, KING EJ. Estimation of plasma phosphatase by determination of hydrolysed phenol with amino-antipyrine. *J Clin Pathol* 1954; **7**: 322-326 [PMID: 13286357 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.7.4.322]
28 **Szasz G**. Reaction-rate method for gamma-glutamyltransferase activity in serum. *Clin Chem* 1976; **22**: 2051-2055
29 **Weisshaar D**, Gossrau E, Faderl B. Normal ranges of alpha-HBDH, LDH, AP, and LAP as measured with substrate-optimated test charges. *Med Welt* 1975; **26**: 387-392 [PMID: 1121268]
30 **Walter M**, Gerarde H. Ultramicromethod for the determination of conjugated and total bilirubin in serum or plasma. *Microchem J* 1970; **15**: 231-236
31 **Patton CJ**, Crouch SR. Spectrophotometric and kinetic investigation of the Berthelot reaction for the determination of ammonia. *Ana Chem* 1977; **49**: 464-469
32 **Houot O**. Interpretation of clinical laboratory tests. Edited by Siest G, Henny J, Schiele F, Young DS. Biomedical Publications, 1985: 220-234
33 **Kabasakalian P**, Kalliney S, Westcott A. Determination of uric acid in serum, with use of uricase and a tribromophenol-aminoantipyrine chromogen. *Clin Chem* 1973; **19**: 522-524 [PMID: 4703662]
34 **Zhu X**, Li W, Li H. miR-214 ameliorates acute kidney injury *via* targeting DKK3 and activating of Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway. *Biol Res* 2018; **51**: 31 [PMID: 30180910 DOI: 10.1186/s40659-018-0179-2]
35 **Jooste PL**, Strydom E. Methods for determination of iodine in urine and salt. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **24**: 77-88 [PMID: 20172472 DOI: 10.1016/j.beem.2009.08.006]
36 **Wang L**, Liu X, Hu X, Song S, Fan C. Unmodified gold nanoparticles as a colorimetric probe for potassium DNA aptamers. *Chem Commun (Camb)* 2006; 3780-3782 [PMID: 16969455 DOI: 10.1039/b607448k]

37 **Hassan WS**, El-Henawee MM, Gouda AA. Spectrophotometric determination of some histamine H1-antagonists drugs in their pharmaceutical preparations. *Spectrochim Acta A Mol Biomol Spectrosc* 2008; **69**: 245-255 [PMID: 17553739 DOI: 10.1016/j.saa.2007.03.040]

38 **Gornall AG**, Bardawill CJ, David MM. Determination of serum proteins by means of the biuret reaction. *J Biol Chem* 1949; **177**: 751-766 [PMID: 18110453]

39 **Drupt F**, Paris M, Frydman A, Leclerc M. Serum albumin assay by bromocresol green method: application to different automatic apparatus. *Ann Pharm Fr* 1974; **32**: 249-256 [PMID: 4433126]

40 **Maruyama Y**, Aoki N, Suzuki Y, Ohno Y, Imamura M, Saika T, Sinohara H, Yamamoto T. Sex-steroid-binding plasma protein (SBP), testosterone, oestradiol and dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) in prepuberty and puberty. *Acta Endocrinol (Copenh)* 1987; **114**: 60-67 [PMID: 2949473 DOI: 10.1530/acta.0.1140060]

41 **Knobil E**. The neuroendocrine control of the menstrual cycle. *Recent Prog Horm Res* 1980; **36**: 53-88 [PMID: 6774388 DOI: 10.1016/b978-0-12-571136-4.50008-5]

42 **Odell WD**, Parlow AF, Cargille CM, Ross GT. Radioimmunoassay for human follicle-stimulating hormone: physiological studies. *J Clin Invest* 1968; **47**: 2551-2562 [PMID: 5725274 DOI: 10.1172/JCI105937]

43 **de Peretti E**, Forest MG. Pattern of plasma dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate levels in humans from birth to adulthood: evidence for testicular production. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1978; **47**: 572-577 [PMID: 162515 DOI: 10.1210/jcem-47-3-572]

44 **Selby C**. Sex hormone binding globulin: origin, function and clinical significance. *Ann Clin Biochem* 1990; **27** (Pt 6): 532-541 [PMID: 2080856 DOI: 10.1177/000456329002700603]

45 **Chan TK**, Todd D, Wong CC. Tissue enzyme levels in erythrocyte glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. *J Lab Clin Med* 1965; **66**: 937-942 [PMID: 5848024]

46 **Talalay P**. Hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase. In: S.P. Cloowick, N.O. Kaplan, editors. Methods in enzymology. New York (NY): Academic Press, 1962: 512-516

47 **Kim E**, Goldberg M. Serum cholesterol assay using a stable Liebermann-Burchard reagent. *Clin Chem* 1969; **15**: 1171-1179 [PMID: 5392958]

48 **Danque PO**, Chen HB, Patil J, Jagirdar J, Orsatti G, Paronetto F. Image analysis *vs* flow cytometry for DNA ploidy quantitation of solid tumors: a comparison of six methods of sample preparation. *Mod Pathol* 1993; **6**: 270-275 [PMID: 8346174]

49 **Darzynkiewicz Z**, Huang X, Zhao H. Analysis of Cellular DNA Content by Flow Cytometry. *Curr Protoc Immunol* 2017; **119**: 5.7.1-5.7.20 [PMID: 29091264 DOI: 10.1002/cpim.36]

50 **Darzynkiewicz Z**, Huang X, Zhao H. Analysis of Cellular DNA Content by Flow Cytometry. *Curr Protoc Cytom* 2017; **82**: 7.5.1-7.5.20 [PMID: 28967991 DOI: 10.1002/cpcy.28]

51 **El-Gamal EM**, Gouida MS. Flow cytometric study of cell cycle and DNA ploidy in bilharzial bladder cancer. *Clin Lab* 2015; **61**: 211-218 [PMID: 25974985 DOI: 10.7754/clin.lab.2014.140609]

52 **Kazemi S**, Mousavi Kani SN, Rezazadeh L, Pouramir M, Ghasemi-Kasman M, Moghadamnia AA. Low dose administration of Bisphenol A induces liver toxicity in adult rats. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2017; **494**: 107-112 [PMID: 29050942 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2017.10.074]

53 **El Hilaly J**, Israili ZH, Lyoussi B. Acute and chronic toxicological studies of Ajuga iva in experimental animals. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2004; **91**: 43-50 [PMID: 15036466 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2003.11.009]

54 **Rahman MF**, Siddiqui MK, Jamil K. Effects of Vepacide (Azadirachta indica) on aspartate and alanine aminotransferase profiles in a subchronic study with rats. *Hum Exp Toxicol* 2001; **20**: 243-249 [PMID: 11476156 DOI: 10.1191/096032701678227730]

55 **Martin P**, Friedman LS. In: Friedmann LS, Kaffee EB. Handbook of liver disease. Philadelphia: Churchill Livingstone, 1988: 1-14

56 **Plaa GL**, Hewitt WR. In: Hayes WA. Principles and methods of toxicology, 2nd edition. NewYork (NY): Raven Press, 1989: 599-605

57 **Sun Y**, Wang X, Zhou Y, Zhang J, Cui W, Wang E, Du J, Wei B, Xu X. Protective effect of metformin on BPA-induced liver toxicity in rats through upregulation of cystathionine β synthase and cystathionine γ lyase expression. *Sci Total Environ* 2021; **750**: 141685 [PMID: 32862004 DOI: 10.1016/j.scitotenv.2020.141685]

58 **Akçay NC**, Ömeroğlu S, Dizakar SÖA, Kavutçu M, Türkoğlu İ, Eşmekaya MA, Peker TV. The effects of melatonin on possible damage that will occur on adipocytokines and liver tissue by coadministration of fructose and bisphenol a (BPA). *Environ Sci Pollut Res Int* 2020; **27**: 16231-16245 [PMID: 32124283 DOI: 10.1007/s11356-020-08041-7]

59 **Elswefy SE**, Abdallah FR, Wahba AS, Hasan RA, Atteia HH. Antifibrotic effect of curcumin, N-acetyl cysteine and propolis extract against bisphenol A-induced hepatotoxicity in rats: Prophylaxis *vs* co-treatment. *Life Sci* 2020; **260**: 118245 [PMID: 32791144 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2020.118245]

60 **Jiang W**, Zhao H, Zhang L, Wu B, Zha Z. Maintenance of mitochondrial function by astaxanthin protects against bisphenol A-induced kidney toxicity in rats. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2020; **121**: 109629 [PMID: 31733573 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2019.109629]

61 **Esplugas R**, LLovet MI, Bellés M, Serra N, Vallvé JC, Domingo JL, Linares V. Renal and hepatic effects following neonatal exposure to low doses of Bisphenol-A and ^{137}Cs. *Food Chem Toxicol* 2018; **114**: 270-277 [PMID: 29477810 DOI: 10.1016/j.fct.2018.02.046]

62 **Ola-Davies OE**, Olukole SG. Gallic acid protects against bisphenol A-induced alterations in the cardio-renal system of Wistar rats through the antioxidant defense mechanism. *Biomed Pharmacother* 2018; **107**: 1786-1794 [PMID: 30257398 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopha.2018.08.108]

63 **Ambreen S**, Akhtar T, Hameed N, Ashfaq I, Sheikh N. In Vivo Evaluation of Histopathological Alterations and Trace Metals Estimation of the Small Intestine in Bisphenol A-Intoxicated Rats. *Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **2019**: 9292316 [PMID: 31886155 DOI: 10.1155/2019/9292316]

64 **Pasqualotto FF**, Locambo CV, Athayde KS, Arap S. Measuring male infertility: epidemiological aspects. *Rev Hosp Clin Fac Med Sao Paulo* 2003; **58**: 173-178 [PMID: 12894315 DOI: 10.1590/s0041-87812003000300008]

65 **Saradha B**, Mathur PP. Effect of environmental contaminants on male reproduction. *Environ Toxicol Pharmacol* 2006; **21**: 34-41 [PMID: 21783636 DOI: 10.1016/j.etap.2005.06.004]

66 **Guyton AC**, Hall JE. Reproductive and hormonal functions of the male (and the pineal gland). In: Text book of medical physiology, 9th edition, 1998: 1003-1016

67 **Akram R**, Iqbal R, Hussain R, Jabeen F, Ali M. Evaluation of Oxidative stress, antioxidant enzymes and genotoxic potential of bisphenol A in fresh water bighead carp (Aristichthys nobils) fish at low concentrations. *Environ Pollut* 2021; **268**: 115896 [PMID: 33187850 DOI: 10.1016/j.envpol.2020.115896]

68 **Panpatil VV**, Kumari D, Chatterjee A, Kumar S, Bhaskar V, Polasa K, Ghosh S. Protective Effect of Turmeric against Bisphenol-A Induced Genotoxicity in Rats. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* 2020; **66**: S336-S342 [PMID: 33612621 DOI: 10.3177/jnsv.66.S336]

69 **Pan D**, Feng D, Ding H, Zheng X, Ma Z, Yang B, Xie M. Effects of bisphenol A exposure on DNA integrity and protamination of mouse spermatozoa. *Andrology* 2020; **8**: 486-496 [PMID: 31489793 DOI: 10.1111/andr.12694]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 551-558

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.551

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Case Control Study

Prevalence of hypothyroidism and effect of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A population-based study

Ashraf Almomani, Asif Ali Hitawala, Prabhat Kumar, Sura Alqaisi, Dana Alshaikh, Motasem Alkhayyat, Imad Asaad

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Li H, China; Pham TTT, Viet Nam

Received: August 16, 2021
Peer-review started: August 16, 2021
First decision: November 11, 2021
Revised: November 13, 2021
Accepted: February 24, 2022
Article in press: February 24, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Ashraf Almomani, Prabhat Kumar, Sura Alqaisi, Motasem Alkhayyat, Department ofInternal Medicine, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH 44111, United States

Asif Ali Hitawala, Liver Disease Branch, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases/National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD 20892, United States

Dana Alshaikh, Mutah University, Amman 00962, Jordan

Imad Asaad, Department of Digestive Disease and Surgery Institute, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States

Corresponding author: Imad Asaad, MD, Staff Physician, Department of Digestive Disease and Surgery Institute, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, 9500 Euclid Ave, Cleveland, OH 44195, United States. asaadi@ccf.org

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is currently considered as the most common cause of chronic liver disease worldwide. Risk factors for NAFLD have been well-described, including obesity, type 2 diabetes mellites (T2DM), dyslipidemia (DLP) and metabolic syndrome. Hypothyroidism has been identified as an independent risk factor for the development of NAFLD, although the literature is inconsistent

AIM

To evaluate the prevalence of hypothyroidism in patients with NAFLD, assess if it is an independent risk factor and explore the effect of thyroxine replacement therapy.

METHODS

Our cohort's data was obtained using a validated, large, multicenter database (Explorys Inc, Cleveland, OH, United States) aggregated from pooled outpatient and inpatient records of 26 different healthcare systems, consisting of a total of 360 hospitals in the United States, and utilizing Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine-Clinical Terms for coding. We evaluated a cohort of patients with

hypothyroidism and NAFLD. Multivariate analysis was performed to adjust for confounding risk factors including hypertension (HTN), T2DM, DLP, obesity and metabolic syndrome. SPSS version 25, IBM Corp was used for statistical analysis, and for all analyses, a 2-sided *P* value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant. Exclusion criteria were limited to age < 18 years.

RESULTS

Among the 37648180 included individuals in this database who are above the age of 18 years, there were a total of 2320 patients with NAFLD (6.16 per 100000) in the last five years (2015-2020), amongst which 520 patients (22.4%) had hypothyroidism. Baseline characteristics of patients in this database are described in Table 1. Patients with NAFLD were also more likely to have obesity, T2DM, DLP, HTN, and metabolic syndrome (Table 2). While males and females were equally affected, patients in the age group 18-65 years as well as Caucasians seem to be at a higher risk. There was an increased risk of NAFLD among patients with hypothyroidism (OR = 1.587). Furthermore, thyroid hormone replacement was not associated with a decreased risk for developing NAFLD (OR = 1.106, C = 0.952-1.285, *P* = 0.303).

CONCLUSION

Hypothyroidism seems to be an independent risk factor for the development of NAFLD. Thyroid hormone replacement did not provide a statistically significant risk reduction. Further studies are needed to evaluate the effect of thyroid hormone replacement and assess if being euthyroid while on thyroid replacement therapy affects development and/or progression of NAFLD.

Key Words: Hypothyroidism; Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease; Thyroid hormone replacement therapy; Independent risk factor

Core Tip: One of the largest population-based case-control studies screening more than 37 million patients to study the inconsistent relationship between hypothyroidism and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), and -to the best of our knowledge- the first paper investigating the theoretical role of thyroid hormone replacement in preventing NAFLD among hypothyroidism patients.

Citation: Almomani A, Hitawala AA, Kumar P, Alqaisi S, Alshaikh D, Alkhayyat M, Asaad I. Prevalence of hypothyroidism and effect of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A population-based study. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 551-558
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/551.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.551

INTRODUCTION

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is currently considered as the most common cause of chronic liver disease worldwide and the second most common indication for liver transplantation in the United States after chronic hepatitis C with a histological disease spectrum ranging from steatosis to non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH) and eventually cirrhosis. Its international prevalence is steadily increasing (15% in 2005 to 25% in 2010), and it is expected to emerge as the leading cause of end-stage liver disease in the near future[1]. Several genetic and environmental risk factors for NAFLD have been described in the literature, including obesity, unhealthy eating habits, low physical activity levels, type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), dyslipidemia (DLP), hypertension (HTN) and metabolic syndrome[1-3].

Thyroid hormone plays a major role in regulating the metabolism of lipids and carbohydrates which are affected in patients with NAFLD. Furthermore, hypothyroidism in particular shares similar risk factors to those of NAFLD including insulin resistance, DLP, obesity and metabolic syndrome[4,5]. Liangpunsakul *et al*[4] was the first to describe the potential relationship between hypothyroidism and NAFLD, and found a significantly higher hypothyroidism prevalence among patients with NAFLD. This association was further replicated in later retrospective studies[5]. However, these studies were limited by the smaller sample size and the inconsistency of the literature to some degree. Our aim is to conduct a population-based study to estimate the prevalence of hypothyroidism in patients with NAFLD, and statistically adjust for all known confounders to assess whether hypothyroidism is an independent risk factor for NAFLD, and to further assess the effect of thyroid hormone replacement therapy.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Database

Our cohort's data was obtained using a validated, multicentered and daily-updated database (Explorys Inc, Cleveland, OH, United States) developed by IBM Corporation, Watson Health[6]. Explorys consists of electronic health records of 26 different healthcare systems across the United States and a total of 360 hospitals with more than 50 million patients. Explorys utilizes Systematized Nomenclature of Medicine Clinical Terms (SNOMED-CT) for the definition of the diseases and pools large outpatient and inpatient daintified data that can be formulated into numerous cohorts according to the clinical element being studied. Explorys further allows for the identification of the timeline of events in reference to the index clinical event of interest, and hence the ability to study the temporal relationship between different variables. The Institutional Review Board approval is not required since Explorys is a Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act-compliant platform.

Methodology and patient selection

We retrospectively evaluated an initial cohort of patients with a SNOMED-CT of "Hypothyroidism" between the years 2015 to 2020. Our exclusion criteria were limited to patients less than 18 years old. Baseline characteristics of patients with hypothyroidism are shown in Table 1. A second cohort of patients with a SNOMED-CT of "Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver" was identified. Age, gender and race-based data were collected. Potential confounders that were analyzed included: hypothyroidism, HTN, T2DM, DLP, obesity and metabolic syndrome. Among those with hypothyroidism, weather the patient was on thyroxine replacement therapy was also analyzed.

Statistical analysis

Demographics and related diseases were characterized by descriptive statistics. The overall prevalence of NAFLD was calculated by dividing the total number of individuals with NAFLD by the total number of individuals in the database (2015-2020), hence making sure that all patients in the denominator had an equal opportunity of being diagnosed with NAFLD. Multivariate analysis was performed to adjust for the confounders in the later cohort (Table 2). SPSS version 25, IBM Corp was used for statistical analysis, and for all analyses, a 2-sided P value of < 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

Baseline characteristics of patients in this database are described in Table 1. Among the 37648180 included individuals in this database who are above the age of 18 years, there were a total of 2320 patients with NAFLD in the period from 2015 to 2020. The 5-year period prevalence rate of NAFLD was 6.16 per 100000. Amongst those with NAFLD, 520 patients (22.4%) had hypothyroidism. Patients with NAFLD were also more likely to have obesity (OR, 3.616, 95%CI: 3.318-3.940), type 2 diabetes mellitus (OR, 2.178, 95%CI: 1.994-2.379), dyslipidemia (OR, 2.346, 95%CI: 2.121-2.596), hypertension (OR, 1.326, 95%CI: 1.201-1.465), and metabolic syndrome (OR, 4.782, 95%CI: 4.782-5.460) (Table 2). Males (OR, 1.008, 95%CI: 0.934-1.088) and females were equally affected, but the results were statistically insignificant. Patients in the age group 18-65 years (OR, 1.658, 95%CI: 1.524-1.804) as well as Caucasians (OR, 1.63, 95%CI: 1.489-1.799) seem to be at a higher risk. There was an increased risk of NAFLD among patients with hypothyroidism (OR, 1.587, 95%CI: 1.388-1.815). Furthermore, thyroid hormone replacement was not associated with a decreased risk for developing NAFLD (OR, 1.106, 95%CI: 0.952-1.285, $P = 0.303$). Characteristics of patients with NAFLD and hypothyroidism are shown in Figure 1.

DISCUSSION

Discussion and review of literature

Over the last couple of decades, NAFLD has emerged as one of the most common causes of chronic liver disease, including cryptogenic cirrhosis across the globe[7-9]. Risk stratification for NAFLD has become a focus of research because of the close relationship with different metabolic syndromes like T2DM, DLP, obesity, polycystic ovarian syndrome, and thyroid disorders. Albeit the overlap of complex metabolic pathophysiology of NAFLD and thyroid function remains controversial, many studies have suggested a strong association between the two[10-12].

The underlying pathophysiological mechanism of NAFLD has not been well explained. Still, the most commonly accepted theory implicates insulin resistance as the central role in developing hepatic steatosis and perhaps steatohepatitis[13,14]. Thyroid hormone has a vital role in cell metabolism and energy hemostasis. Thyroid dysfunction is associated with many diseases, for instance, cardiovascular disease, obesity, dementia, fracture, and recently NAFLD[15]. Thyroid hormones impact various metabolic pathways, and evidence corroborates the association of thyroid dysfunction and the

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of patients with hypothyroidism in explorys database

Parameter		Hypothyroidism	
		Present (%)	Absent (%)
Age (yr)	18-65	1335370 (48.3)	21097850 (60.5)
	> 65	1402550 (50.7)	6951210 (19.9)
Gender	Female	2087040 (75.5)	18562590 (53.2)
Race	Caucasian	2267940 (82.0)	20165960 (57.8)
	African-American	196720 (7.1)	4120940 (11.8)
	Asian	40710 (1.5)	539190 (1.5)
Comorbidities	HTN	1665090 (60.2)	7441760 (21.3)
	T2DM	790680 (28.6)	3114700 (8.9)
	Dyslipidemia	1716240 (62.1)	6469880 (18.5)
	Obesity	753060 (27.2)	3391060 (9.7)
	Metabolic syndrome	54440 (2.0)	2709750 (7.8)

HTN: Hypertension; T2DM: Type 2 diabetes mellites.

Table 2 Multivariate analysis for risk factors in individuals with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease

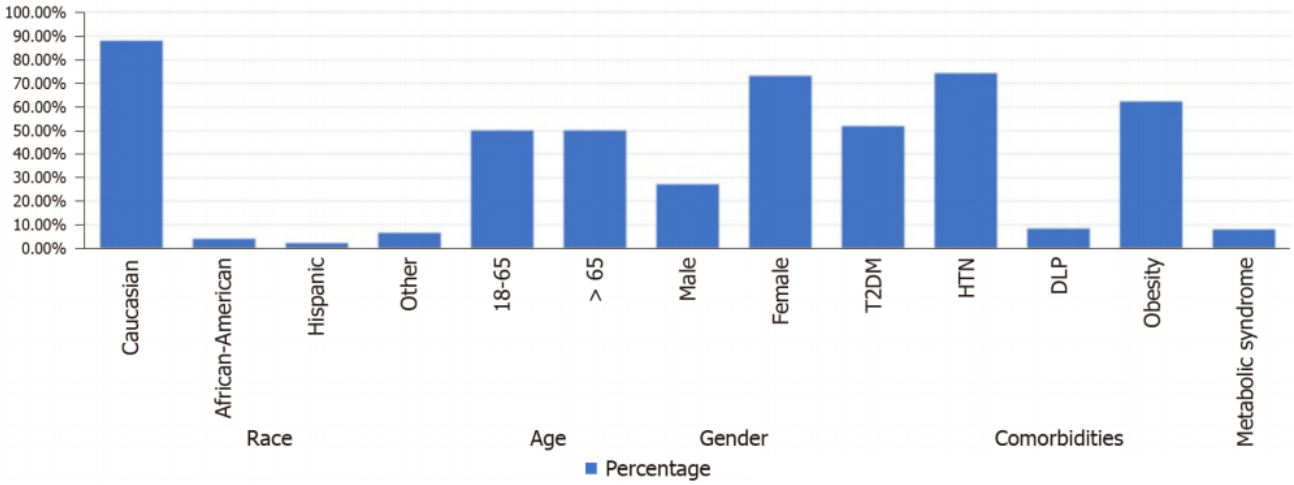
Parameter	Odds ratio	95%CI	*P* value
Age (18-65)	1.658	1.524-1.804	< 0.0001
Male	1.008	0.934-1.088	0.841
Caucasian	1.636	1.489-1.799	< 0.0001
Obesity	3.616	3.318-3.940	< 0.0001
T2DM	2.178	1.994-2.379	< 0.0001
Dyslipidemia	2.346	2.121-2.596	< 0.0001
Hypertension	1.326	1.201-1.465	< 0.0001
Metabolic syndrome	4.782	4.782-5.460	< 0.0001
Hypothyroidism	1.587	1.388-1.815	< 0.0001
Hypothyroidism on Thyroxine replacement therapy	1.106	0.952-1.285	0.188

T2DM: Type 2 diabetes mellites.

pathogenesis of NAFLD. The two most telltale signs of the NAFLD disease spectrum are insulin resistance and hepatic lipid dysregulation[16]. Thyroid hormones (T3 and T4) use intracellular receptor signaling pathways in the liver to induce lipid metabolism. Even though molecular pathways leading to insulin resistance are complex and have not been completely elucidated, the association between thyroid dysfunction, both overt and subclinical hypothyroidism, and NAFLD has been extensively reported.

For example, a population-based study by Chung *et al*[12] showed that the prevalence of NAFLD and elevated liver enzymes were higher in a patient with hypothyroidism (OR: 1.38; 95%CI: 1.17-1.62) and confirmed a relevant dose-dependent clinal relationship between NAFLD and thyroid hormones. Moreover, thyroid hormones level has been shown to exert an effect in all the spectrum of steatosis. For instance, the exciting case-control comparative study by Pagadala *et al*[5] for the prevalence of hypothyroidism in NAFLD and NASH showed that hypothyroidism was more common in patients with NASH than patients with NAFLD (25% *vs* 12.8%, $P = 0.03$).

Another study from the western region of India by Parikh *et al*[17] reported a prevalence of 16.8% hypothyroidism in NAFLD patients with a strong clinically significant association amongst two diseases (OR, 14.94, 95%CI: 3.5-62.6). Authors also concluded that steatohepatitis was found to be more common in hypothyroid individuals as compared to controls (OR 3.9, 95%CI: 1.2-11.1). Ludwig *et al*[18] did a



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.551

Figure 1 Characteristics of patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and hypothyroidism. HTN: Hypertension; T2DM: Type 2 diabetes mellitus; DLP: Dyslipidemia.

population-based cross-sectional study of 1276 participants which showed an increased prevalence of hepatic steatosis in subjects with reduced thyroid hormones ($P = 0.0143$; $P \leq 0.0001$).

Since hypothyroidism and NAFLD share numerous characteristics, including weight gain, whether hypothyroidism is a risk factor for NAFLD remains difficult to answer in retrospective studies (AA1). To provide stronger evidence of the causality relationship, Bano *et al*[19] conducted a prospective cohort study of 9419 patients followed over ten years and observed the effects of hypothyroidism in NAFLD patients, and found a 1.24-fold higher NAFLD risk (95%CI: 1.01-1.53) in patients with hypothyroidism. Another recent descriptive cross-sectional study by Martínez-Escudé *et al*[20] reported a significantly higher prevalence of NAFLD and liver fibrosis in subjects with TSH ≥ 2.5 (μIU/mL). Also, in a comparative study of 1773 euthyroid participants, both TSH and levels Free T3 Level were found to be positively associated with the risk of NAFLD when diagnosed by ultrasound and fatty liver index, respectively[21]. Finally, a recent metanalysis found that overall hypothyroidism has a positive association with the risk of NAFLD[22].

Along with these well-crafted studies, some substantial evidences have questioned the exact association between NAFLD and thyroid regulation. A recent Spanish study reported no association between hypothyroidism and NAFLD[23]. The authors observed that thyroid hormone level was not associated with a higher prevalence of NAFLD. Similarly, in a study by Lee *et al*[23], the authors found no relationship of increased incidence of NAFLD in patients with the subclinical or overt types of hypothyroidism.

Many of the studies describing the relationship between these two entities were largely limited by the sample size. To fill this gap, we conducted one of the largest nationwide multicenter studies which screened 37648180 individuals, among which 520 individuals had concomitant NAFLD and hypothyroidism. Our retrospective cohort study has shown that hypothyroidism is an independent risk factor for NAFLD, and that about 1 in every 5 patients with NAFLD have concomitant hypothyroidism (22.4%). Overall, this is one of the highest prevalence rates for NAFLD in hypothyroidism patients. Secondly, the effect of thyroid hormone replacement in hypothyroidism patients and its effect on NAFLD prevention has not been well explored. In a post hoc analysis of a randomized controlled trial for patients with subclinical hypothyroidism, the prevalence of NAFLD was reduced from 48.5% to 24.2% ($P = 0.041$) after 15 mo of thyroid hormone replacement, whereas the prevalence of NAFLD remained stable in the untreated group[24], however; this trial was limited by the small sample size of ~360 patients (AA2). Moreover, those who received thyroid hormone replacement therapy had higher weight loss, which can itself explain the prevalence change in the treated population. Our study failed to show a statistically significant NAFLD risk reduction among patients with hypothyroidism who are placed on thyroid hormone replacement (OR, 1.106, 95%CI: 0.952-1.285, $P = 0.303$) but the weight changes were difficult to assess. Without adequately powered prospective trials that also adjusts for weight changes, the question whether thyroid hormone replacement has a direct protective effect against NAFLD remains difficult to answer, and the appropriate duration for effective replacement therapy and the goals of treatment remain unclear (AA3).

Limitations

One of the limitations in our study is that we could not analyze the diagnostic method used for assessing NAFLD and set cut-off values for diagnosing hypothyroidism, since these are SNOMED-CT coded diagnoses on identified patient's charts. We also could not specify the exact degree at which

hypothyroidism becomes a NAFLD risk factor (AA4). Also, we could not evaluate for how long have these patients with hypothyroidism been on thyroid hormone replacement therapy, and whether they have achieved the euthyroid state or not. More prospective trials are needed to answer this question.

CONCLUSION

Hypothyroidism seems to be an independent risk factor for the development of NAFLD demonstrated in retrospective and prospective studies. Some studies have suggested that thyroid hormone replacement can potentially prevent or reverse NAFLD, which is potentially caused by weight loss. However, our study showed that thyroid hormone replacement did not provide a statistically significant risk reduction. Further prospective studies are needed to assess the role of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in patients with NAFLD, the duration for effective treatment and the treatment goals.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is the most common cause of chronic liver disease worldwide, and hypothyroidism has been identified as an independent risk factor. The available data are limited by small sample size and the effect of thyroid hormone replacement therapy is not well studied.

Research motivation

The main topics of this article is to give a focused analysis on the hypothyroidism and to assess whether it is an independent risk factor for the development of NAFLD by filling the small sample size gap in the literature, provide a review of the current medical literature in this field, and -most importantly- to evaluate the role of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in the prevention of the disease.

Research objectives

The objective of this case control study is to assess whether hypothyroidism is an independent risk factor for the development of NAFLD, to review the updated medical literature, and to assess the role of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in the prevention of the disease.

Research methods

We used a validated multicenter database (Explorys Inc.) from pooled outpatient and inpatient records of 26 different healthcare systems, consisting of a total of 360 hospitals in the United States to collect our data. We evaluated a cohort of patients with hypothyroidism and NAFLD. Multivariate analysis was performed to adjust for confounding risk factors including hypertension (HTN), type 2 diabetes mellites (T2DM), dyslipidemia (DLP), obesity and metabolic syndrome. We evaluated a cohort of patients with hypothyroidism and NAFLD. Multivariate analysis was performed to adjust for confounding risk factors including HTN, T2DM, DLP, obesity and metabolic syndrome.

Research results

Among 37648180 in the database who are above the age of 18 years, a total of 2320 patients with NAFLD in the period from 2015 to 2020 were included. NAFLD prevalence was 6.16 per 100000, among which 520 patients (22.4%) had hypothyroidism. Patients with NAFLD were also more likely to have obesity, type 2 diabetes mellitus, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and metabolic syndrome. Males and females were equally affected, but the results were statistically insignificant. Patients in the age group 18-65 years as well as Caucasians seem to be at a higher risk. There was an independent increase in the risk of NAFLD among patients with hypothyroidism, and thyroid hormone replacement was not associated with a decreased risk for developing NAFLD. Prospective studies are needed to better delineate the role of thyroid hormone replacement therapy in these individual.

Research conclusions

There was an independent increase in the risk of NAFLD among patients with hypothyroidism, and thyroid hormone replacement is not associated with a decreased risk for developing NAFLD. Other studies have shown a potential protective effect of thyroid hormone replacement therapy. Based on the conflicting results with the existing literature, further studies are needed to better investigate the relationship between thyroid hormone replacement therapy and NAFLD.

Research perspectives

Future research should focus on assessing the degree of hypothyroidism that leads to NAFLD, and the role of thyroid hormone replacement therapy including the duration of treatment and the end-point goals.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Almomani A and Kumar P wrote the manuscript; Hitawala AA designed the study; Alkhayyat M performed the statistical analysis; Alqaisi S, Alshaikh D collected the data; Asaad I is the corresponding author.

Institutional review board statement: No Institutional Review Board approval was required for this study since the database is de-identified.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No conflict of interest.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Ashraf Almomani 0000-0003-1648-0005; Asif Ali Hitawala 0000-0002-2888-0172; Prabhat Kumar 0000-0001-9768-4223; Sura Alqaisi 0000-0001-6548-8498; Dana Alshaikh 0000-0003-1471-0647; Motasem Alkhayyat 0000-0002-7603-8705; Imad Asaad 0000-0002-0648-6625.

Corresponding Author's Membership in Professional Societies: American College of Gastroenterology; American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases.

S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhang H

REFERENCES

1 **Younossi Z**, Anstee QM, Marietti M, Hardy T, Henry L, Eslam M, George J, Bugianesi E. Global burden of NAFLD and NASH: trends, predictions, risk factors and prevention. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **15**: 11-20 [PMID: 28930295 DOI: 10.1038/nrgastro.2017.109]

2 **Leslie T**, Pawloski L, Kallman-Price J, Escheik C, Hossain N, Fang Y, Gerber LH, Younossi ZM. Survey of health status, nutrition and geography of food selection of chronic liver disease patients. *Ann Hepatol* 2014; **13**: 533-540 [PMID: 25152986]

3 **Gerber L**, Otgonsuren M, Mishra A, Escheik C, Birerdinc A, Stepanova M, Younossi ZM. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is associated with low level of physical activity: a population-based study. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2012; **36**: 772-781 [PMID: 22958053 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12038]

4 **Liangpunsakul S**, Chalasani N. Is hypothyroidism a risk factor for non-alcoholic steatohepatitis? *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2003; **37**: 340-343 [PMID: 14506393 DOI: 10.1097/00004836-200310000-00014]

5 **Pagadala MR**, Zein CO, Dasarathy S, Yerian LM, Lopez R, McCullough AJ. Prevalence of hypothyroidism in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 528-534 [PMID: 22183820 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-011-2006-2]

6 **IBM Corporation**. The IBM Explorys Platform: liberate your healthcare data. [Cited 28 Novemeber 2020]. Available from: https://www.ibm.com/downloads/cas/4P0QB9JN

7 **Caldwell SH**, Crespo DM. The spectrum expanded: cryptogenic cirrhosis and the natural history of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Hepatol* 2004; **40**: 578-584 [PMID: 15030972 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2004.02.013]

8 **Angulo P**. GI epidemiology: nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 883-889 [PMID: 17402991 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03246.x]

9 **Browning JD**, Szczepaniak LS, Dobbins R, Nuremberg P, Horton JD, Cohen JC, Grundy SM, Hobbs HH. Prevalence of hepatic steatosis in an urban population in the United States: impact of ethnicity. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 1387-1395 [PMID: 15565570 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20466]

10 **He W**, An X, Li L, Shao X, Li Q, Yao Q, Zhang JA. Relationship between Hypothyroidism and Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. *Front Endocrinol (Lausanne)* 2017; **8**: 335 [PMID: 29238323 DOI: 10.3389/fendo.2017.00335]

11 **Feisa SV**, Chopei IV. Subclinical hypothyroidism in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease at the background of

carbohydrate metabolism disorders. *Wiad Lek* 2018; **71**: 261-264 [PMID: 29729151]
12 **Chung GE**, Kim D, Kim W, Yim JY, Park MJ, Kim YJ, Yoon JH, Lee HS. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease across the spectrum of hypothyroidism. *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 150-156 [PMID: 22425701 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.02.027]
13 **Anstee QM**, McPherson S, Day CP. How big a problem is non-alcoholic fatty liver disease? *BMJ* 2011; **343**: d3897 [PMID: 21768191 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.d3897]
14 **Marchesini G**, Babini M. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and the metabolic syndrome. *Minerva Cardioangiol* 2006; **54**: 229-239 [PMID: 16778754]
15 **Rieben C**, Segna D, da Costa BR, Collet TH, Chaker L, Aubert CE, Baumgartner C, Almeida OP, Hogervorst E, Trompet S, Masaki K, Mooijaart SP, Gussekloo J, Peeters RP, Bauer DC, Aujesky D, Rodondi N. Subclinical Thyroid Dysfunction and the Risk of Cognitive Decline: a Meta-Analysis of Prospective Cohort Studies. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2016; **101**: 4945-4954 [PMID: 27689250 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2016-2129]
16 **Dongiovanni P**, Valenti L, Rametta R, Daly AK, Nobili V, Mozzi E, Leathart JB, Pietrobattista A, Burt AD, Maggioni M, Fracanzani AL, Lattuada E, Zappa MA, Roviaro G, Marchesini G, Day CP, Fargion S. Genetic variants regulating insulin receptor signalling are associated with the severity of liver damage in patients with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 267-273 [PMID: 20176643 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.190801]
17 **Parikh P**, Phadke A, Sawant P. Prevalence of hypothyroidism in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in patients attending a tertiary hospital in western India. *Indian J Gastroenterol* 2015; **34**: 169-173 [PMID: 25875369 DOI: 10.1007/s12664-015-0541-z]
18 **Ludwig U**, Holzner D, Denzer C, Greinert A, Haenle MM, Oeztuerk S, Koenig W, Boehm BO, Mason RA, Kratzer W, Graeter T; EMIL-Study. Subclinical and clinical hypothyroidism and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a cross-sectional study of a random population sample aged 18 to 65 years. *BMC Endocr Disord* 2015; **15**: 41 [PMID: 26276551 DOI: 10.1186/s12902-015-0030-5]
19 **Bano A**, Chaker L, Plompen EP, Hofman A, Dehghan A, Franco OH, Janssen HL, Darwish Murad S, Peeters RP. Thyroid Function and the Risk of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease: The Rotterdam Study. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2016; **101**: 3204-3211 [PMID: 27270473 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2016-1300]
20 **Martínez-Escudé A**, Pera G, Costa-Garrido A, Rodríguez L, Arteaga I, Expósito-Martínez C, Torán-Monserrat P, Caballería L. TSH Levels as an Independent Risk Factor for NAFLD and Liver Fibrosis in the General Population. *J Clin Med* 2021; **10** [PMID: 34209831 DOI: 10.3390/jcm10132907]
21 **Liu Y**, Wang W, Yu X, Qi X. Thyroid Function and Risk of Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease in Euthyroid Subjects. *Ann Hepatol* 2018; **17**: 779-788 [PMID: 30145565 DOI: 10.5604/01.3001.0012.3136]
22 **Zeng X**, Li B, Zou Y. The relationship between non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and hypothyroidism: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2021; **100**: e25738 [PMID: 33907168 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000025738]
23 **Lee KW**, Bang KB, Rhee EJ, Kwon HJ, Lee MY, Cho YK. Impact of hypothyroidism on the development of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: A 4-year retrospective cohort study. *Clin Mol Hepatol* 2015; **21**: 372-378 [PMID: 26770926 DOI: 10.3350/cmh.2015.21.4.372]
24 **Liu L**, Yu Y, Zhao M, Zheng D, Zhang X, Guan Q, Xu C, Gao L, Zhao J, Zhang H. Benefits of Levothyroxine Replacement Therapy on Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease in Subclinical Hypothyroidism Patients. *Int J Endocrinol* 2017; **2017**: 5753039 [PMID: 28473851 DOI: 10.1155/2017/5753039]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 559-569

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.559

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Standards of liver cirrhosis care in Central Australia

Sreecanth S Raja, Robert G Batey, Suzanne Edwards, Hein H Aung

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Tsoulfas G

Received: August 1, 2021
Peer-review started: August 1, 2021
First decision: September 29, 2021
Revised: October 4, 2021
Accepted: February 23, 2022
Article in press: February 23, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Sreecanth S Raja, Department of Gastroenterology, Alice Springs Hospital, Alice Springs 0870, Northern Territory, Australia

Robert G Batey, Hein H Aung, Department of Medicine, Alice Springs Hospital, Alice Springs 0870, Northern Territory, Australia

Suzanne Edwards, Department of Statistician, School of Public Health, University of Adelaide, Adelaide 5000, South Australia, Australia

Corresponding author: Sreecanth S Raja, BSc, MBBS, Doctor, Department of Gastroenterology, Alice Springs Hospital, Gap Road, Alice Springs 0870, Northern Territory, Australia.
sreecanth.raja@sa.gov.au

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) are highly prevalent in Australia's Northern Territory. Contributing factors include high levels of alcohol consumption, viral hepatitis and metabolic syndrome. Rural Aboriginal residents form a significant proportion of the Central Australian population and present a challenge to traditional models of liver care. HCC surveillance and variceal screening are core components of liver cirrhosis management.

AIM

To assess participation in HCC and variceal surveillance programmes in a Central Australian liver cirrhosis patient cohort.

METHODS

Retrospective cohort study of patients with liver cirrhosis presenting to Alice Springs Hospital, Australia between January 1, 2012 and December 31, 2017. Demographic data, disease severity, attendance at hepatology clinics, participation in variceal and/or HCC surveillance programmes was recorded. Regression analyses were conducted to assess factors associated with two independent outcomes: Participation in HCC and variceal surveillance.

RESULTS

Of 193 patients were identified. 82 patients (42.4%) were female. 154 patients (80%) identified as Aboriginal. Median Model for End-stage Liver Disease Score at diagnosis was 11. Alcohol was the most common cause of cirrhosis. Aboriginal patients were younger than non-Aboriginal patients (48.4 years *vs* 59.9 years, $P < 0.001$). There were similar rates of excess alcohol intake (72.6% *vs* 66.7%, $P = 0.468$)

and obesity (34.5% *vs* 38.4%, P = 0.573 across non-Aboriginal and Aboriginal cohorts. 20.1% of patients took part in HCC surveillance and 42.1% of patients completed variceal screening. Aboriginal patients were less likely to engage with either HCC surveillance (OR: 0.38, 95%CI: 0.16-0.9, P = 0.025) or undergo variceal screening (OR: 0.31, 95%CI: 0.14-0.65, P = 0.002).

CONCLUSION
HCC or variceal surveillance programmes had less uptake amongst Aboriginal patients. Greater emphasis needs to be placed on eliminating cultural obstacles to accessing hepatology services.

Key Words: Viral hepatitis; Cirrhosis; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Alcoholic liver disease; Central australia

Core Tip: Liver cirrhosis is prevalent in Australia's Northern Territory. Liver disease is a contributor to the mortality gap between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal Australians. 20.1% of patients included in our study participated in hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance and 42.1% of patients underwent screening endoscopy in a rural Australian centre. Aboriginal patients were less likely to engage with screening programs despite their predominance in our study cohort.

Citation: Raja SS, Batey RG, Edwards S, Aung HH. Standards of liver cirrhosis care in Central Australia. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 559-569
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/559.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.559

INTRODUCTION

Liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) constitute end-stage manifestations for a diverse range of pathological processes affecting the liver. Medical care of patients with cirrhosis is centred on treating underlying causative pathology, screening for HCC and preventing decompensation of liver disease[1]. Standards of care in liver cirrhosis are well established in hepatological literature and national guidelines[2,3]. The core measurable components of cirrhosis care pertain to surveillance programmes for gastro-oesophageal varices and HCC. These have been shown to improve survival and ameliorate healthcare costs of liver disease[4-6].

Escalating morbidity and mortality rates from liver disease in Australia are widely recognized[2]. This rising tide of liver disease has been fuelled by hazardous alcohol consumption, viral hepatitis and obesity[7]. The healthcare costs of liver disease were estimated at $50 billion *per* annum across Australia in 2012[2]. Geographical and socio-economic disparities in liver-related health service provision are a reality in Australia. The Northern Territory (NT) of Australia is afflicted by the highest *per* capita alcohol intake in Australia and one of the highest in the world[8]. Furthermore, liver disease has been identified as one of the major diseases contributing to the well cited mortality gap between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal Australians[9-11]. Cross-sectional studies have demonstrated significantly higher prevalence of Hepatitis B in Aboriginal NT residents[12].

Contemporary healthcare models focus on the provision of centralized specialist cirrhosis care at tertiary hospitals in metropolitan areas. The Central Australian region is centred around the town of Alice Springs and spans a vast area encompassing parts of NT, South Australia and Western Australia. Central Australia is distinct from other parts of Australia given its remoteness and high proportion of Aboriginal constituents. This posits significant challenges for service providers in providing easily accessible culturally appropriate liver-related healthcare surveillance and interventions. Adherence with nationally agreed standards of care in liver cirrhosis in Central Australia has hitherto not been formally assessed.

Our study intends to outline the demographical and epidemiological charachteristics of patients presenting to Alice Springs Hospital with liver cirrhosis. We also examined the influence of these factors on participation in variceal and HCC surveillance programmes.

Study setting

The Central Australian healthcare model is best described as "hub and spoke" in nature. Alice Springs Hospital is 186-bed healthcare facility that serves as the sole referral centre for an area of approximately 577000 km squared with a population of just under 50000. Thus, conducting our study at ASH provides an insight into the standards of liver cirrhosis care for the wider Central Australian region.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Case ascertainment

The primary data for this study includes information on all patients admitted to ASH with an underlying or new diagnosis of liver cirrhosis between January 1, 2012 and December 31, 2017. The study cohort was identified using ICD-10 codes. Lists of ICD-10 Codes used to identify potential cases included liver cirrhosis as Principal (98 episodes) or Additional diagnosis (789 episodes) and chronic liver disease as principal (246) or additional diagnosis (4728) (Codes K70, K71, K72, K73, K74, K75, K76, K77).

Case episodes were screened using electronic and paper medical records to identify eligible patients. Our study inclusion criteria required a confirmed diagnosis of liver cirrhosis and permanent residence in the Central Australian region. Diagnosis of liver cirrhosis was confirmed through assessment of available histology, biochemistry, radiography and documented clinical findings. Importantly, patients with probable diagnosis of cirrhosis based on either radiology or biochemistry but without documented clinical confirmation were not included in the analysis.

Data collated from medical records included demographic data, time of initial diagnosis, risk factors, aetiology of liver cirrhosis, Child-Pugh (CP) score, Model for End-stage Liver Disease (MELD) score at time of diagnosis, mode of initial presentation, referral to specialist liver clinic, participation in variceal and/or HCC surveillance programmes and development of HCC. From a residential perspective, the majority of non-Aboriginal residents of Alice Springs reside in registered domiciles whilst a significant proportion of Aboriginal residents live in distinct camps in the fringes of the city[13]. Residential status of participants was thus divided into three entities: Alice Springs town, Alice Springs camps or rural.

Aetiology of liver cirrhosis was confirmed retrospectively based on medical records. Case-notes of patients diagnosed with Alcohol related cirrhosis were reviewed to confirm current or previous hazardous alcohol intake. For the purposes of this study, hazardous alcohol intake was defined as > 14 standard units *per* week in line with National Health and Medical Research Council recommendations [14]. Presence of hepatitis C virus (HCV) and Hepatitis B was confirmed through analysis of HCV RNA levels and hepatitis B serological tests (HBsAg, HBsAb, HbcAb, HbeAg, HbeAb), retrospectively. Non-Alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) related cirrhosis was diagnosed in patients with metabolic risk factors (obesity, type 2 diabetes, hypercholesterolemia) in the absence of hazardous alcohol intake. Autoimmune and primary biliary cirrhosis were diagnosed on the basis of serological, histological and biochemical testing.

Our primary outcomes were participation in HCC and variceal surveillance programmes. Participation in HCC Surveillance was defined as undergoing 6-monthly ultrasound assessment over a minimum of 1 year. Completion of an index screening endoscopy at diagnosis was used as a surrogate marker for adherence with variceal surveillance. Internationally validated Baveno VI criteria only recommend screening in selected patients with cirrhosis based on platelet count and elevated liver stiffness measurements[4]. However, the absence of transient elastography services at ASH prohibited the use of Baveno criteria as a discriminating tool. Regression analyses were conducted to assess factors associated with two independent outcomes: Participation in HCC and variceal surveillance.

Statistical analysis

Descriptive statistics are presented for all patients in Table 1. Table 2 outlines a comparison of Aboriginal *vs* non-Aboriginal patients. Categorical variables were compared using Chi square or Fisher's Exact Test. Normally distributed variables were analysed using Independent t-test while Wilcoxon Rank Sum Test was utilised for non-normally distributed variables. Our secondary outcomes focused on assessing the demographic and clinical variables influencing participation in HCC and variceal surveillance programmes. Unadjusted and adjusted binary logistic regressions were performed for both HCC and variceal surveillance (in separate models). These analyses are presented in Tables 3 and 4. Confounders included in the adjusted models include age, gender, CP score.

RESULTS

A total of 5861 Case Episodes were identified using the coding criteria stated in our methodology. From a thorough analysis of these case episodes, we identified 193 patients with confirmed cirrhosis presenting to ASH from January 1, 2012 to December 31, 2017.

The discrepancy between case episodes and included patients was due to multiple factors. Firstly, the majority of case episodes identified with our extended search criteria involved non-cirrhotic patients. Secondly, most of our cohort presented to ASH on multiple occasions during the study period. Thirdly, patients with probable cirrhosis who had not undergone confirmatory testing were not included.

Of 57.5% of the study cohort were male. 154 patients (80%) of the study cohort were Aboriginal. The average age at diagnosis was 50.7 years old (SD 11.9). The median MELD Score was 10 (IQR: 8.18). 49% of the study cohort presented with CP Class A cirrhosis at the time of diagnosis. Of the remainder, 38% of patients initially presented with CP Class B cirrhosis and 12% with CP Class C. 31% of patients

Table 1 Descriptive statistics for all data and all variables in the study

Total number of patients	193
Age at diagnosis, years–mean ± SD	50.7 (11.9)
Gender	
Female	82 (42.5%)
Male	111 (57.5%)
Aboriginal	154 (79.8%)
Residence	
Alice Springs	58 (30.1%)
Alice Springs township	31 (16.1%)
Rural	104 (53.9%)
Risk factors	
IVDU	15 (7.9%)
Hazardous alcohol intake	137 (71.4%)
Obesity	63 (35.6%)
Child-Pugh score	
A	94 (50%)
B	71 (37.8%)
C	23 (12.2%)
MELD score–median (IQR)	10 (8, 18)
Decompensating event triggering admission	58 (30.4%)
Aetiology	
Alcohol	96 (49.7%)
Hepatitis B	22 (11.4%)
NAFLD	11 (5.7%)
Hepatitis C	9 (4.7%)
Cardiac cirrhosis	6 (3.1%)
Cryptogenic	6 (3.1%)
Autoimmune hepatitis	2 (1%)
Biliary diseases	2 (1%)
NAFLD + Alcohol	5 (2.6%)
Hepatitis C + Alcohol	11 (5.7%)
Hepatitis B + Alcohol	18 (9.3%)
Cardiac cirrhosis + NAFLD	3 (1.6%)
Hepatitis B + NAFLD	2 (1.0%)
Participation in variceal surveillance	75 (41.9%)
Participation in HCC surveillance	32 (20.3%)
Development of HCC during study period	29 (15.0%)
Review in specialist clinic	95 (49.5%)
Referral for liver transplantation	12 (6.4%)

NAFLD: Non-Alcoholic fatty liver disease; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; IVDU: Intravenous drug use.

Table 2 Comparison of aboriginal *vs* non-aboriginal patients

	Aboriginal	Non-aboriginal	*P* value
Total number	154 (79.8%)	39 (20.2%)	
Age at diagnosis–mean ± SD	48.4 (11.1)	59.9 (10.9)	< 0.001
Gender–Female	76 (49.4%)	6 (15.4%)	< 0.001
Residence			< 0.001
Alice Springs	24 (15.6%)	34 (87.2%)	
Alice Springs camp	31 (20.1%)	0	
Rural	99 (64.3%)	5 (12.8%)	
Risk factors			
IVDU	2 (1.3%)	13 (33.3%)	< 0.001
Hazardous alcohol intake	111 (72.6%)	26 (66.7%)	0.468
Obesity	48 (34.5%)	15 (38.4%)	0.573
Child-Pugh score			0.091
A	69 (46.3%)	25 (64.1%)	
B	62 (41.6%)	9 (23.1%)	
C	18 (12.1%)	5 (12.8%)	
MELD score–median (IQR)	11 (8, 20)	10 (8, 12)	0.026
Decompensating event triggering admission	45 (29.4%)	13 (34.2%)	0.565
Aetiology			< 0.001
Alcohol	86 (55.8%)	10 (25.6%)	
Hepatitis B	20 (13.0%)	2 (5.1%)	
NAFLD	12 (7.8%)	2 (5.1%)	
Hepatitis C	1 (0.7%)	8 (20.5%)	
Cardiac cirrhosis	4 (2.6%)	2 (5.1%)	
Cryptogenic	4 (2.6%)	2 (5.1%)	
Autoimmune hepatitis	1 (0.7%)	1 (2.6%)	
Biliary diseases	0	2 (5.1%)	
Hepatitis B + Alcohol	18 (11.7%)	0	
NAFLD + Alcohol	5 (3.3%)	0	
Hepatitis C + Alcohol	1 (0.7%)	10 (25.6%)	
Hepatitis B + NAFLD	2 (1.3%)	0	
Variceal surveillance	24 (17.8%)	11 (34.4%)	0.002
HCC surveillance	21 (16.7%)	11 (34.4%)	0.038
Development of HCC	21 (13.6%)	8 (20.5%)	0.283
Review in specialist clinic	63 (41.2%)	32 (84.1%)	< 0.001
Referral for liver transplantation	5 (3.3%)	7 (18.9%)	< 0.001

NAFLD: Non-Alcoholic fatty liver disease; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; IVDU: Intravenous drug use.

presented with decompensating events as the first clinical manifestation of liver cirrhosis. The most common decompensating events were acute on chronic liver failure and variceal haemorrhage. 54% of our cohort were residents of rural Central Australia. 30% of patients lived in Alice Springs whilst 16% were listed as residents of the surrounding town camps.

Table 3 Unadjusted and adjusted binary logistic models of hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance versus Aboriginal status

Risk factor	Surveillance participation		Comparison	Odds ratio (95%CI)	*P* value	Odds ratio (95%CI)	*P* value
	Yes	No		Univariate		Multivariable	
Aboriginal status-Yes	18	95	Yes *vs* No	0.31 (0.13, 0.77)	0.011	0.29 (0.10, 0.87)	0.028
Age-mean ± SD	51.7 (10.9)	49.4 (10.8)		1.02 (0.98, 1.06)	0.308	1.00 (0.95, 1.04)	0.866
Gender–Male	18	64	Female *vs* Male	0.80 (0.35, 1.84)	0.398	1.10 (0.45, 2.71)	0.838
Child-Pugh score					0.930		0.950
A	18	65	A *vs* B	1.18 (0.51, 2.74)	0.694	0.97 (0.40, 2.34)	0.942
B	11	47					
Residence					0.026		
Alice Springs	14	27	AS *vs* ASC	11.41 (1.39, 93.66)	0.023		
Alice Springs camps	1	22	AS *vs* R	2.37 (1.00, 5.64)	0.05		
Rural	14	64	AST *vs* R	0.21 (0.03, 1.67)	0.14		
See specialist liver clinic–Yes	26	52	Yes *vs* No	10.17 (2.91, 35.52)	< 0.001		

AS: Alice springs; ASC: Alice springs camps; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase.

Table 4 Unadjusted and adjusted binary logistic models of Variceal surveillance

Risk factor	Surveillance participation		Comparison	Odds ratio (95%CI)	*P* value	Odds ratio (95%CI)	*P* value
	Yes	No		Univariate		Multivariable	
Aboriginal Status-Yes	51	90	Yes *vs* No	0.31 (0.14, 0.65)	0.002	0.29 (0.12, 0.69)	0.005
Age-mean ± SD	51.9 (11.6)	49.2 (11.2)		1.02 (0.99, 1.04)	0.116	1.01 (0.98, 1.04)	0.621
Gender–Male	43	59	Female *vs* Male	1.00 (0.55, 1.82)	0.995	1.36 (0.70, 2.63)	0.358
Child-Pugh score					0.930		0.950
A	39	51	A *vs* B	1.13 (0.60, 2.15)	0.703	0.90 (0.45, 1.76)	0.750
B	27	40	A *vs* C	1.05 (0.39, 2.86)	0.922	0.96 (0.34, 2.71)	0.941
C	8	11	B *vs* C	0.93 (0.33, 2.61)	0.888	1.07 (0.37, 3.13)	0.900
Residence					0.002		
Alice Springs	33	20	AS *vs* ASC	4.03 (1.55, 10.47)	0.004		
Alice Springs camps	9	22	AS *vs* R	3.05 (1.52, 6.13)	0.002		
Rural	33	61	AST *vs* R	0.76 (0.31, 1.83)	0.535		
See specialist liver clinic–Yes	54	39	Yes *vs* No	4.22 (2.22, 8.02)	< 0.001		

AS: Alice Springs; ASC: Alice Springs camps; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase.

Alcohol related cirrhosis was the most common cause of cirrhosis in our study. Liver cirrhosis was attributed to alcohol in 71% of the study cohort. Viral hepatitis was also prevalent amongst our study cohort. 42 patients (22%) were identified as having chronic hepatitis B whilst 20 patients (10%) had hepatitis C. 11% of patients were deemed as having liver cirrhosis related to NAFLD. 5% of patients developed chronic congestive liver cirrhosis as a sequelae of underling cardiac failure. Six patients had cryptogenic cirrhosis (Table 1). 29 patients developed HCC as a complication of liver cirrhosis. These patients were predominately male (72%) and Aboriginal (72%).

Table 2 presents a comparison of epidemiological data between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal patients. Aboriginal patients were significantly younger than their non-Aboriginal counterparts (48.4 years *vs* 59.9 years, $P < 0.001$). Non-Aboriginal patients were predominately male (85%) while there was an equal gender split for the Aboriginal cohort. The average MELD score for Aboriginal patients was 11 (IQR: 8.20) and 54% presented with CP Class B or C cirrhosis. The corresponding figures for non-Aboriginal patients were 10 (IQR: 8.12) and 36%, respectively. There were no observed differences in

rates of hazardous alcohol intake (72.6% *vs* 66.7%, $P = 0.468$) and obesity (34.5% *vs* 38.4%, $P = 0.573$) between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal cohorts. Our Aboriginal cohort had significantly lower rates of intravenous drug use (1.3% *vs* 33.3%, $P < 0.001$). From a geographical perspective, Aboriginal patients were significantly more likely to be residents of rural communities or town camps ($P < 0.001$). Aboriginal patients were less likely to attend specialist liver clinics.

Given their association with Aboriginal ethnicity, place of residence and specialist clinic non-attendance were excluded from adjusted models examining factors influencing participation in surveillance programmes.

Adherence with variceal surveillance

Four patients were excluded as they died during their index admission and 11 patients were excluded on account of incomplete data. Thus, 178 patients were included in the primary analysis. Of the included patients, 75 (42.1%) received a screening endoscopy within six months of their diagnosis.

On univariate analysis, attendance at specialist liver clinics was associated with participation in variceal surveillance (OR: 4.22, 95%CI: 2.22-8.02, $P < 0.0001$). Patients residing in Alice Springs were more likely to participate than patients from town camps or rural communities (AS *vs* AST, OR: 4.03, 95%CI: 1.5-10.5, $P = 0.004$; AS *vs* R, OR: 3.05, CI: 1.52-6.13, $P = 0.002$). Conversely, Aboriginal ethnicity (OR: 0.31, 95%CI: 0.14-0.65, $P = 0.002$) was associated with non-completion of screening endoscopy in both unadjusted and adjusted models. Neither age, gender nor disease severity were found to be associated with variceal surveillance in either model.

Adherence with HCC surveillance

Overall, 141 patients were included in the analysis of HCC surveillance participation. 29 patients (20.6%) participated with regular sonographic surveillance. Patients were excluded on the basis of CP disease severity (18 patients), concurrent diagnosis of HCC with cirrhosis[9], absence of follow up data [10] and death within 12 mo of cirrhosis diagnosis[15]. In unadjusted models, review at specialist clinic was strongly associated with participation in HCC surveillance (OR: 10.17, 95%CI: 2.91-35.5, $P < 0.001$). Residence in Alice Springs was associated with better adherence to regular liver sonography in comparison to Alice Springs town camps and rural regions. Aboriginal patients were less likely to participate in both unadjusted (OR: 0.31, 95%CI: 0.13-0.77, $P = 0.01$) and adjusted models (OR: 0.29, 95%CI: 0.10-0.87, $P = 0.03$). Neither age, gender nor disease severity were found to be associated with HCC surveillance in either model.

DISCUSSION

With respect to overall participation in HCC surveillance, 20% of our cohort demonstrated sustained engagement with 6 moly ultrasound scans. Poor uptake limits the utility of surveillance as a means of ameliorating the morbidity, mortality and healthcare costs of HCC at a population level. This is rendered of greater significance by the heavy burden of HCC in the NT[15]. It is important to note that poor uptake of HCC surveillance is not an issue specific to Central Australia. Participation is limited even in more urban and resource-rich settings. A retrospective study in Melbourne of patients diagnosed with HCC between 2012-2013 demonstrated a 41% compliance rate with surveillance[16]. These statistics reflect the broader social and medical disenfranchisement of patients with cirrhosis as well as the demanding nature of regular surveillance sonography. Comparatively, variceal surveillance had greater uptake and this likely reflects the liberal definition used in our study as well as ease of access to endoscopy services during index admissions. In clinical practice, variceal surveillance requires further endoscopies with advancing severity of liver cirrhosis. However formal guidelines on screening intervals vary considerably and lack consensus.

Aboriginal ethnicity was strongly associated with non-participation in both HCC and variceal surveillance. This is rendered further significance as 80% of our study cohort was Aboriginal; a particularly noteworthy fact given that Aboriginal residents make up less than one quarter of the Central Australian population. This disproportionate prevalence of cirrhosis in Aboriginal patients correlates well with epidemiological data showing significantly higher incidence rates of HCC and liver disease in Aboriginal Territorians[17,18]. We demonstrated other points of departure between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal cohorts. Aboriginal patients with cirrhosis presented at a younger age and with more advanced disease. This is in keeping with findings from a larger Australian retrospective cohort study comparing cirrhosis admissions between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal populations over a 10-year period in Queensland[10]. Additionally, half of our Aboriginal cohort were women. This contrasts with the male predominance of the non-Aboriginal cohort. Extrapolating further, these results are also out of keeping with national statistics that demonstrate distributions of premature liver deaths and liver related hospitilisations skewed towards men[2].

This significant burden of liver disease needs to be understood within broader socioeconomic context for Aboriginal Central Australians. Liver disease, similar to other highly prevalent chronic diseases, is a corollary of social, political and economic disenfranchisement[19]. It is important for clinicians and

policy makers to recognise the root causes for poor health and liver cirrhosis. Socioeconomic factors predisposing to high-risk behaviours such as hazardous alcoholic intake also play a role in the poor engagement of Aboriginal patients with formal liver services as demonstrated in our study.

Language and culture are additional factors that represent major obstacles to engagement with liver services for Aboriginal patients in Central Australia[20]. In rural Central Australia, up to 80% of Aboriginal households predominately speak one of the 18 traditional languages. Proficiency in standard English is typically variable. This is in stark contrast with national census data showing that 83% of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders speak English as a first language[19]. Language barriers have significant repercussions for healthcare provision at ASH where most of the workforce are non-Aboriginal. Medical and follow-up information is often poorly disseminated and vulnerable to misinterpretation by patients. An ASH based study investigating recorded self-discharge rates found that up to 80% of patients were unaware of medical diagnosis or proposed length of stay[20]. Similarly, achieving effective patient engagement is limited by other cultural factors. A study in nearby Mount Isa, Queensland found that patient perceptions of poor understanding or respect of Aboriginal culture on the part of medical practitioners was a major barrier to care[21]. Communication barriers and failures in achieving patient trust clearly remain impediments in engaging Aboriginal patients with formal liver services in Central Australia.

Specialist review and residence in Alice Springs were both associated with completion of screening endoscopy and HCC surveillance in unadjusted models. This may reflect the fact that patients with sufficient motivation to attend outpatient appointments and located closer to central services are more likely to engage with surveillance programmes. It is also important to acknowledge the mediating effects of specialist review and place of residence on the causal pathway between Aboriginal status and reduced participation in liver surveillance programmes. Aboriginal patients were significantly less likely to attend specialist liver clinics and more likely to live either rurally or in town camps. This mediating effect is seen when considering the influence of place of residence on surveillance participation. Non-Aboriginal patients from Alice Springs were more likely to participate in both HCC and Variceal surveillance than the exclusively Aboriginal patients residing in Alice Springs town camps. Furthermore, there were no statistically significance difference in surveillance participation between rural and camp based Aboriginal patients.

From an aetiological perspective, alcohol and viral hepatitis were the main drivers of liver cirrhosis. Alcohol was implicated in the aetiology of more than two thirds of our study cohort either alone or in combination with viral hepatitis. Contextually, NT has been identified as having the highest *per* capita alcohol intake in Australia and one of the highest in the world. Similar proportions of Aboriginal and Non-Aboriginal patients exceeded recommended weekly limits of alcohol intake. Despite this, 75% of Aboriginal patients were classified as having alcohol related cirrhosis whilst only 25% of non-Aboriginal patients were labelled with this diagnosis. This discrepancy may be explained by the non-linear relationship between hazardous alcohol intake and development of cirrhosis[22]. Data from the Australian Institute of Health And Welfare's National Drug Strategy Household Survey showed that while Aboriginal individuals were less likely to drink than non-Aboriginal counterparts, those that do are more likely to do so at hazardous levels[23].

However, it is impossible to discount potential elements of diagnostic bias especially when patients were not under the purview of specialists. The potential under-recognition of NAFLD in our study may support this view. Less than 10% of our cohort were deemed as having NAFLD as *per* available documentation. One would expect a higher prevalence of NAFLD in a Central Australian cohort given the above average rates of obesity and diabetes as well as the fact this condition is the most prevalent form of liver disease in Australia[2]. Another point of concern for patients with cirrhosis who were not reviewed by liver specialists was a propensity to label alcohol as the primary aetiological factor without completion of the full battery of screening tests. This is clinically significant given that heavy alcohol intake has been shown to accelerate the progression of liver inflammation in underlying chronic hepatitis B and C[24]. Furthermore, potentially erroneous labelling of alcohol related liver disease can perpetuate stigmatisation of Aboriginal patients. Several authors have highlighted stigma as a major limiting factor in the engagement of Aboriginal patients with formal healthcare services[25].

Our study has a few limitations which our study design was unable to eliminate. Firstly, accurately quantifying the prevalence of liver cirrhosis in Central Australia is beyond the scope of this study. Secondly, our focus on hospital inpatients may not be reflective of the general cirrhosis population. This cohort of patients tend to be from more disadvantaged socio-economic backgrounds and present with more severe liver disease. A natural consequence of this is the presence of a selection bias that may render the study cohort less representative. However, our study does serve to determine whether the current model of liver care adequately meets the need of the most vulnerable subset of cirrhotic patients in Central Australia. We endeavour that this study can also be used as a foundation for further research in the area of liver cirrhosis in the Central Australian region.

CONCLUSION

Aboriginal patients were strongly overrepresented in our study and were less likely to engage with HCC or variceal surveillance. Strategies devised to address the issue of liver disease in Central Australia will need to focus on eliminating cultural barriers to accessing care, expanding capacity for specialist review and ameliorating hazardous alcohol intake on a population level. We endeavour that this study can also be used as a foundation for further research in the area of liver cirrhosis in the Central Australian region.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Northern Territory (NT), Australia has high rates of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) as a consequence of harmful alcohol use, viral hepatitis and metabolic syndrome. Aboriginal persons constitute a significant proportion of the population in the Central Australian region of NT. Several challenges are faced in providing culturally appropriate liver care to the diverse Central Australian population.

Research motivation

Liver disease has been identified as a significant contributor to the well cited mortality gap between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal Australians. Central Australia is unique within Australia given its high proportion of Aboriginal residents. Formal adherence with HCC or variceal screening programmes have not been specifically assessed in Central Australia.

Research objectives

Our first research objectives involves description of the baseline charachteristics of inpatients presenting to a Central Australian hospital. Our second research objective involves assessment of adherence with HCC surveillance as well as analysis of the factors associated with participation. Our third research objective involves assessment of adherence with HCC surveillance as well as analysis of the factors associated with participation.

Research methods

Our study methodology involved performing a retrospective cohort study. All idenitified patients presenting to inpatient departments at Alice Springs Hospital, NT, Australia between 2012 to 2017 were included in the study. We collected data including demographics, disease causation and severity (Child-Pugh Score), referral to hepatology clinics and adherence with variceal and/or HCC surveillance programmes. Regression analyses were conducted to assess factors associated with two independent outcomes: Adherence with HCC and variceal surveillance.

Research results

Aboriginal persons were over-represented and made up 80% of the study cohort. Aboriginal patients were younger and presented with more severe disease than non-Aboriginal counterparts. Overall 20.1% of our study cohort participated in HCC surveillance while 42.1% of patients underwent variceal screening. Aboriginal ethnicity was inversely associated with participation in HCC surveillance.

Research conclusions

This is the first study examining adherence with standards of liver cirrhosis care in Central Australia. Liver cirrhosis in Central Australia disproportionately affects Aboriginal communities as a corollary of adverse metabolic profiles, hazardous alcohol intake and viral hepatitis. The current centralised model of cirrhosis care does not adequately meet the need of Aboriginal Central Australians. Our study demonstrates the pressing need for interventions to improve participation of Aboriginal patients with cirrhosis in HCC screening in order to ameliorate the morbidity and mortality associated with delayed diagnosis. Language, geographical and cultural factors are important prisms through which to examine low participation rates among Aboriginal patients in Central Australia. This is compounded by limited utilisation of valuable primary care links. Correspondingly, interventions aimed at closing the gap in liver related health outcomes between Aboriginal and non-Aboriginal patients need to focus on addressing these factors.

Research perspectives

Future research should focus on piloting alternative models of cirrhosis care for Aboriginal patients with liver cirrhosis in Central Australia. Alternative care models should focus on expanding provision of telehealth services, enhancing utilisation of primary health care links and culturally tailoring care.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Raja SS and Batey RG designed the research study; Raja SS applied for local Ethical Approval and wrote the manuscript; Raja SS and Aung HH performed data collection; Raja SS, Edwards S and Batey RG analyzed the data; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: Approval for this study was given by the Central Australian Health and Research Ethics Committee (Ref: CA-19-3415) and Alice Springs Hospital, Central Australian Health Service (Ref:EDOC2019/0172321).

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors whose names are listed above certify that they have no affiliations with or involvement in any organisation or entity with any financial interest (such as honoraria; educational grants; participation in speakers' bureaus; membership, employment, consultancies, stock ownership, or other equity interest; and expert testimony or patent-licensing arrangements), or non-financial interest (such as personal or professional relationships, affiliations, knowledge or beliefs) in the subject matter or materials discussed in this manuscript. This project did not reveal any financial support from any organisation or institution.

Data sharing statement: Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at sreecanth.raja@sa.gov.au. Individual consent was not obtained but the presented data is de-identified without risk of identification.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: Australia

ORCID number: Sreecanth S Raja 0000-0001-9939-5046; Robert G Batey 0000-0001-5961-8938; Suzanne Edwards 0000-0003-2074-1685; Hein H Aung 0000-0003-1756-5123.

S-Editor: Fan JR
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Fan JR

REFERENCES

1 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines for the management of patients with decompensated cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 406-460 [PMID: 29653741 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.03.024]
2 **Deloitte Access Economics**. The economic cost and health burden of liver diseases in Australia. The Gastroenterological Society of Australia. 2013; January. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://static1.squarespace.com/static/50ff0804e4b007d5a9abe0a5/t/53321aaee4b09f967eb0c7e5/1395792558684/gesa2013_revised%5B1%5D.pdf
3 **Williams R**, Aspinall R, Bellis M, Camps-Walsh G, Cramp M, Dhawan A, Ferguson J, Forton D, Foster G, Gilmore I, Hickman M, Hudson M, Kelly D, Langford A, Lombard M, Longworth L, Martin N, Moriarty K, Newsome P, O'Grady J, Pryke R, Rutter H, Ryder S, Sheron N, Smith T. Addressing liver disease in the UK: a blueprint for attaining excellence in health care and reducing premature mortality from lifestyle issues of excess consumption of alcohol, obesity, and viral hepatitis. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 1953-1997 [PMID: 25433429 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(14)61838-9]
4 **de Franchis R**; Baveno V Faculty. Revising consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno V consensus workshop on methodology of diagnosis and therapy in portal hypertension. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 762-768 [PMID: 20638742 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.06.004]
5 **Singal AG**, Mittal S, Yerokun OA, Ahn C, Marrero JA, Yopp AC, Parikh ND, Scaglione SJ. Hepatocellular Carcinoma Screening Associated with Early Tumor Detection and Improved Survival Among Patients with Cirrhosis in the US. *Am J Med* 2017; **130**: 1099-1106.e1 [PMID: 28213044 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2017.01.021]
6 **Singal AG**, Pillai A, Tiro J. Early detection, curative treatment, and survival rates for hepatocellular carcinoma surveillance in patients with cirrhosis: a meta-analysis. *PLoS Med* 2014; **11**: e1001624 [PMID: 24691105 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1001624]
7 **Jiang H**, Livingston M, Room R, Dietze P, Norström T, Kerr WC. Alcohol consumption and liver disease in Australia: a time series analysis of the period 1935-2006. *Alcohol Alcohol* 2014; **49**: 363-368 [PMID: 24052533 DOI: 10.1093/alcalc/agt143]
8 **Northern Territory Department of Health**. Alcohol Policies and Legislation Review Final Report. Northern Territory Alcohol Policies and Legislation Reform. 2017. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: www.nt.gov.au
9 **Al-Yaman F**. The Australian Burden of Disease Study: impact and causes of illness and death in Aboriginal and Torres

Strait Islander people, 2011. *Public Health Res Pract* 2017; **27** [PMID: 29114712 DOI: 10.17061/phrp2741732]

10 **Valery PC**, Clark PJ, Pratt G, Bernardes CM, Hartel G, Toombs M, Irvine KM, Powell EE. Hospitalisation for cirrhosis in Australia: disparities in presentation and outcomes for Indigenous Australians. *Int J Equity Health* 2020; **19**: 27 [PMID: 32066438 DOI: 10.1186/s12939-020-1144-6]

11 **Zhao Y**, Zhang X, Foley M, Guthridge S. Northern Territory Burden of Disease Study; Fatal Burden of Disease and Injury, 2004-2013. Department of Health, Darwin, 2016. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://health.nt.gov.au/professionals/health-gains

12 **Wright R**, McCollum RW, Klatskin G. Australia antigen in acute and chronic liver disease. *Lancet* 1969; **2**: 117-121 [PMID: 4183241 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(69)92437-4]

13 **Heppell M**, Wigle JJ. The Australian Black out in Alice A history of the establishment and development of town camps in Alice Springs. *Australian Nat Uni Dev Stu Centre Monograph* 1981; 26 [DOI: 10.1111/ajph.12431]

14 **National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC)**. Australian Guidelines to reduce health risks from Drinking Alcohol. NHMRC, 2020. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/about-us/publications/australian-guidelines-reduce-health-risks-drinking-alcohol

15 **Parker C**, Tong SY, Dempsey K, Condon J, Sharma SK, Chen JW, Sievert W, Davis JS. Hepatocellular carcinoma in Australia's Northern Territory: high incidence and poor outcome. *Med J Aust* 2014; **201**: 470-474 [PMID: 25332035 DOI: 10.5694/mja13.11117]

16 **Hong TP**, Gow PJ, Fink M, Dev A, Roberts SK, Nicoll A, Lubel JS, Kronborg I, Arachchi N, Ryan M, Kemp WW, Knight V, Sundararajan V, Desmond P, Thompson AJ, Bell SJ. Surveillance improves survival of patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective population-based study. *Med J Aust* 2018; **209**: 348-354 [PMID: 30309301 DOI: 10.5694/mja18.00373]

17 **Condon JR**, Warman G, Arnold L. The health and welfare of Territorians. Epidemiology Branch, Territory Health Services, Darwin, 2001. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://digitallibrary.health.nt.gov.au/prodjspui/handle/10137/114

18 **Zhao Y**, Dempsey K. Causes of inequality in life expectancy between Indigenous and non-Indigenous people in the Northern Territory, 1981-2000: a decomposition analysis. *Med J Aust* 2006; **184**: 490-494 [PMID: 16719745 DOI: 10.5694/j.1326-5377.2006.tb00340.x]

19 **Australian Bureau of Statistics**. Census of Population and Housing: Characteristics of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander Australians. Australian Bureau of Statistics, 2016. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://www.abs.gov.au/statistics/people/aboriginal-and-torres-strait-islander-peoples/census-population-and-housing-characteristics-aboriginal-and-torres-strait-islander-australians/Latest-release

20 **Einsiedel LJ**, van Iersel E, Macnamara R, Spelman T, Heffernan M, Bray L, Morris H, Porter B, Davis A. Self-discharge by adult Aboriginal patients at Alice Springs Hospital, Central Australia: insights from a prospective cohort study. *Aust Health Rev* 2013; **37**: 239-245 [PMID: 23257238 DOI: 10.1071/AH11087]

21 **McBain-Rigg KE**, Veitch C. Cultural barriers to health care for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islanders in Mount Isa. *Aust J Rural Health* 2011; **19**: 70-74 [PMID: 21438948 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1584.2011.01186.x]

22 **Skog OJ**. The risk function for liver cirrhosis from lifetime alcohol consumption. *J Stud Alcohol* 1984; **45**: 199-208 [PMID: 6748660 DOI: 10.15288/jsa.1984.45.199]

23 **Australian Institute of Health and Welfare**. National Drug Strategy Household Survey Report. Australian Institute of Health and Welfare, 2011. [cited 10 July 2021]. Available from: https://www.aihw.gov.au/about-our-data/our-data-collections/national-drug-strategy-household-survey

24 **Iida-Ueno A**, Enomoto M, Tamori A, Kawada N. Hepatitis B virus infection and alcohol consumption. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 2651-2659 [PMID: 28487602 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i15.2651]

25 **Wylie L**, McConkey S. Insiders' Insight: Discrimination against Indigenous Peoples through the Eyes of Health Care Professionals. *J Racial Ethn Health Disparities* 2019; **6**: 37-45 [PMID: 29736617 DOI: 10.1007/s40615-018-0495-9]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 570-582

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Cohort Study

Risk factors and prediction of acute kidney injury after liver transplantation: Logistic regression and artificial neural network approaches

Luis Cesar Bredt, Luis Alberto Batista Peres, Michel Risso, Leandro Cavalcanti de Albuquerque Leite Barros

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Balakrishnan DS, Byeon H, Kumar I

Received: September 27, 2021
Peer-review started: September 27, 2021
First decision: December 2, 2021
Revised: December 10, 2021
Accepted: February 16, 2022
Article in press: February 16, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Luis Cesar Bredt, Department of Surgical Oncology and Hepatobilary Surgery, Unioeste, Cascavel 85819-110, Paraná, Brazil

Luis Alberto Batista Peres, Department of Nephrology, Unioeste, Cascavel 85819-110, Paraná, Brazil

Michel Risso, Department of Internal Medicine, Assis Gurgacz University, Cascavel 85000, Paraná, Brazil

Leandro Cavalcanti de Albuquerque Leite Barros, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, Unioeste, Cascavel 85819-110, Paraná, Brazil

Corresponding author: Luis Cesar Bredt, FRCS (Gen Surg), MD, PhD, Full Professor, Surgeon, Department of Surgical Oncology and Hepatobilary Surgery, Unioeste, Tancredo Neves Avenue, Cascavel 85819-110, Paraná, Brazil. lcbredt@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Acute kidney injury (AKI) has serious consequences on the prognosis of patients undergoing liver transplantation. Recently, artificial neural network (ANN) was reported to have better predictive ability than the classical logistic regression (LR) for this postoperative outcome.

AIM

To identify the risk factors of AKI after deceased-donor liver transplantation (DDLT) and compare the prediction performance of ANN with that of LR for this complication.

METHODS

Adult patients with no evidence of end-stage kidney dysfunction (KD) who underwent the first DDLT according to model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score allocation system was evaluated. AKI was defined according to the International Club of Ascites criteria, and potential predictors of postoperative AKI were identified by LR. The prediction performance of both ANN and LR was tested.

RESULTS

The incidence of AKI was 60.6% (n = 88/145) and the following predictors were identified by LR: MELD score > 25 (odds ratio [OR] = 1.999), preoperative kidney dysfunction (OR = 1.279), extended criteria donors (OR = 1.191), intraoperative arterial hypotension (OR = 1.935), intraoperative massive blood transfusion (MBT) (OR = 1.830), and postoperative serum lactate (SL) (OR = 2.001). The area under the receiver-operating characteristic curve was best for ANN (0.81, 95% confidence interval [CI]: 0.75-0.83) than for LR (0.71, 95%CI: 0.67-0.76). The root-mean-square error and mean absolute error in the ANN model were 0.47 and 0.38, respectively.

CONCLUSION

The severity of liver disease, pre-existing kidney dysfunction, marginal grafts, hemodynamic instability, MBT, and SL are predictors of postoperative AKI, and ANN has better prediction performance than LR in this scenario.

Key Words: Logistic regression; Liver transplantation; Acute kidney injury; Machine learning; Artificial neural network

Core Tip: This study aimed to identify the risk factors of acute kidney injury (AKI) after deceased-donor liver transplantation and compare the performance of artificial neural network (ANN) with that of logistic regression (LR) analysis to predict this complication. LR analysis revealed the following predictors of AKI: Previous kidney dysfunction, marginal grafts, intra-operative arterial hypotension, massive blood transfusion, and serum lactate. ANN prediction had better performance than LR in this scenario.

Citation: Bredt LC, Peres LAB, Risso M, Barros LCAL. Risk factors and prediction of acute kidney injury after liver transplantation: Logistic regression and artificial neural network approaches. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 570-582

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/570.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570

INTRODUCTION

Among the possible complications of complex abdominal and liver procedures, acute kidney injury (AKI) should be considered a major cause of postoperative morbidity and mortality[1-6]. Updated data report a 0.9%-17.9% incidence of AKI after liver resection[7-9], and 4%-94% after LT[10,11], either living-donor (LDLT) or deceased-donor LT (DDLT). Although there is a lack of a reported standard definition of postoperative AKI[12] after DDLT, it is of fundamental importance to identify patients at risk for AKI after LT, ideally by the set of preoperative clinical evaluation, as well as by the complementary information of the intraoperative period, thus enabling the adoption of preventive measures or early therapies for AKI in the postoperative period.

There are many studies available based on deep learning models for different clinical purposes in distinct fields of medicine, such as for complex imaging acquisition and processing[13-17], and artificial neural network (ANN) as a deep learning modality is commonly used to solve complex problems, where the behavior of variables is not rigorously known. In the specific field of AKI after LT, along with other machine learning techniques (gradient boosting machine, random forest, decision tree, support vector machine, naïve Bayes, and deep belief network), ANN has already been compared to multivariable logistic regression (LR) regarding their prediction performance[18]. We hypothesized that ANN would be a feasible alternative with higher performance than the classic LR model, reinforcing the wide applicability of ANN and its ability to learn from input data with or without supervision.

The multifactorial origin of AKI after LT makes it complex to predict which candidate for the procedure has an increased risk of this complication, and in the face of this complexity, along with the classical LR, ANN would be a very reliable prognostic tool for AKI risk assessment, where the relative risk term is parameterized by an ANN instead of regression, enabling the application of deep learning, whereas comparative studies evaluating such a promising tool for predicting AKI following LT are scarce[19-20].

In face of this serious postoperative complication, this retrospective study of patients who underwent only-first DDLT aimed to identify the risk factors for postoperative AKI and compare the prediction performance of ANN with that of LR for this complication.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study design

A retrospective study was conducted on patients of both sexes, aged > 18 yr, diagnosed with liver cirrhosis and portal hypertension (platelets < 100000/mm^3, splenomegaly and/or esophageal varices), eventually associated with hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), and undergoing the first DDLT at a tertiary referral hospital between September 2017 and June 2021. The patients were allocated according to Model for End-Stage Liver Disease (MELD) score, with no evidence of end-stage kidney disease. The MELD score was dichotomized at 25 points for statistical purposes according to Romano *et al*[21], and the minimum hospital stay was 7 d according to Wong *et al*[22] and the International Club of Ascites (ICA) definitions for the onset of AKI[23].

Renal dysfunction definitions

Kidney dysfunction (KD) subtypes were defined according to Wong *et al*[22] (Table 1) and the ICA definitions (Table 2)[23], and both the acute deterioration of renal function and the background CKD could be structural or functional in nature, including hepatorenal syndrome (HRS) types 1 and 2 (Table 3)[23]. Estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) was calculated by the Modified Diet in Renal Disease 6 (MDRD6) formula: eGFR = 198 × [serum creatinine (mg/dL)$^{-0.858}$ × age$^{-0.167}$ × 0.822 if patient is female × 1.178 if patient is black] × [serum urea nitrogen concentration (mg/dL)]$^{-0.293}$ × [urine urea nitrogen excretion (g/d)]$^{0.249}$[3].

Graft definitions

Marginal liver grafts of extended criteria donor (ECD) were defined as grafts with three or more of the following donor features: > 60 yr, body mass index (BMI) > 27-30 kg/m^2, macrovesicular steatosis > 30%, intensive care unit (ICU) stay > 4 d, sustained arterial hypotension > 1 h, cold ischemia times (CIT) > 8 h, warm ischemia times (WIT) > 40-45 min, controlled sepsis, history of alcoholism, serum creatinine > 1.2 mg/dL, arterial hypotensive episodes < 60 mmHg for > 1 h, bilirubin > 2.0 mg/dL, alanine transaminase (ALT) > 170 U/L and aspartate transaminase (AST) > 140 U/L, the use of dopamine doses > 10 microg/kg per min, and peak serum sodium > 155 mEq/L[24-26].

Routine biopsy was performed on the donor allograft for all patients included in the study. Liver specimens were evaluated by hematoxylin and eosin staining using either frozen or permanent section. Macrovesicular steatosis was defined as a single vacuole larger than the nucleus, replacing most of the hepatocyte cytoplasm and displacing the nucleus to the cell membrane[27]. Macrosteatosis was categorized as no steatosis (< 5%), mild steatosis (10%-29%), moderate steatosis (30%-60%), and severe steatosis (> 60%)[28].

Hemodynamic status and monitoring

Fluid administration consisted of a baseline infusion of a balanced crystalloid (Plasmalyte, Baxter, Belgium) with or without 4% albumin (depending on patient conditions). Rapid infusers, perfusion heaters, and a Cell Saver (Haemonetics, Massachusetts, EUA) for blood recovery were ready for use prior to induction. In accordance to American Society of Anaesthesiologists (ASA) guidelines, Cell Saver has effectiveness in reducing the volume of allogeneic blood transfused[29].

A Flow Trac/EV1000 System (Edwards Lifesciences, Irvine, USA) was inserted and hemodynamic interventions were guided using continuous cardiac index (CCI), stroke volume index (SVI), mixed venous oxygen saturation (SvO_2), central venous pressure (CVP), and mean arterial pressure (MAP). Fluids were administered if SVI was < 30 mL/m^2 and/or CCI < 2 L/min/m^2 for compensation for blood loss *via* 250-500 mL fluid boluses of Plasmalyte, to strictly maintain MAP > 65 mmHg, avoiding hemodynamic instability as described elsewhere[30,31].

Blood loss monitoring consisted of visual assessment of the surgical field, including the extent of blood present, presence of microvascular bleeding, surgical sponges, clot size and shape, and volume in suction canister. In case of active hemorrhage, blood product administration was guided by using rotational thromboelastometry monitoring *via* ROTEM (Tem Innovations GmbH, Munich, Germany), hemoglobin/hematocrit monitoring, coagulation tests (international normalized ratio [INR]), activated partial thromboplastin time [aPTT], fibrinogen concentration [normal range: 200 to 400 mg/dL], and platelet count[29]. Whereas there is no clear evidence that ROTEM improved survival in LT patients, it was effective in reducing bleeding and fewer patients required both platelets and fresh frozen plasma (FFP) transfusion[32]. Monitoring for perfusion of vital organs included standard ASA monitoring, renal monitoring (urine output), and analysis of arterial blood gases and serum (SL) level (cutoff of 2.0 mmol/L)[29].

Massive blood transfusion (MBT) protocol for avoidance of dilutional coagulopathy was activated when hemorrhage was expected to be massive (anticipated need to replace 50% or more of blood volume within 2 h), or bleeding continued after the transfusion of 4 units of packed red blood cells (PRBC) within a short period of time (1-2 h), or systolic blood pressure (SBP) was below 90 mmHg and heart rate was above 120 beats per minute in the presence of uncontrolled bleeding[33]. According to the Pragmatic Randomized Optimal Platelet and Plasma Ratios (PROPPR) study group recommendations,

Table 1 Diagnostic criteria for kidney dysfunction in cirrhosis (Wong *et al*[22], 2011)

Diagnosis	Definition
AKI	Rise in serum creatinine of > 50% from baseline or rise of sCr by > 26.4 mmol/L (> 0.3 mg/dL) in < 48 h; HRS type 1 is a specific form of AKI
CKD	eGFR of < 60 mL/min for > 3 mo calculated using MDRD6 formula; HRS type 2 is a specific form of CKD
ACKD	Rise in serum creatinine of > 50% from baseline or rise of sCr by > 26.4 mmol/L (> 0.3 mg/dL) in < 48 h in a patient with cirrhosis whose eGFR is < 60 ml/min for > 3 mo calculated using MDRD6 formula

AKI: Acute kidney injury; sCr: Serum creatinine; HRS: Hepatorenal syndrome; CKD: Chronic kidney disease; eGFR: Estimated glomerular filtration rate; ACKD: Acute on chronic kidney disease; MDRD6: Modification of Diet in Renal Disease 6.

Table 2 Definition and classification of acute kidney injury for patients with liver cirrhosis according to the International Club of Ascites (Angeli *et al*[23], 2015)

Baseline sCr	A sCr value obtained in 3 mo prior to hospital admission, with preference to the value dated the closest to hospital admission. In patients without a previous sCr value, the value on admission should be used
AKI definition	Increase in sCr ≥ 0.3 mg/dL (≥ 26.5 μmol/L) within 48 h; or the percentage increase in sCr ≥ 50%, which occurred in the last 7 d
Stage 1 AKI	Increase in sCr ≥ 0.3 mg/dL (26.5 μmol/L) or an increase of 1.5 to 2 times the baseline value
Stage 2 AKI	Increase of sCr 2 to 3 times the baseline value
Stage 3 AKI	Increase in sCr > 3 times the baseline or sCr ≥ 4.0 mg/dL (353.6 μmol/L), with acute increase in sCr ≥ 0.3 mg/dL (26.5 μmol/L) or onset of RRT

AKI: Acute kidney injury; ICA: International Club of Ascites. sCr: Serum creatinine; RRT: Renal replacement therapy.

Table 3 Diagnostic criteria and hepatorenal syndrome subtypes (Angeli *et al*[23], 2015)

Diagnostic criteria for HRS	HRS subtype
1) Presence of cirrhosis or ascites; 2) sCr > 1.5 mg/dL or 133 μmoles/L; 3) No improvement in sCr (below 1.5 mg/dL) after at least 48 h of diuretic withdrawal and volume expansion with albumin; 4) Absence of shock; 5) Has not undergone recent treatment with nephrotoxic drugs; 6) Absence of parenchymal kidney disease as indicated by proteinuria less than 500 mg/d, microhematuria (less than 50 erythrocytes/high-magnification field), and/or abnormal renal ultrasound findings	HRS type 1-Rapidly progressive renal failure defined as the doubling of initial serum creatinine to a level greater than 2.5 mg/dL or 220 μmoles/L in less than 3 wk, and associated with a very poor prognosis; HRS type 2-Moderate renal failure (sCr > 1.5 mg/dL or 133 μmoles/L), following a stable or slowly progressive course, often associated with refractory ascites

HRS: Hepatorenal syndrome; sCr: Serum creatinine.

blood transfusion of RBC, fresh frozen plasma (FFP), and platelets were at a 1:1:1 ratio[34].

Postreperfusion (PRS) was defined as a decrease in MAP > 30% below the baseline value, for at least 1 min, occurring during the first 5 min after reperfusion of the liver graft, asystole, or hemodynamically significant arrhythmias, or the need to start the infusion of vasopressors during the postreperfusion period[35]. Intraoperative arterial hypotension (IOAH) was defined as MAP less than 65-60 mmHg for at least 5 min, or any exposure to MAP less than 55-50 mmHg[31], irrespective of the cause: Prolonged surgery time, massive bleeding, PRS, and/or hemodynamic instability because of end-stage liver disease.

Statistical analysis

The baseline characteristics of the patients are expressed in absolute values, the mean ± SD, and percentages, when appropriate. The comparison between groups was performed for continuous variables using the Kruskal-Wallis test and the Mann-Whitney test. The assumptions were made to perform or not the parametric tests, and the categorical variables were compared using the chi-square test. Independent variables with significance in the univariate model was selected for the bootstrap classical LR model to assess the effect of bivariate independent variables (graft quality, patients characteristics, and intraoperative events) on the incidence of postoperative AKI. The results of the model are expressed by odds ratio (OR), together with the corresponding 95% confidence intervals [CIs], Nagelkerke R2 statistic, and Hosmer and Lemeshow goodness of fit test. P values < 0.05 were considered significant. A relationship map between the significant variables in the LR model was also

Table 4 Acute kidney injury stages according to International Club of Ascites criteria (*n* = 145)

Overall incidence (*n* = 88)	Stage 1 (*n* = 22)	Stage 2 (*n* = 36)	Stage 3/RRT (*n* = 30/12)
60.6%	15.1%	24.8%	20.6/8.7%

RRT: Renal replacement therapy.

constructed.

The explanatory variables selected in the LR model were used for the ANN machine learning. Before developing prediction models, our collected data were divided into 70% of training dataset cases and 30% of test dataset cases. The cases in the training dataset were used for developing machine learning models. The ANN method had its own hyperparameters (number of layers in multilayer perceptron ANN), with a 10-fold cross-validation. This cross-validation process was used for developing the model, and performance was evaluated. The activation function of the hidden layer was made by hyperbolic tangent activation function, and Softmax for the output layer. All possible combinations of hyperparameters were investigated, and the hyperparameters with the highest average validation AUROC (area under the receiver-operating characteristic curve) were considered as optimal hyperparameters, and after that, the final model was tested for performance by root-mean-square error (RMSE) and mean absolute error (MAE) calculation. The importance of variables for the model was calculated. ANN structural model was constructed according to Haykin[36].

Our primary analysis attempted to analyze the prediction ability of machine learning and LR model in terms of AUROC. Accuracy was defined as the sum of the number of cases with true positive and true negative results divided by the total number of test sets. Statistical calculations were performed using the SPSS 28.0 software for Windows.

RESULTS

During the period from September 2017 to June 2021, 145 DDLT cases were included in the present study. Of the total patients included, 88 (60.6%) presented any further stage of postoperative AKI during the 7-d follow-up, 22 (15.1%) developed stage 1 AKI, 36 (24.8%) developed stage 2, and 30 (20.6%) developed stage 3 AKI (Table 4); renal replacement therapy (RRT) was required in 12 patients (8.7%). All patients' preoperative baseline information, donors, and grafts characteristics according to the occurrence of AKI are shown in Tables 5 and 6. The intraoperative data related to IOAH, blood derivatives transfusion, and piggy-back clamping, and laboratorial tests until the seventh postoperative (PO) day are shown in Table 7.

In the LR analysis, Nagelkerke R2 statistic was 0.147. Hosmer and Lemeshow goodness of fit test was not significant at 5% (P = 0.247). The six following factors were confirmed as predictors (Table 8): Biological (not adjusted) MELD score ≥ 25 (OR = 1.999, 95%CI = 1.586-2.503, P < 0.001), pre-existing KD (OR = 1.279, 95%CI = 0.916-1.686, P < 0.001), ECD (OR = 1.191, 95%CI = 0.711-1.787, P = 0.002), IOAH (OR = 1.935, 95%CI = 1.505-2.344, P < 0.001), MBT (OR = 1.830, 95%CI = 1.428-2.241, P < 0.001), serum lactate at the end of LT (OR = 2.001, 95%CI = 1.616-2.421, P < 0.001). The relationships between the significant variables were explored by a relationship map detailed in Figure 1.

Data of the two models with regard to AUROC for predicting AKI of all stages are detailed in Figure 2. ANN had the largest test AUROC (0.81, 95%CI: 0.75-0.83) and highest accuracy (0.68) than LR analysis [AUROC (0.71, 95%CI: 0.67 to 0.76), accuracy = 0.68].

Importance plot for ANN is shown in Figure 3 (KD and MELD score ranked first and second, respectively). Multilayer perceptron ANN presented one hidden layer by hyperbolic tangent activation function with four nodes in the layer, as presented in the ANN structural model diagram (Figure 4), and the prediction RMSE was 0.47 and the prediction MAE was 0.38.

DISCUSSION

As described elsewhere[36], the findings in the present study demonstrated a high incidence of postoperative AKI, and the predictive ability of ANN and LR models for this complication. An important point in this research is that AKI prediction was focused on the identification of significant risk factors at the end of the procedure, thus enabling the adoption of preventive measures or early therapies for AKI in the postoperative period.

In the present study, the severity of chronic liver disease, pre-existing KD, marginal grafts, hemodynamic instability, MBT, and consequent inadequate tissue perfusion during LT were predictors of AKI after DDLT, and the relationship map illustrated through a visual pattern, the relationship

Table 5 Patients' preoperative baseline information according to the occurrence of acute kidney injury after deceased-donor liver transplantation (*n* = 145)

	No AKI (*n* = 57)	AKI (*n* = 88)	*P* value
Male gender, *n* (%)	29 (50.8)	49 (55.6)	0.441
Age (yr), mean (± SD)	53.2 (± 13.56)	56.2 (± 13.26)	0.352
BMI, mean (± SD)	18.2(± 4.54)	22.7 (± 4.92)	0.065
Biological MELD score, mean (± SD)	21.67 (± 2.15)	26.05 (± 3.05)	< 0.001
Previous ascites, *n* (%)	24 (42.1)	52 (59.0)	0.013
Previous encephalopathy, *n* (%)	18 (31.5)	39 (44.3)	0.025
Previous upper digestive bleeding, *n* (%)	21 (36.8)	45 (51.1)	0.018
Preexisting KD, *n* (%)	15 (26.3)	60 (68.1)	< 0.001
HCC, *n* (%)	20 (35.0)	37 (42.0)	0.069
Systemic arterial hypertension, *n* (%)	28 (49.1)	46 (52.2)	0.083
Diabetes mellitus, *n* (%)	23 (40.3)	43 (48.8)	0.254

AKI: Acute kidney injury; LT: Liver transplantation; SD: Standard deviation; KD; Kidney dysfunction; BMI: Body mass index; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

Table 6 Donor and graft characteristics according to the occurrence of acute kidney injury after deceased-donor liver transplantation (*n* = 145)

	No AKI (*n* = 57)	AKI (*n* = 88)	*P* value
Donor > 60 yr, *n* (%)	16 (28.0)	31 (35.2)	0.346
Donor BMI > 27-30 kg/m^2, *n* (%)	14(24.5)	28 (31.8)	0.039
Graft macrosteatosis > 30%, *n* (%)	11 (19.2)	32 (36.3)	0.024
GCIT > 8 h, *n* (%)	0	0	-
GWIT > 40-45 min	38 (66.6)	54 (61.3)	0.349
Donor ICU stay > 4 d, *n* (%)	11 (19.2)	22 (25.0)	0.088
Donor controlled sepsis, *n* (%)	05 (8.7)	11 (12.5)	0.061
History of alcoholism of donor, *n* (%)	08 (14.0)	15 (17.0)	0.255
Donor sCr > 1.2 mg/dL, *n* (%)	16 (28.0)	31 (35.2)	0.024
Donor hypotensive episodes (< 60 mmHg) > 1 h, *n* (%)	10 (17.5)	18 (20.4)	0.127
Donor serum bilirubin > 2.0 mg/dL, *n* (%)	25 (43.8)	48 (54.5)	0.087
Donor serum ALT > 170 U/L, *n* (%)	11 (19.2)	22 (25.0)	0.073
Donor serum AST > 140 U/L, *n* (%)	05 (8.7)	13 (14.7)	0.023
Use of dopamine doses > 10 microg/kg per min, *n* (%)	10 (17.5)	13 (14.7)	0.176
Donor peak serum sodium > 155 mEq/L, *n* (%)	02 (3.5)	5 (5.6)	0.219
ECD (3 or more factors above), *n* (%)	07 (12.2)	31 (35.2)	< 0.001

AKI: Acute kidney injury; LT: Liver transplantation; BMI: Body mass index; GCIT: Graft cold ischemia times; GWIT: Graft warm ischemia times; ICU: Intensive care unit: sCr: Serum creatinine; ALT: Alanine transaminase; AST: Aspartate transaminase; ECD: Extended criteria donor.

between the variables, although it is important to understand that a visual relationship does not always mean statistical causation. As demonstrated in our study, in the case of machine learning-based techniques, the importance of each variable in the dataset can be indicated by the characteristic importance measure, which can improve the transparency of the algorithm according to He *et al*[20].

Table 7 Intraoperative events in 145 deceased-donor liver transplantations according to the occurrence of postoperative acute kidney injury

	Without AKI (*n* = 57)	With AKI (*n* = 88)	*P* value
IOAH (bleeding/PRS), *n* (%)	14 (24.5)	54 (61.3)	< 0.001
MBT, *n* (%)	5 (8.7)	15 (17.0)	< 0.001
Vasoactive drugs, *n* (%)	38(66.6)	48 (54.5)	0.197
Cryoprecipitate transfusion, *n* (%)	10 (17.5)	18 (20.4)	0.169
Piggy-back clamping, *n* (%)	30 (52.6)	48 (54.5)	0.072
SL (mmol/L) at the end of LT, mean (± SD)	1.4 (± 0.3)	2.8 (± 0.7)	< 0.001
Lower serum fibrinogen (mg/dL), mean (± SD)	242 (± 34)	214 (± 24)	0.090

AKI: Acute kidney injury; IOAH: Intraoperative arterial hypotension; MBT: Massive blood transfusion; SL: Serum lactate; SD: Standard deviation.

Table 8 Logistic regression analysis of risk factors for acute kidney injury after deceased-donor liver transplantation (*n* = 145)

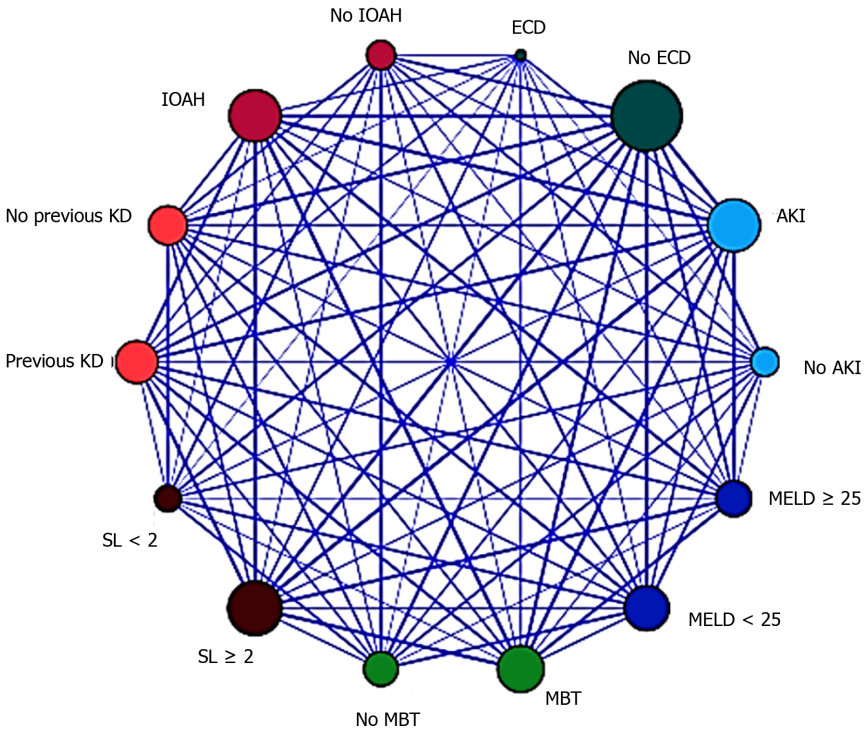
Logistic regression	Beta coeficient	OR	95%CI		*P* value
Biological MELD score ≥ 25	0.194	1.999	1.586	2.503	< 0.001
Pre-existing KD, *n* (%)	0.115	1.279	0.916	1.686	< 0.001
ECD (3 or more factors above)	0.911	1.191	0.711	1.787	0.002
IOAH (bleeding/PRS), *n* (%)	0.169	1.935	1.505	2.344	< 0.001
MBT, n (%)	0.125	1.830	1.428	2.241	< 0.001
SL (mmol/L) ≥ 2.0 at the end of LT	0.110	2.001	1.616	2.421	< 0.001

Hosmer and Lemeshow goodness of fit test not significant at 5% (P = 0.701); Nagelkerke R2 statistic = 0.163). LR: Logistic regression; AKI: Acute kidney injury; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; OR: Odds ratio; CI: Confidence interval; KD: Kidney dysfunction; ECD: Extended criteria donor; IOAH: Intra-operative arterial hypotension; MBT: Massive blood transfusion; SL: Serum lactate.

According to our results, ANN had larger AUROC and higher accuracy to predict AKI after DDLT than LR, which is consistent with the previous study with different machine learning tools, whereas the performance of the ANN was inferior to that of all other machine learning techniques in prediction of AKI after LT[19]. Multilayer perceptron has already been associated to a good performance in predicting in-hospital mortality, reinforcing the good performance of ANN to predict clinical outcomes, although there have been some reports that the performance of the machine learning techniques is not superior to that of LR model in predicting mortality[18].

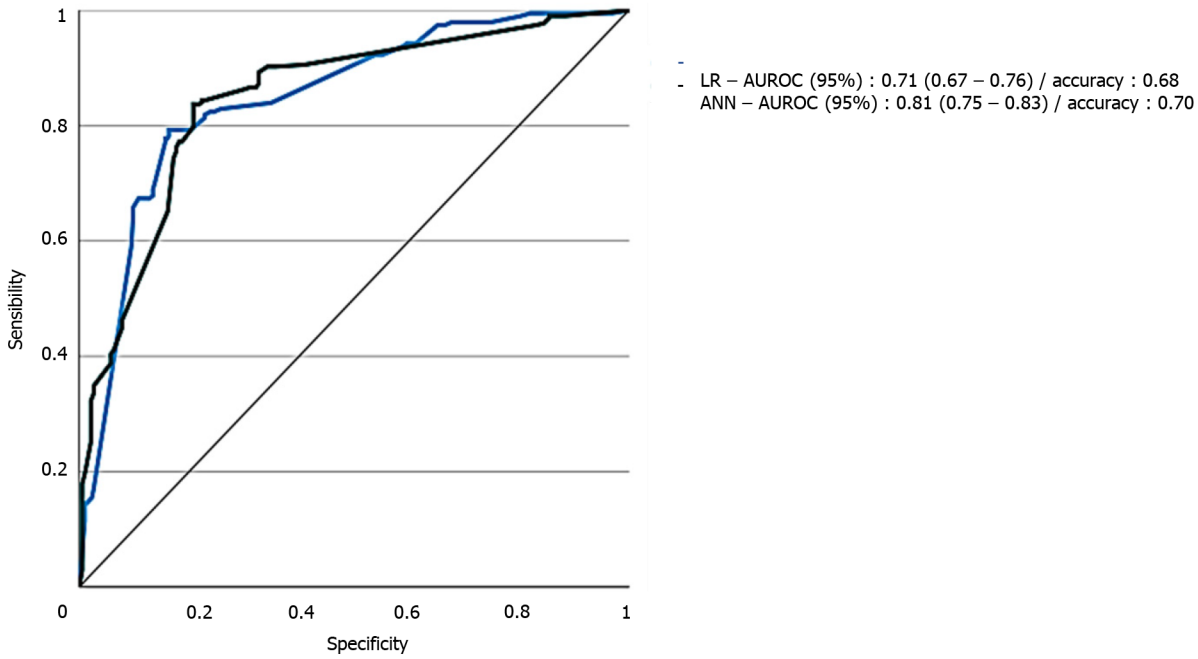
Regarding the risk factors identified in the present research, several other authors have already described that higher MELD scores[37] were associated with AKI after LT[20,38]. Xu *et al*[21] showed that MELD score > 25 was a predictor of AKI, and in patients with MELD scores > 30, the most required RRT [11,39]. Moreover, in the cirrhosis scenario, the functional renal disorders can be added as risk factors for AKI, such as recipient HRS[11,23,40]. Donor marginal liver grafts of ECD were identified elsewhere as a strong predictor of PGD[24-26] and post-LT AKI[20]. Patients undergoing LT can experience IOAH and consequent AKI because of multiple factors, including the duration of surgery, massive bleeding[16, 40-42], the severity of the PRS[36,43,44], and the severity of the end-stage liver disease[21,45-49]. In addition, MBT may be an additional risk factor for postoperative AKI[34,49,50].

The present retrospective study has important limitations, regarding sample size and moreover, the lack of evaluation of clinical outcomes of patients according to the occurrence of post-LT AKI, either for short or long-term evolution of patients. Despite these limitations, the high incidence of AKI reported highlights the importance of this issue, and the predictors identified may provide a focus for further research. ANN methods may provide feasible tools for forecasting AKI after LT, and perhaps provide a high-performance predictive model that may ultimately improve perioperative management of these patients at risk for this serious complication.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Relationship map between the selected variables in the logistic regression for acute kidney injury after deceased-donor liver transplantation (*n* = 145). MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; KD: Kidney dysfunction; ECD: Extended criteria donor; IOAH: Intra-operative arterial hypotension; MBT: Massive blood transfusion; SL: Serum lactate. LR: Logistic regression; AKI: Acute kidney injury.

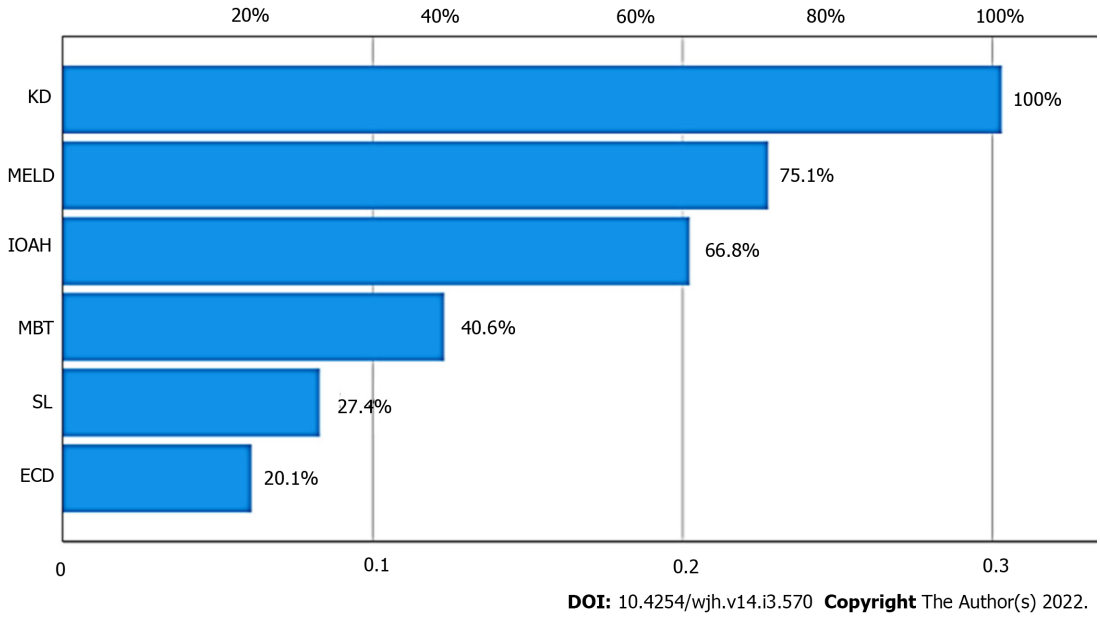


DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Area under the receiver-operating characteristic curve of the two different models for predicting acute kidney injury (*n* = 145). LR: Logistic regression; AUROC: Area under the receiver-operating characteristic curve; ANN: Artificial neural network; AKI: Acute kidney injury.

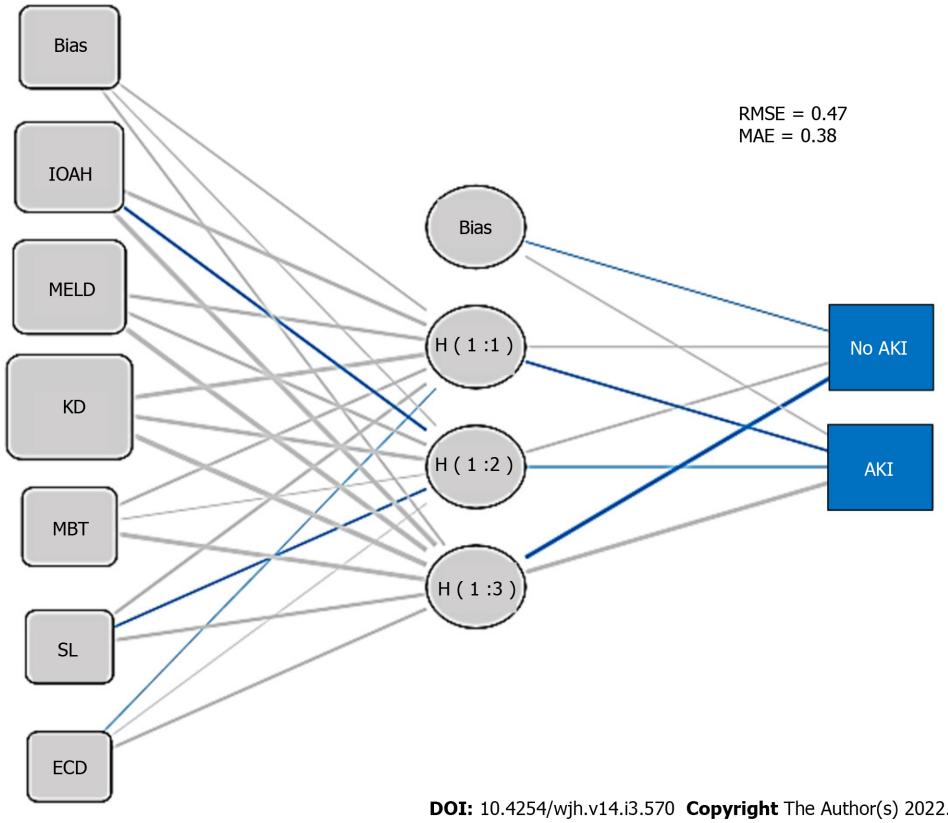
CONCLUSION

According to our results, the severity of chronic liver disease, pre-existing KD, marginal grafts, hemodynamic instability, MBT, and inadequate tissue perfusion during LT are predictors of AKI after



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570

Figure 3 Variance importance plot of predictors of acute kidney injury for artificial neural network. KD: Kidney dysfunction; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; IOAH: Intra-operative arterial hypotension; MBT: Massive blood transfusion; ECD: Extended criteria donor; AKI: Acute kidney injury; ANN: Artificial neural network.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.570

Figure 4 Artificial neural network structural model diagram for acute kidney injury after deceased-donor liver transplantation. IOAH: Intra-operative arterial hypotension; MELD: Model for End-stage Liver Disease; KD: Kidney dysfunction; MBT: Massive blood transfusion; ECD: Extended criteria donor; AKI: Acute kidney injury; ANN: Artificial neural network; RMSE: Root-mean-square error; MAE: Mean absolute error.

DDLT, and ANN has better prediction performance than LR in this scenario.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Acute kidney injury (AKI) post-liver transplantation (LT) is a serious complication, and its prediction with validated tools is crucial.

Research motivation

To improve the perioperative management of patient candidates for LT.

Research objectives

To identify the risk factors for AKI after deceased-donor liver transplantation (DDLT) and validate a prediction tool for this complication.

Research methods

Logistic regression (LR) analysis for predictor identification, and comparative analysis of artificial neural network (ANN) and LR prediction performance were performed.

Research results

The severity of liver disease, preexisting kidney dysfunction, marginal grafts, hemodynamic instability, massive blood transfusion, and SL were predictors of postoperative AKI, and ANN had better prediction performance than LR.

Research conclusions

ANN has better performance than the classical LR for AKI prediction after DDLT.

Research perspectives

A risk score of AKI after DDLT can be developed according to these identified predictors.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Bredt LC, Peres LAB, Risso M, and Barros LCAL contributed equally to this study with regard to conception and design, literature review and analysis, manuscript drafting, critical revision, and editing, and approval of the final version.

Institutional review board statement: The study was approved by the Research Ethics Board at Assis Gurgacz University (No. 4.190.165). The study was performed according to the ethical guidelines of the 1975 Declaration of Helsinki.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors that contributed equally to this manuscript declare no potential conflicts of interest and no financial support.

Data sharing statement: All authors declare that the original anonymous dataset is available on request from the corresponding author (lcbredt@gmail.com).

Country/Territory of origin: Brazil

ORCID number: Luis Cesar Bredt 0000-0002-8487-1790; Luis Alberto Batista Peres 0000-0001-5863-6720; Michel Risso 0000-0002-3268-0392; Leandro Cavalcanti de Albuquerque Leite Barros 0000-0003-1704-6868.

S-Editor: Wang LL
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Wang LL

REFERENCES

1 **Clavien PA**, Petrowsky H, DeOliveira ML, Graf R. Strategies for safer liver surgery and partial liver transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1545-1559 [PMID: 17429086 DOI: 10.1056/nejmra065156]

2 **Thongprayoon C**, Kaewput W, Thamcharoen N, Bathini T, Watthanasuntorn K, Lertjitbanjong P, Sharma K, Salim SA, Ungprasert P, Wijarnpreecha K, Kröner PT, Aeddula NR, Mao MA, Cheungpasitporn W. Incidence and Impact of Acute Kidney Injury after Liver Transplantation: A Meta-Analysis. *J Clin Med* 2019; **8** [PMID: 30884912 DOI: 10.3390/jcm8030372]

3 **Levey AS**, Bosch JP, Lewis JB, Greene T, Rogers N, Roth D. A more accurate method to estimate glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine: a new prediction equation. Modification of Diet in Renal Disease Study Group. *Ann Intern Med* 1999; **130**: 461-470 [PMID: 10075613 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-130-6-199903160-00002]

4 **Bihorac A**, Yavas S, Subbiah S, Hobson CE, Schold JD, Gabrielli A, Layon AJ, Segal MS. Long-term risk of mortality and acute kidney injury during hospitalization after major surgery. *Ann Surg* 2009; **249**: 851-858 [PMID: 19387314 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3181a40a0b]

5 **Abelha FJ**, Botelho M, Fernandes V, Barros H. Outcome and quality of life of patients with acute kidney injury after major surgery. *Nefrologia* 2009; **29**: 404-414 [PMID: 19820752 DOI: 10.3265/Nefrologia.2009.29.5.5456.en.full]

6 **Barri YM**, Sanchez EQ, Jennings LW, Melton LB, Hays S, Levy MF, Klintmalm GB. Acute kidney injury following liver transplantation: definition and outcome. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 475-483 [PMID: 19399734 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.21682]

7 **Tomozawa A**, Ishikawa S, Shiota N, Cholvisudhi P, Makita K. Perioperative risk factors for acute kidney injury after liver resection surgery: an historical cohort study. *Can J Anaesth* 2015; **62**: 753-761 [PMID: 25925634 DOI: 10.1007/s12630-015-0397-9]

8 **Lim C**, Audureau E, Salloum C, Levesque E, Lahat E, Merle JC, Compagnon P, Dhonneur G, Feray C, Azoulay D. Acute kidney injury following hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma: incidence, risk factors and prognostic value. *HPB (Oxford)* 2016; **18**: 540-548 [PMID: 27317959 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2016.04.004]

9 **Bredt LC**, Peres LAB. Risk factors for acute kidney injury after partial hepatectomy. *World J Hepatol* 2017; **9**: 815-822 [PMID: 28706580 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v9.i18.815]

10 **Kalisvaart M**, Schlegel A, Umbro I, de Haan JE, Polak WG, IJzermans JN, Mirza DF, Perera MTP, Isaac JR, Ferguson J, Mitterhofer AP, de Jonge J, Muiesan P. The AKI Prediction Score: a new prediction model for acute kidney injury after liver transplantation. *HPB (Oxford)* 2019; **21**: 1707-1717 [PMID: 31153834 DOI: 10.1016/j.hpb.2019.04.008]

11 **Zhou J**, Zhang X, Lyu L, Ma X, Miao G, Chu H. Modifiable risk factors of acute kidney injury after liver transplantation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Nephrol* 2021; **22**: 149 [PMID: 33888081 DOI: 10.1186/s12882-021-02360-8]

12 **Caragata R**, Wyssusek KH, Kruger P. Acute kidney injury following liver transplantation: a systematic review of published predictive models. *Anaesth Intensive Care* 2016; **44**: 251-261 [PMID: 27029658 DOI: 10.1177/0310057X1604400212]

13 **Bellotti R**, De Carlo F, Tangaro S, Gargano G, Maggipinto G, Castellano M, Massafra R, Cascio D, Fauci F, Magro R, Raso G, Lauria A, Forni G, Bagnasco S, Cerello P, Zanon E, Cheran SC, Lopez Torres E, Bottigli U, Masala GL, Oliva P, Retico A, Fantacci ME, Cataldo R, De Mitri I, De Nunzio G. A completely automated CAD system for mass detection in a large mammographic database. *Med Phys* 2006; **33**: 3066-3075 [PMID: 16964885 DOI: 10.1118/1.2214177]

14 **Wang J**, Yang X, Cai H, Tan W, Jin C, Li L. Discrimination of Breast Cancer with Microcalcifications on Mammography by Deep Learning. *Sci Rep* 2016; **6**: 27327 [PMID: 27273294 DOI: 10.1038/srep27327]

15 **Kooi T**, Litjens G, van Ginneken B, Gubern-Mérida A, Sánchez CI, Mann R, den Heeten A, Karssemeijer N. Large scale deep learning for computer aided detection of mammographic lesions. *Med Image Anal* 2017; **35**: 303-312 [PMID: 27497072 DOI: 10.1016/j.media.2016.07.007]

16 **Chang PD**, Kuoy E, Grinband J, Weinberg BD, Thompson M, Homo R, Chen J, Abcede H, Shafie M, Sugrue L, Filippi CG, Su MY, Yu W, Hess C, Chow D. Hybrid 3D/2D Convolutional Neural Network for Hemorrhage Evaluation on Head CT. *AJNR Am J Neuroradiol* 2018; **39**: 1609-1616 [PMID: 30049723 DOI: 10.3174/ajnr.a5742]

17 **Rachmadi MF**, Valdés-Hernández MDC, Li H, Guerrero R, Meijboom R, Wiseman S, Waldman A, Zhang J, Rueckert D, Wardlaw J, Komura T. Limited One-time Sampling Irregularity Map (LOTS-IM) for Automatic Unsupervised Assessment of White Matter Hyperintensities and Multiple Sclerosis Lesions in Structural Brain Magnetic Resonance Images. *Comput Med Imaging Graph* 2020; **79**: 101685 [PMID: 31846826 DOI: 10.1016/j.compmedimag.2019.101685]

18 **Lee CK**, Hofer I, Gabel E, Baldi P, Cannesson M. Development and Validation of a Deep Neural Network Model for Prediction of Postoperative In-hospital Mortality. *Anesthesiology* 2018; **129**: 649-662 [PMID: 29664888 DOI: 10.1097/aln.0000000000002186]

19 **Lee HC**, Yoon SB, Yang SM, Kim WH, Ryu HG, Jung CW, Suh KS, Lee KH. Prediction of Acute Kidney Injury after Liver Transplantation: Machine Learning Approaches vs. Logistic Regression Model. *J Clin Med* 2018; **7** [PMID: 30413107 DOI: 10.3390/jcm7110428]

20 **He ZL**, Zhou JB, Liu ZK, Dong SY, Zhang YT, Shen T, Zheng SS, Xu X. Application of machine learning models for predicting acute kidney injury following donation after cardiac death liver transplantation. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2021; **20**: 222-231 [PMID: 33726966 DOI: 10.1016/j.hbpd.2021.02.001]

21 **Romano TG**, Schmidtbauer I, Silva FM, Pompilio CE, D'Albuquerque LA, Macedo E. Role of MELD score and serum creatinine as prognostic tools for the development of acute kidney injury after liver transplantation. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e64089 [PMID: 23717537 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0064089]

22 **Wong F**, Nadim MK, Kellum JA, Salerno F, Bellomo R, Gerbes A, Angeli P, Moreau R, Davenport A, Jalan R, Ronco C, Genyk Y, Arroyo V. Working Party proposal for a revised classification system of renal dysfunction in patients with cirrhosis. *Gut* 2011; **60**: 702-709 [PMID: 21325171 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.236133]

23 **Angeli P**, Gines P, Wong F, Bernardi M, Boyer TD, Gerbes A, Moreau R, Jalan R, Sarin SK, Piano S, Moore K, Lee SS, Durand F, Salerno F, Caraceni P, Kim WR, Arroyo V, Garcia-Tsao G; International Club of Ascites. Diagnosis and management of acute kidney injury in patients with cirrhosis: revised consensus recommendations of the International Club of Ascites. *Gut* 2015; **64**: 531-537 [PMID: 25631669 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2014-308874]

24 **Briceño J**, Ciria R, de la Mata M, Rufián S, López-Cillero P. Prediction of graft dysfunction based on extended criteria donors in the model for end-stage liver disease score era. *Transplantation* 2010; **90**: 530-539 [PMID: 20581766 DOI: 10.1097/TP.0b013e3181e86b11]

25 **Chen XB**, Xu MQ. Primary graft dysfunction after liver transplantation. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2014; **13**: 125-137 [PMID: 24686540 DOI: 10.1016/s1499-3872(14)60023-0]

26 **Chu MJ**, Dare AJ, Phillips AR, Bartlett AS. Donor Hepatic Steatosis and Outcome After Liver Transplantation: a Systematic Review. *J Gastrointest Surg* 2015; **19**: 1713-1724 [PMID: 25917535 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-015-2832-1]

27 **Rajamani AS**, Rammohan A, Sai VR, Rela M. Non-invasive real-time assessment of hepatic macrovesicular steatosis in liver donors: Hypothesis, design and proof-of-concept study. *World J Hepatol* 2021; **13**: 1208-1214 [PMID: 34786162 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v13.i10.1208]

28 **Ploeg RJ**, D'Alessandro AM, Knechtle SJ, Stegall MD, Pirsch JD, Hoffmann RM, Sasaki T, Sollinger HW, Belzer FO, Kalayoglu M. Risk factors for primary dysfunction after liver transplantation--a multivariate analysis. *Transplantation* 1993; **55**: 807-813 [PMID: 8475556 DOI: 10.1097/00007890-199304000-00024]

29 **American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management**. Practice guidelines for perioperative blood management: an updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Perioperative Blood Management. *Anesthesiology* 2015; **122**: 241-275 [PMID: 25545654 DOI: 10.1097/aln.0000000000000463]

30 **Salmasi V**, Maheshwari K, Yang D, Mascha EJ, Singh A, Sessler DI, Kurz A. Relationship between Intraoperative Hypotension, Defined by Either Reduction from Baseline or Absolute Thresholds, and Acute Kidney and Myocardial Injury after Noncardiac Surgery: A Retrospective Cohort Analysis. *Anesthesiology* 2017; **126**: 47-65 [PMID: 27792044 DOI: 10.1097/ALN.0000000000001432]

31 **Joosten A**, Lucidi V, Ickx B, Van Obbergh L, Germanova D, Berna A, Alexander B, Desebbe O, Carrier FM, Cherqui D, Adam R, Duranteau J, Saugel B, Vincent JL, Rinehart J, Van der Linden P. Intraoperative hypotension during liver transplant surgery is associated with postoperative acute kidney injury: a historical cohort study. *BMC Anesthesiol* 2021; **21**: 12 [PMID: 33430770 DOI: 10.1186/s12871-020-01228-y]

32 **Afshari A**, Wikkelsø A, Brok J, Møller AM, Wetterslev J. Thrombelastography (TEG) or thromboelastometry (ROTEM) to monitor haemotherapy versus usual care in patients with massive transfusion. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; CD007871 [PMID: 21412912 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd007871.pub2]

33 **Pacheco LD**, Saade GR, Costantine MM, Clark SL, Hankins GD. An update on the use of massive transfusion protocols in obstetrics. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; **214**: 340-344 [PMID: 26348379 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2015.08.068]

34 **Holcomb JB**, Tilley BC, Baraniuk S, Fox EE, Wade CE, Podbielski JM, del Junco DJ, Brasel KJ, Bulger EM, Callcut RA, Cohen MJ, Cotton BA, Fabian TC, Inaba K, Kerby JD, Muskat P, O'Keeffe T, Rizoli S, Robinson BR, Scalea TM, Schreiber MA, Stein DM, Weinberg JA, Callum JL, Hess JR, Matijevic N, Miller CN, Pittet JF, Hoyt DB, Pearson GD, Leroux B, van Belle G; PROPPR Study Group. Transfusion of plasma, platelets, and red blood cells in a 1:1:1 vs a 1:1:2 ratio and mortality in patients with severe trauma: the PROPPR randomized clinical trial. *JAMA* 2015; **313**: 471-482 [PMID: 25647203 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2015.12]

35 **Uemura T**, Randall HB, Sanchez EQ, Ikegami T, Narasimhan G, McKenna GJ, Chinnakotla S, Levy MF, Goldstein RM, Klintmalm GB. Liver retransplantation for primary nonfunction: analysis of a 20-year single-center experience. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 227-233 [PMID: 17256780 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.20992]

36 **Haykin S**. Neural networks: Principles and Practice. Bookman, 2001: 176-191 [DOI: 10.1002/0471221546]

37 **Malinchoc M**, Kamath PS, Gordon FD, Peine CJ, Rank J, ter Borg PC. A model to predict poor survival in patients undergoing transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunts. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 864-871 [PMID: 10733541 DOI: 10.1053/he.2000.5852]

38 **Wiesner RH**, McDiarmid SV, Kamath PS, Edwards EB, Malinchoc M, Kremers WK, Krom RA, Kim WR. MELD and PELD: application of survival models to liver allocation. *Liver Transpl* 2001; **7**: 567-580 [PMID: 11460223 DOI: 10.1053/jlts.2001.25879]

39 **Nadim MK**, Genyk YS, Tokin C, Fieber J, Ananthapanyasut W, Ye W, Selby R. Impact of the etiology of acute kidney injury on outcomes following liver transplantation: acute tubular necrosis versus hepatorenal syndrome. *Liver Transpl* 2012; **18**: 539-548 [PMID: 22250075 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.23384]

40 **Durand F**, Graupera I, Ginès P, Olson JC, Nadim MK. Pathogenesis of Hepatorenal Syndrome: Implications for Therapy. *Am J Kidney Dis* 2016; **67**: 318-328 [PMID: 26500178 DOI: 10.1053/j.ajkd.2015.09.013]

41 **Ginès P**, Schrier RW. Renal failure in cirrhosis. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1279-1290 [PMID: 19776409 DOI: 10.1056/nejmra0809139]

42 **Xu ZD**, Xu HT, Yuan HB, Zhang H, Ji RH, Zou Z, Fu ZR, Shi XY. Postreperfusion syndrome during orthotopic liver transplantation: a single-center experience. *Hepatobiliary Pancreat Dis Int* 2012; **11**: 34-39 [PMID: 22251468 DOI: 10.1016/s1499-3872(11)60123-9]

43 **Valentine E**, Gregorits M, Gutsche JT, Al-Ghofaily L, Augoustides JG. Clinical update in liver transplantation. *J Cardiothorac Vasc Anesth* 2013; **27**: 809-815 [PMID: 23849528 DOI: 10.1053/j.jvca.2013.03.031]

44 **Park MH**, Shim HS, Kim WH, Kim HJ, Kim DJ, Lee SH, Kim CS, Gwak MS, Kim GS. Clinical Risk Scoring Models for Prediction of Acute Kidney Injury after Living Donor Liver Transplantation: A Retrospective Observational Study. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0136230 [PMID: 26302370 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0136230]

45 **Lebrón Gallardo M**, Herrera Gutierrez ME, Seller Pérez G, Curiel Balsera E, Fernández Ortega JF, Quesada García G. Risk factors for renal dysfunction in the postoperative course of liver transplant. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10**: 1379-1385 [PMID: 15497160 DOI: 10.1002/Lt.20215]

46 **Utsumi M**, Umeda Y, Sadamori H, Nagasaka T, Takaki A, Matsuda H, Shinoura S, Yoshida R, Nobuoka D, Satoh D, Fuji T, Yagi T, Fujiwara T. Risk factors for acute renal injury in living donor liver transplantation: evaluation of the RIFLE criteria. *Transpl Int* 2013; **26**: 842-852 [PMID: 23855657 DOI: 10.1111/tri.12138]

47 **Lee SK**, Park JB, Kim SJ, Choi GS, Kim DJ, Kwon CH, Lee SK, Joh JW. Early postoperative renal dysfunction in the adult living donor liver transplantation. *Transplant Proc* 2007; **39**: 1517-1519 [PMID: 17580177 DOI:

10.1016/j.transproceed.2006.11.018]
48 **Licata A**, Mazzola A, Ingrassia D, Calvaruso V, Cammà C, Craxì A. Clinical implications of the hyperdynamic syndrome in cirrhosis. *Eur J Intern Med* 2014; **25**: 795-802 [PMID: 25245607 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2014.09.004]
49 **Karkouti K**, Wijeysundera DN, Yau TM, McCluskey SA, Chan CT, Wong PY, Crowther MA, Hozhabri S, Beattie WS. Advance targeted transfusion in anemic cardiac surgical patients for kidney protection: an unblinded randomized pilot clinical trial. *Anesthesiology* 2012; **116**: 613-621 [PMID: 22354243 DOI: 10.1097/ALN.0b013e3182475e39]
50 **van de Watering L**. Red cell storage and prognosis. *Vox Sang* 2011; **100**: 36-45 [PMID: 21175654 DOI: 10.1111/j.1423-0410.2010.01441.x]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 583-591

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.583

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Retrospective Study

Pediatric liver transplantation outcomes from a single center in Thailand

Sittichoke Prachuapthunyachart, Palittiya Sintusek, Chomchanat Tubjareon, Nataruks Chaijitraruch, Anapat Sanpavat, Teerasak Phewplung, Piyaporn Wanawongsawad, Ai-lada Intrarakamhang, Voranush Chongsrisawat

Specialty type: Pediatrics

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Yagi H

Received: August 1, 2021
Peer-review started: August 1, 2021
First decision: September 29, 2021
Revised: October 31, 2021
Accepted: February 19, 2022
Article in press: February 19, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Sittichoke Prachuapthunyachart, Palittiya Sintusek, Chomchanat Tubjareon, Voranush Chongsrisawat, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University and King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Palittiya Sintusek, Thai Pediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Immunology Research Unit, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Thai Red Cross, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Nataruks Chaijitraruch, Piyaporn Wanawongsawad, Ai-lada Intrarakamhang, Excellence Center of Organ Transplantation, King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Anapat Sanpavat, Department of Pathology, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University and King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Teerasak Phewplung, Department of Radiology, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University and King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Bangkok 10330, Thailand

Corresponding author: Voranush Chongsrisawat, MD, Associate Professor, Doctor, Department of Pediatrics, Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University and King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, 1873, Rama 4 Road, Pathumwan, Bangkok 10330, Thailand.
voranush.c@chula.ac.th

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Liver transplantation (LT) has become an acceptable curative method for children with several liver diseases, especially irreversible acute liver failure and chronic liver diseases. King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital is one of Thailand's largest liver transplant centers and is responsible for many pediatric cases.

AIM

To report the experience with pediatric LT and evaluate outcomes of living-related *vs* deceased-donor grafts.

METHODS

This evaluation included children who underwent LT between August 2004 and November 2019. Data were retrospectively reviewed, including demographics,

diagnoses, laboratory values of donors and recipients, the pediatric end-stage liver disease (PELD) or model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score, graft source, wait time, perioperative course, postoperative complications, and survival rates. Continuous data were reported using the median and interquartile range. The Mann–Whitney *U*-test was used to compare the wait time between the living-related and deceased-donor groups. The chi-square or Fisher's exact test were used to compare the frequencies of between-group complications. Survival rates were calculated using the Kaplan–Meier method.

RESULTS

Ninety-four operated pediatric liver transplant patients were identified (54% were females). The median age at transplantation was 1.2 (0.8-3.8) years. The median PELD and MELD scores were 20 (13-26.8) and 19.5 (15.8-26.3), respectively. Most grafts (81.9%) were obtained from living-related donors. The median wait time for the living donors was significantly shorter compared with the deceased donors at 1.6 (0.3-3.1) mo *vs* 11.2 (2.1-33.3) mo (P = 0.01). Most patients were diagnosed with biliary atresia (74.5%), and infection was the most common complication within 30 d post-transplantation (14.9%). Without a desensitization protocol, 9% of transplants were ABO-incompatible. Eight hepatitis B core antibodies (anti-HBc)-negative recipients received positive anti-HBc grafts without different observed complications. The overall survival rate was 93.6% and 90.3% at 1 and 5 years, respectively. No graft loss during follow-up was noted among survivors.

CONCLUSION

A significant number of pediatric LT cases were reported in Thailand. Based on relatively comparable outcomes, ABO-incompatible and HBc antibody-positive grafts may be considered in an organ shortage situation.

Key Words: Pediatric; Liver transplantation; Living-donor; Hepatitis B; ABO-incompatible; Survival

Core Tip: Pediatric liver transplantation (LT) is an acceptable life-saving operation for several chronic liver diseases and irreversible acute liver failure. This single-center data was analyzed from pediatric LTs performed between August 2004 and November 2019. This study evaluated the most extensive series of pediatric liver transplant recipients in Thailand in the past two decades. Preoperative and postoperative data, including complications and survival, were reviewed. The overall 5-year survival rate was > 90%. In addition, the satisfying outcomes of ABO-incompatible living-donor and hepatitis B core antibody-positive graft transplantation were also highlighted.

Citation: Prachuapthunyachart S, Sintusek P, Tubjareon C, Chaijitraruch N, Sanpavat A, Phewplung T, Wanawongsawad P, Intrarakamhang AL, Chongsrisawat V. Pediatric liver transplantation outcomes from a single center in Thailand. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 583-591
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/583.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.583

INTRODUCTION

Liver transplantation (LT) has long been accepted as the standard treatment for end-stage liver disease due to acute fulminant hepatic failure and various chronic liver disorders. Starzl *et al*[1] were among the first group to demonstrate the possibility of this procedure in 1963 at the University of Colorado, Denver, CO, United States. This attempt faced several surgical and hemostatic challenges, requiring a very high dose of steroids and mercaptopurine due to the lack of effective immunosuppression regimens. The 1-year patient survival was about 30% at that time. However, the 1-year survival improved, close to 70%, because of the introduction of immunosuppressive drugs in the early 1980s[2]. Better organ-preservation techniques, enhanced surgical skills, and the availability of more effective immunosuppressive agents are also responsible for improved success rates. The shortage of organs from deceased donors led to a rapid expansion of living-donor programs, especially for children. The first successful living-donor LT was performed in 1989 in a pediatric patient[3]. The traditional indications for LT in children include end-stage liver disease with a predicted life expectancy of < 1 year, acute liver failure, unresectable hepatic tumors, and liver-based metabolic defects. The 5-year success rates for graft and patient survival for these life-threatening indications have been reported at a range of 85%-90%[4].

This success has led to an understandable urge to slightly contemplate more nontraditional indications for LT, including growth failure, intractable pruritus, or bone mass loss from cholestatic disorders, a neurodevelopmental abnormality from metabolic liver disease, and liver tumors in the absence of significant extrahepatic disease.

The first human LT was performed in Thailand at King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, Bangkok, Thailand, on 28 November 1987 by Sriwatanawongsa *et al*[5]. Later, Nonthasoot *et al*[6] reported outcomes of LT from 1 January 2002 to 30 June 2013 for 120 adults and 24 pediatric LT cases. The data showed that the 1- and 5-year survival rates improved to 86% and 72%, respectively. As for pediatric patients, 16 and 8 had living-donor and cadaveric LT, respectively. The median age was 2 years old, and the most common primary indication was biliary atresia (83.3%). Patient survival at 1 and 5 years was 96% and 91%, respectively.

The objective of this study was to report the experience with pediatric LT performed at the center of the current study and evaluate outcomes of living-related *vs* deceased-donor grafts.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study population and data collection

All pediatric liver transplant recipients who underwent LT at the center of this study between August 2004 and November 2019 were included. The data of all pediatric LT cases, including demographics, diagnoses, laboratory values of donors and recipients, the pediatric end-stage liver disease (PELD) or model for end-stage liver disease (MELD) score, graft source, wait time, perioperative course, immunosuppression type, postoperative complications, causes of death, and survival times, were retrospectively reviewed. The follow-up time was the duration in months from LT to the latest date of a doctor visit. Laboratory data were collected from preoperative assessment in both donors and recipients, including the ABO blood group and viral serology [hepatitis B surface antigen, hepatitis B surface antibody (anti-HBs), hepatitis B core antibody (anti-HBc), hepatitis C virus antibody, immunoglobulin G antibody to Epstein–Barr virus, and immunoglobulin G antibody to cytomegalovirus (anti-CMV IgG)]. Postoperative complications were categorized into three groups according to time to events after transplantation as early complications (within 30 d), middle complications (between 30 d and 1 year), and late complications (after 1 year). CMV viremia was defined as a detectable virus in blood quantified at ≥ 1000 DNA copies/mL using quantitative polymerase chain reaction or comparable positive antigenemia assay. Patient survival was defined as the time between LT and patient mortality. Moreover, graft survival was defined as the time between LT and graft loss, either by patient mortality or by graft failure necessitating retransplantation.

Statistical analyses

Statistical analyses were performed using SPSS 22.0 for Windows (SPSS Inc. Chicago, IL, United States). Categorical data were represented as numbers with percentages. Moreover, continuous data were reported using medians and interquartile ranges. The wait time was compared between the living-related and deceased-donor groups using the Mann-Whitney *U*-test. Frequencies of complications between groups were compared using chi-square or Fisher's exact test as appropriate. The survival rates were plotted using the Kaplan–Meier curves, and the differences in selected factors were evaluated using the log-rank test. Statistical significance was defined by P values < 0.05.

RESULTS

Overall characteristics of patients

The most common diagnosis was biliary atresia (74.5%) in all 94 pediatric transplant recipients identified during the study period. Other less common diagnoses included fulminant hepatic failure, progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis, Alagille syndrome, and others (Figure 1). Table 1 shows the patients' characteristics. Most patients were < 2 years old (64.9%). The median age at transplantation was 1.2 (0.8–3.8) years, and significantly lower in the living-donor group [1.1 (0.8-1.9) years] compared with the deceased-donor group [9.7 (3.5-13.5) years; P < 0.001]. The median wait time for the living donors was significantly shorter than that for deceased donors at 1.6 (0.3–3.1) mo *vs* 11.2 (2.1–33.3) mo (P = 0.01). The median follow-up time was 4.0 (2.2–7.3) years.

Donor and recipient serology

Table 2 shows the serology data. Eight ABO-incompatible transplants were performed in the living-donor group in infants (< 1 year old) without a desensitization protocol. Positive donor anti-HBc grafts were transplanted to eight patients with negative anti-HBc (8.5%). Five of the 54 recipients were anti-HBc-positive, although every patient in this group received negative donor anti-HBc grafts. All recipients received at least one primary hepatitis B Virus (HBV) vaccination at birth and a booster dose

Table 1 Patient characteristics

Data set		Living donors (*n* = 77)	Deceased donors (*n* = 17)	Total (*n* = 94)
Sex	Male (*n*, %)	36 (46.8)	7 (41.2)	43 (45.7)
Age (yr)[1]	Median (IQR)	1.1 (0.8-1.9)	9.7 (3.5-13.5)	1.2 (0.8-3.8)
Diagnosis of biliary atresia (*n*, %)		59 (76.6)	11 (64.7)	70 (74.5)
PELD score (age < 12 yr, *n* = 84)	Median (IQR)	19 (12.5-26)	25 (17.5-31.3)	20 (13-26.8)
	n	74	10	84
MELD score (age ≥ 12 yr, *n* = 10)	Median (IQR)	19 (18-19)	23 (15-30)	19.5 (15.8-26.3)
	n	3	7	10
Wait time (mo)[2]	Median (IQR)	1.6 (0.3–3.1)	11.2 (2.1–33.3)	1.7 (0.4–4.0)

[1]$P < 0.001$.
[2]$P = 0.01$.
PELD: Pediatric end-stage liver disease, MELD: Model for end-stage liver disease.

Table 2 Donor and recipient laboratory findings

Data set		Living donors (*n* = 77)	Deceased donors (*n* = 17)	Total (*n* = 94)
ABO incompatibility[1]	*n*, %	8 (10.4)	0 (0)	8 (8.5)
Positive donor anti-HBc	*n*, %	4 (5.2)	4 (23.5)	8 (8.5)
Anti-CMV IgG (*n*, %)[2]	D+/R-	8 (11.0)	2 (18.2)	10 (11.9)
	D+/R+	62 (84.9)	9 (81.8)	71 (84.5)
	D-/R+	3 (4.1)	0 (0)	3 (3.6)
	D-/R-	0 (0)	0 (0)	0 (0)
Recipient positive serology (*n*/total, %)	HBsAg	0/44 (0)	0/9 (0)	0/53 (0)
	Anti-HBs	33/43 (76.7)	3/10 (30)	36/53 (67.9)
	Anti-HBc	3/44 (6.8)	2/10 (20)	5/54 (9.3)
	Anti-HCV	1/42 (2.4)	0/10 (0)	1/52 (1.9)
	Anti-EBV IgG	31/43 (72.1)	8/9 (88.9)	39/52 (75)

[1]Median age at liver transplantation (IQR) = 0.9 (0.5-1.0) years.
[2]Total 84 patients.
D: Donor; R: Recipient; HBsAg: Hepatitis B surface antigen; Anti-HBs: Hepatitis B surface antibody; Anti-HBc: Hepatitis B core antibodies; Anti-HCV: Hepatitis C virus antibodies; Anti-EBV: Epstein-Barr virus antibodies.

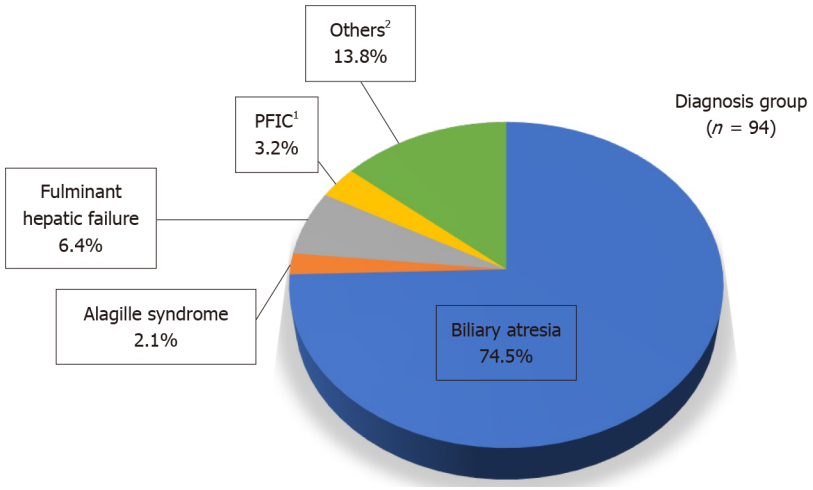
before LT. HBc antibody-positive graft recipients also received lamivudine prophylaxis for *de novo* HBV infection after LT. Most recipients (74/84, 88.1%) had positive anti-CMV IgG. All CMV-naïve recipients (10/84, 11.9%) received positive anti-CMV IgG grafts.

Immunosuppression use within the first 30 postoperative d

All patients postoperatively received corticosteroids in conjunction with at least one main T-cell suppression immunosuppressant. Tacrolimus (78.7%) was the preferred calcineurin inhibitor over cyclosporine (21.3%). Other additional immunosuppressive drugs used included azathioprine (30.9%), mycophenolate mofetil (26.6%), and sirolimus (3.2%). Apart from corticosteroids, more than half of the patients (58.5%) required a combination of two or more immunosuppressive agents.

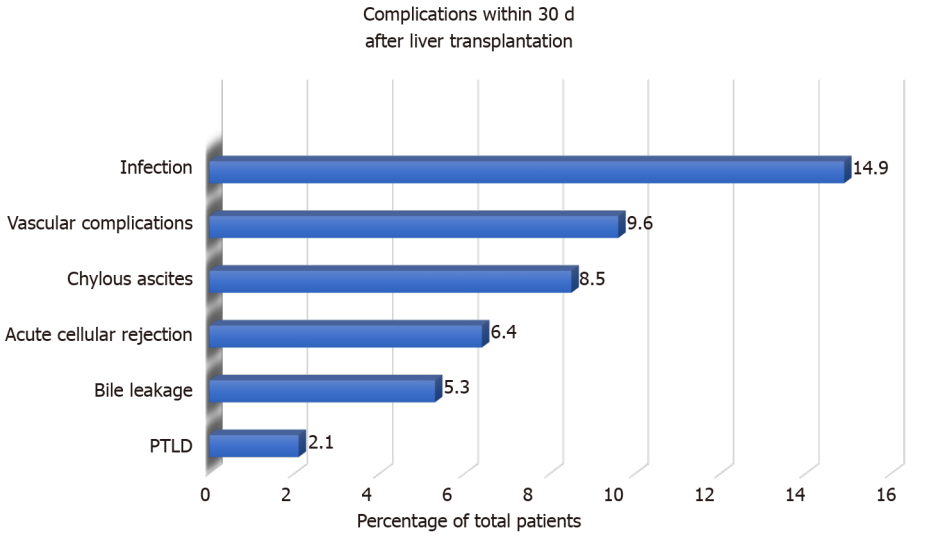
Complications after LT

Infection was the most common early complication (within 30 d after LT; 14.9%). Other less common early complications included vascular complications, chylous ascites, acute cellular rejection, bile leakage, and post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder (PTLD, Figure 2). One patient who received living-related-donor LT had hepatic artery thrombosis, which required a second emergent deceased-donor LT. PTLD occurred in 10.6% of the patients within the first year after transplantation, whereas



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.583 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Preoperative diagnoses. [1]PFIC: Progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis; [2]Others include idiopathic neonatal hepatitis, Budd-Chiari syndrome, hepatoblastoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, bile acid synthesis disorder, autoimmune hepatitis, glycogen storage disease, Caroli disease, Abernethy malformation, hepatic artery thrombosis after prior liver transplantation, and cryptogenic cirrhosis.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.583 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

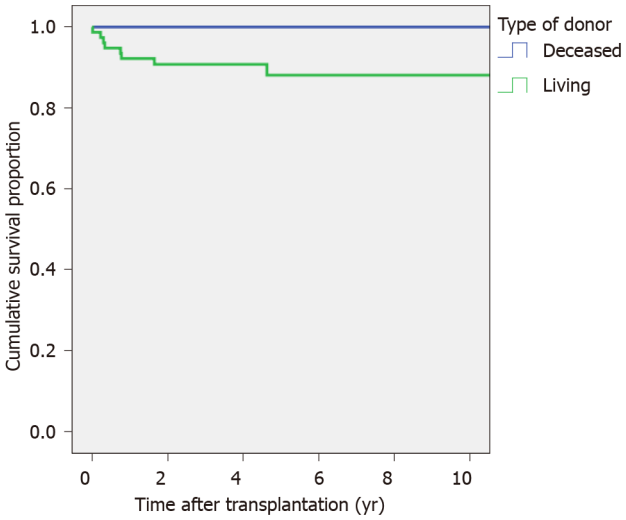
Figure 2 Early postoperative early complications. PTLD: Post-transplant lymphoproliferative disorder.

3.2% developed PTLD after the first year. Early CMV viremia within the first year after LT was detected in 40% of CMV-naïve patients compared with 4.8% of CMV-seropositive patients (P = 0.004). Food allergy was found in 23 patients (24.5%), 65.2% of which were *de novo* food allergies, defined as the occurrence of allergic symptoms after LT. No donors with a history of allergy were identified among these *de novo* food allergy recipients. The median age at LT was 13 (10-19.8) mo, whereas the median time to the event was 148 (92-347) d. The common culprits were cow milk (66.7%), egg (46.7%), and wheat (20%).

No observed different vascular, infection, or rejection complications were noted in the ABO-incompatible and positive donor anti-HBc graft transplantation cases. Four patients among the eight ABO-incompatible LT recipients had no complications. One patient developed early sepsis, candida urinary tract infection, hepatic artery stenosis, portal vein thrombosis, and bile leakage. Two patients developed PTLD within the first year after LT. One patient expired 4 d after LT due to sepsis.

Post-transplant survival

The overall survival rate was 93.6% and 90.3% at 1 and 5 years (living-donor group = 92.2% and 88.1% at 1 and at 5 years, respectively; deceased-donor group = 100% at 1 and 5 years), respectively (Figure 3). All patients with acute liver failure (6.4%) survived after LT with normal neurodevelopmental outcomes. Six (75%) of the eight total deaths occurred within the first year after transplantation. The



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.583

Figure 3 Survival proportion after transplantation according to donor type.

preoperative diagnoses were biliary atresia (7/8, 87.5%) and bile acid synthesis disorder (1/8, 12.5%). The causes of mortality were sepsis (three patients), acute renal failure and shock (two patients), bacterial pneumonia (one patient), and unknown (two patients).

DISCUSSION

Pediatric LT is considered the standard management for children with several chronic liver diseases and irreversible acute liver failure. King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital, affiliated with the Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok, Thailand, is the leading hospital for pediatric LT and is responsible for most procedures in Thailand. At the aforementioned hospital, 23 children underwent LT (average, 2.6 cases per year) from 2004 to 2013. The remaining 71 patients underwent LT from 2014 to November 2019 (average, 14.2 cases per year). The most common indication for pediatric LT in the current series was biliary atresia (74.5%), consistent with other series previously reported[7-9]. The liver graft allocation policy for pediatric recipients in the current study includes the use of living-donor grafts as default and deceased-donor grafts when the former is unavailable or impossible due to donor limitations. Most grafts came from living donors (81.9%); however, this rate was lower than recent reports from Japan and Turkey. Kasahara *et al*[7] reported on 414 and 22 Living- and deceased-donor transplantations up to 2016 from the Organ Transplantation Center at the National Center for Child Health and Development in Japan. In Turkey, Yankol *et al*[8] reported on 135 cases of pediatric LT, 91.4% of which involved living donors. However, the rate of living-donor LT in the current study was higher than in Western and Middle Eastern countries, including centers in the United States (6%)[9] and Iran (40.6%)[10]. Regarding other patient characteristics, the median age of patients [1.2 (0.8-3.8) years] in the current study is relatively lower compared with other studies. Moreover, the median PELD and MELD scores were 20 (13-26.8) and 19.5 (15.8-26.3), respectively, which is comparable to other studies[8, 9].

The most common early complication in the current series was an infection, consistent with other reports. Nikeghbalian *et al*[10] reported in-hospital complications encountered by 34.7% of the patients, and the most common being infections (26.8%), bleeding (23.4%), and vascular complications (18%). The United States Studies in Pediatric Liver Transplantation (SPLIT) group[11] also reported that infection was the most common complication. It occurred in nearly half of all patients (46%) and could be as severe as multisystem organ failure or cardiopulmonary failure. Infants, which accounted for most of the pediatric LT cohorts in the current study, were at the highest risk of developing an infection. Eight pediatric recipients received positive anti-HBc grafts and were started on lamivudine after LT. These patients had good graft survival and complications that were comparable to the negative anti-HBc group without HBV infection reactivation that is likely because of the antiviral prophylaxis. In addition, anti-HBs and revaccination of patients with low or undetectable anti-HBs before LT were also monitored because keeping the anti-HBs > 200 mIU/mL before LT could be sufficient to prevent *de novo* HBV infection[12]. However, one case with biliary atresia and cirrhosis diagnosis developed *de novo* HBV infection after receiving a negative anti-HBc liver graft. This patient had a high anti-HB titer (anti-HBs > 1000 IU/L) before LT but had elevated transaminases at 3.83 years after LT before the HBV infection was diagnosed. Sintusek *et al*[13] reported the unexpectedly high prevalence of HBV immunity loss after LT (46%, 57%, and 82% at 1, 2, and > 3 years following LT). Positive anti-HBc grafts may be

considered with relatively positive outcomes in the face of organ shortages for LT. Oral antivirals for HBV and careful monitoring of viral serology should be performed in endemic areas given the high prevalence of HBV immunity loss after LT.

Regarding vascular complications, hepatic artery thrombosis after pediatric LT ranges from 5.7% to 8.4% and is an important cause of graft loss[11]. Portal vein thrombosis is another vascular complication that can occur after LT. Vascular complications occurred in 9.6% of the cohorts of the current study. One patient, who underwent LT in 2010, developed hepatic artery thrombosis and required a second LT. However, the rate of vascular complications significantly declined with careful selection of donors and ultrasound monitoring. Doppler ultrasound after reperfusion was routinely performed to ensure good vascular flow, and daily monitoring continued 1 wk after LT.

Herein, the good outcome of ABO-incompatible LT was highlighted in eight < 1-year-old pediatric recipients without a desensitization protocol. No differences in terms of complications or graft and patient survival were found. This is likely because differentiation and maturity of the immune system are closely tied to children's age. Isoagglutinin titers in < 1-year-old infants are lower than adult levels [14]. In a systematic review and meta-analysis, Lee *et al*[15] reported comparable patient survival in both groups. However, the ABO-incompatible group was inferior regarding graft survival and several complications. Graft survival could be comparable in pediatric patients and those using rituximab. However, another more recent systematic review and meta-analysis by Kang *et al*[16] showed consistently lower patient and graft survival with pediatric ABO-incompatible LT than the ABO-compatible group. The authors concluded that ABO-incompatible LT is an important choice to consider for emergency LT in the absence of blood type-matching liver source although it is not an optimal treatment in terms of graft and patient survival rates.

Patient survival rates at 1 and 5 years after a pediatric LT are 97.3% and 94.2%, respectively, according to a recent SPLIT registry database from 2011 to 2018[17]. The survival rates from the largest single-center report on pediatric LT in Iran were up to 84.4% and 77.8% at 1 and 5 years, respectively [10]. Thus, the overall survival rates of the current series of 93.6% and 90.3% at 1 and 5 years, respectively, are comparable.

The limitations of the current study include the inherent nature of retrospective studies. Some detailed information may be missing from the medical records, including specific causes of mortality or mention of minor infections that could have occurred at home or other hospitals. Also, the pretransplant viral serology of donors and recipients was not available in all cases due to missing data from the records. The main strength of the current study is that it is the most extensive report on pediatric LT in Thailand covering the two decades. The experiences in the current study also highlighted a good proportion of living-donor LT in children with relatively comparable outcomes and excellent graft and patient survival compared to global data.

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, pediatric LT has been accepted as a life-saving procedure for patients with acute liver failure and chronic end-stage liver diseases. The transplant center of the current study is responsible for a large number of pediatric LT procedures in Thailand. Herein, the experiences in pediatric LT with excellent outcomes concerning survival and complications are reported. The current series was mostly comprised of living-related donor liver grafts, which had the advantage of shorter wait times compared to deceased-donor grafts. The experiences with ABO-incompatible LT in < 1-year-old patients without a desensitization protocol and HBc antibody-positive LT with relatively comparable outcomes were also highlighted, leading to the assertion that such grafts should be considered in the face of organ shortages. Overall, the results in the previous 15 years regarding pediatric LT are promising.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Pediatric LT has been accepted as a curative method for children with several liver diseases. The success rates have improved due to better organ-preservation techniques, enhanced surgical skills, and the availability of newer immunosuppressive agents. Organ shortage has become a rising problem worldwide, especially in Eastern countries.

Research motivation

King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital is the leading hospital in Thailand for pediatric LT. Several reports on pediatric LT were noted in the United States, Europe, Middle East, and East Asian countries. However, data from South East Asia, especially related to ABO-incompatible LT, are scarce.

Research objectives

The current study aimed to report experiences with pediatric LT performed at the center of this study and evaluate outcomes of living-related *vs* deceased-donor grafts.

Research methods

The current retrospective study included 94 children who underwent LT and were followed up for a median time of 4 years thereafter. Data of donors and recipients, including postoperative complications and survival rates, were reviewed and analyzed.

Research results

In the current study, 94 pediatric LT performed at the center of this study were reported. The median age at transplantation was 1.2 (0.8-3.8) years. Most grafts (81.9%) were obtained from living-related donors. The median wait time for the living donors was significantly shorter than that for deceased donors at 1.6 (0.3-3.1) *vs* 11.2 (2.1-33.3) months (P = 0.01). Most patients were diagnosed with biliary atresia (74.5%), and infection was the most common complication within 30 d post-transplantation (14.9%). In addition, 9% of transplants were ABO-incompatible without a desensitization protocol. No observed different vascular, infection, or rejection complications were noted. Eight (8.5%) recipients who tested negative for HBc antibodies received positive anti-HBc grafts with no observed different infection or rejection complications. The overall survival rate was 93.6% and 90.3% at 1 and 5 years, respectively. No graft loss during follow-up was noted among the survivors.

Research conclusions

Living-donor-related LT has saved many lives with shorter wait times compared with deceased-donor surgeries. Based on relatively comparable outcomes, ABO-incompatible and HBc antibody-positive liver grafts may be considered in the face of organ shortages. The survival results in the previous 15 years are promising.

Research perspectives

The current study suggests that living-donor liver transplantation (LT) can save many lives and has a good outcome with shorter wait times in the face of organ shortage. ABO-incompatible LT can be considered in pediatric < 1-year-old recipients without a sensitization protocol. Hepatitis B core (HBc) antibody-positive liver grafts may also be used. Nonetheless, special attention should be focused on high titers of anti-hepatitis B surface before LT and lifelong postoperative antiviral prophylaxis. More studies on living-donor pediatric LT and protocols for these special donor groups are needed.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to thank Dr. Pongrat Sirichindakul, the head of the Excellence Center of Organ Transplantation, its members, and all the transplant surgeons for their tremendous support.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Prachuapthunyachart S designed the study, drafted the initial manuscript, collected, interpreted and analyzed the data; Sintusek P, Tubjareon C, Chaijitraruch N, Sanpavat A, and Phewplung T revised the article critically for important intellectual content; Wanawongsawad P and Intrarakamhang A collected the data; Chongsrisawat V provided valuable advice and revised the article critically for important intellectual content; All authors read and approved the final manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the Institutional Review Board of Faculty of Medicine, Chulalongkorn University, Bangkok, Thailand (IRB approval number: 322/64).

Informed consent statement: The informed consent was waived for the study as approved by the IRB.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to report.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

Country/Territory of origin: Thailand

ORCID number: Sittichoke Prachuapthunyachart 0000-0003-1137-3411; Palittiya Sintusek 0000-0003-4441-0151; Chomchanat Tubjareon 0000-0002-2995-3070; Nataruks Chaijitraruch 0000-0003-2766-2453; Anapat Sanpavat 0000-0002-6425-3379; Teerasak Phewplung 0000-0001-9132-5799; Piyaporn Wanawongsawad 0000-0001-7259-8441; Ai-lada Intrarakamhang 0000-0002-2095-4755; Voranush Chongsrisawat 0000-0002-6106-0504.

S-Editor: Zhang H
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Zhang H

REFERENCES

1 **Starzl TE**, Marchioro TL, Vonkaulla KN, Hermann G, Brittain RS, Waddell WR. Homotransplantation of the liver in humans. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1963; **117**: 659-676 [PMID: 14100514]
2 **Starzl TE**, Klintmalm GB, Porter KA, Iwatsuki S, Schröter GP. Liver transplantation with use of cyclosporin a and prednisone. *N Engl J Med* 1981; **305**: 266-269 [PMID: 7017414 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198107303050507]
3 **Raia S**, Nery JR, Mies S. Liver transplantation from live donors. *Lancet* 1989; **2**: 497 [PMID: 2570198 DOI: 10.1016/s0140-6736(89)92101-6]
4 **Kohli R**, Cortes M, Heaton ND, Dhawan A. Liver transplantation in children: state of the art and future perspectives. *Arch Dis Child* 2018; **103**: 192-198 [PMID: 28918383 DOI: 10.1136/archdischild-2015-310023]
5 **Sriwatanawongsa V**, Sangsubhan C, Dhitavat V, Tanprayoon T, Sriussadaporn S, Borirakchanyawat V, Suwangool P, Kyokong O, Niruthisard S, Vajarapongse K, Minaphinant K, Nivatvong S, Auwattanamongkol S, Puttisri A, Rajatapiti B. The first human orthotopic liver transplant in Thailand: A case report. *Chula Med J* 1988; **32**: 463-468
6 **Nonthasoot B**, Sirichindakul B, Suphapol J, Taesombat W, Sutherasan M, Nivatvongs S. Orthotopic liver transplantation at King Chulalongkorn Memorial Hospital: a report. *J Med Assoc Thai* 2015; **98** Suppl 1: S127-S130 [PMID: 25764625]
7 **Kasahara M**, Sakamoto S, Fukuda A. Pediatric living-donor liver transplantation. *Semin Pediatr Surg* 2017; **26**: 224-232 [PMID: 28964478 DOI: 10.1053/j.sempedsurg.2017.07.008]
8 **Yankol Y**, Mecit N, Kanmaz T, Cimsit B, Cakaloglu Y, Acarli K, Kalayoglu M. Lessons Learned From Review of a Single Center Experience With 500 Consecutive Liver Transplants in a Region With Insufficient Deceased-Donor Support. *Exp Clin Transplant* 2016; **14**: 191-200 [PMID: 26030810 DOI: 10.6002/ect.2014.0170]
9 **Venick RS**, Farmer DG, Soto JR, Vargas J, Yersiz H, Kaldas FM, Agopian VG, Hiatt JR, McDiarmid SV, Busuttil RW. One Thousand Pediatric Liver Transplants During Thirty Years: Lessons Learned. *J Am Coll Surg* 2018; **226**: 355-366 [PMID: 29410290 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2017.12.042]
10 **Nikeghbalian S**, Malekhosseini SA, Kazemi K, Arasteh P, Eghlimi H, Shamsaeefar A, Nikoupour H, Gholami S, Dehghani M, Dehghani SM, Bahador A, Salahi H. The Largest Single Center Report on Pediatric Liver Transplantation: Experiences and Lessons Learned. *Ann Surg* 2021; **273**: e70-e72 [PMID: 32541224 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0000000000004047]
11 **Diamond IR**, Fecteau A, Millis JM, Losanoff JE, Ng V, Anand R, Song C; SPLIT Research Group. Impact of graft type on outcome in pediatric liver transplantation: a report From Studies of Pediatric Liver Transplantation (SPLIT). *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 301-310 [PMID: 17667510 DOI: 10.1097/SLA.0b013e3180caa415]
12 **Su WJ**, Ho MC, Ni YH, Chen HL, Hu RH, Wu YM, Chang MH, Lee PH. High-titer antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen before liver transplantation can prevent de novo hepatitis B infection. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* 2009; **48**: 203-208 [PMID: 19179883 DOI: 10.1097/MPG.0b013e3181819ad4]
13 **Sintusek P**, Posuwan N, Wanawongsawad P, Jitraruch S, Poovorawan Y, Chongsrisawat V. High prevalence of hepatitis B-antibody loss and a case report of *de novo* hepatitis B virus infection in a child after living-donor liver transplantation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2018; **24**: 752-762 [PMID: 29456414 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v24.i6.752]
14 **Egawa H**, Oike F, Buhler L, Shapiro AM, Minamiguchi S, Haga H, Uryuhara K, Kiuchi T, Kaihara S, Tanaka K. Impact of recipient age on outcome of ABO-incompatible living-donor liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 2004; **77**: 403-411 [PMID: 14966415 DOI: 10.1097/01.TP.0000110295.88926.5C]
15 **Lee EC**, Kim SH, Park SJ. Outcomes after liver transplantation in accordance with ABO compatibility: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 6516-6533 [PMID: 29085201 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i35.6516]
16 **Kang ZY**, Liu W, Li DH. Comparison of clinical outcomes between ABO-incompatible and ABO-compatible pediatric liver transplantation: a systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *Pediatr Surg Int* 2020; **36**: 1353-1362 [PMID: 33001256 DOI: 10.1007/s00383-020-04746-5]
17 **Elisofon SA**, Magee JC, Ng VL, Horslen SP, Fioravanti V, Economides J, Erinjeri J, Anand R, Mazariegos GV; Society of Pediatric Liver Transplantation Research Group. Society of pediatric liver transplantation: Current registry status 2011-2018. *Pediatr Transplant* 2020; **24**: e13605 [PMID: 31680409 DOI: 10.1111/petr.13605]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2021 March 27; 14(3): 592-601

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.592

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Predictors of mortality at 28-days in infection associated acute kidney injury in cirrhosis

Tarana Gupta, Naveen Ranga, Sandeep Kumar Goyal

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and Hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C, C
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: He Z, Wang YH

Received: May 18, 2021
Peer-review started: May 18, 2021
First decision: June 22, 2021
Revised: July 4, 2021
Accepted: February 15, 2022
Article in press: February 15, 2021
Published online: March 27, 2021

Tarana Gupta, Naveen Ranga, Department of Medicine, Pandit Bhagwat Dayal Sharma Post Graduate Institute of Medical Sciences, Rohtak 124001, Haryana, India

Sandeep Kumar Goyal, Independent Researcher, Kangra 176056, Himachal Pradesh, India

Corresponding author: Tarana Gupta, MBBS, MD, Doctor, Professor, Department of Medicine, Pandit Bhagwat Dayal Sharma Post Graduate Institute of Medical Sciences, Medical Mor, Rohtak 124001, Haryana, India. taranagupta@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Acute kidney injury (AKI) in cirrhosis is important complication with poor outcomes. And infections are common cause for acute decompensation. Infections in cirrhosis lead to acute deterioration of hemodynamics leading to precipitation of AKI.

AIM

To study predictors of mortality in patients with infection-associated AKI in cirrhosis.

METHODS

This was a prospective, observational study conducted at tertiary care centre from January 2018 till April 2019. Total 119 participants with cirrhosis of liver presenting with AKI were included into the study. AKI was defined as per international club of Ascites-AKI criteria 2015. Patients were grouped into infection AKI and non-infection AKI. Non-infection AKI included patients with diuretic induced AKI and pre-renal AKI. Logistic regression analysis was used to determine predictors of mortality at 28-d.

RESULTS

Out of 119 patients, alcohol (n = 104) was most common etiology of cirrhosis. The infection AKI included 67 (56%) patients and non-infection AKI (n = 52) included pre-renal AKI in 36 (30%) and diuretic-induced AKI in 16 (14%) patients. Infection AKI had significantly higher bilirubin, higher international normalized ratio (INR), low serum sodium, higher total leukocyte count (TLC) and higher prevalence of hepatic encephalopathy (HE) as compared to non-infection AKI. Infection AKI had higher progression of AKI (19/67 *vs* 2/52; P = 0.01) and 28-d mortality (38/67 *vs* 4/5; $P \leq 0.01$) as compared to non-infection AKI. At 28-d, non-

survivors (n = 42) had significantly higher bilirubin, higher INR, low serum sodium, higher TLC and higher prevalence of HE as compared to survivors (n = 77). On subgroup analysis of Infection AKI group, on multivariate analysis, serum bilirubin as well as presence of HE were independent predictors of 28-d mortality. There was no significant difference of mortality at 90-d between two groups.

CONCLUSION
Infection AKI in cirrhosis has a dismal prognosis with higher 28-d mortality as compared to non-infection AKI. Serum bilirubin and presence of HE predict 28-d mortality in infection AKI.

Key Words: Infection; Acute kidney injury; Mortality; Cirrhosis; Bilirubin; Hepatic encephalopathy

Core Tip: The infections in cirrhosis are the most common cause for acute decompensation and organ failure. Acute kidney injury (AKI) in cirrhosis is itself an indicator for worsening hemodynamics. In the present study, we compared infection associated AKI and non-infection AKI. We found higher 28-d mortality in infection AKI than non-infection AKI. In addition to altered hemodynamics, pathogen associated molecular patterns and damage-associated molecular patterns produced as a result of sepsis contribute to multiorgan failure, especially renal dysfunction. Moreover, higher bilirubin and presence of hepatic encephalopathy predicted 28-d mortality in patients with infection AKI. This provides an insight that the combination of infection and AKI in cirrhosis portends a dismal prognosis and therefore, on admission, early identification of infection and aggressive management may improve outcome in these patients.

Citation: Gupta T, Ranga N, Goyal SK. Predictors of mortality at 28-days in infection associated acute kidney injury in cirrhosis. *World J Hepatol* 2021; 14(3): 592-601
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/592.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.592

INTRODUCTION

The onset of jaundice, ascites, hepatic encephalopathy (HE), or gastrointestinal (GI) bleed marks the decompensation of a well-compensated chronic liver disease. The occurrence of ascites is an important benchmark in history of cirrhosis as it tilts the balance[1]. It signifies the presence of clinically significant portal hypertension, liver cell dysfunction, hypoalbuminemia, alteration in hemodynamics due to imbalance of vasoconstrictors and vasodilators in the splanchnic and systemic circulation. The splanchnic pooling of blood and systemic vasodilation leads to reduced effective arterial blood volume over a period of time resulting in refractory ascites. Ascites predisposes a patient with cirrhosis to increased incidence of spontaneous bacterial peritonitis (SBP) and acute kidney injury (AKI). In 25-year inception cohort study of patients with cirrhosis by D'Amico *et al*[2], it was shown that as stages of cirrhosis progress from 1 to 6, there is decreased 5-year survival. On competing risk analysis, they showed 0.50-0.97 risk of death within 1-year of onset of infections, renal failure or acute-on-chronic liver failure (ACLF) in decompensated cirrhosis[3,4].

The unique structural organization and dual blood supply of the liver plays important role in its immune function. Cirrhosis is associated with immune dysfunction. There is associated impaired Kupffer cell function, sinusoidal capillarization with continuous basement membrane formation leading to impaired exchange of cargo between sinusoidal blood and hepatocytes[5]. The gut dysbiosis in cirrhosis leads to increased portal blood endotoxemia, increased lipopolysaccharide levels which due to portosystemic shunting bypasses the liver and reaches directly in systemic circulation. This increases the risk of acquiring bacterial infections in cirrhosis. In addition, there is reduced neutrophil count due to splenic sequestration, associated neutrophil dysfunction with reduced chemotaxis, reduced monocyte and macrophage function with and impaired phagocytosis, impaired natural killer cell function. The CD4 and CD8 T cell function is also reduced[6-8]. Liver dysfunction leads to reduced complement proteins and hypoalbuminemia. All these factors predispose patients with cirrhosis towards acquiring infection. Sepsis, on the other hand is a precursor to multiorgan dysfunction. Therefore, we aimed to compare infection associated AKI with non-infection AKI in patients with cirrhosis of liver. We also determined the predictors of mortality in patients with infection AKI.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Study population and data collection

This was a prospective observational study which included consecutive patients with liver cirrhosis with AKI admitted in Department of Medicine at Pandit Bhagwat Dayal Sharma Post Graduate Institute of Medical Sciences, Rohtak, India from Jan 2018 to June 2019. Liver cirrhosis was defined as per clinical, biochemical, and radiological parameters on ultrasound (nodular liver, portal vein diameter > 13 mm, splenomegaly, presence of collateral) and liver biopsy if needed. After written and informed consent, patients aged 18-70 years with cirrhosis of the liver presenting with AKI were included into the study. Patients aged < 18 years or > 70 years, pregnancy, chronic respiratory disease, chronic kidney disease, and hepatocellular carcinoma were excluded from the study. A detailed history and clinical examination were performed in all patients. AKI was defined as an increase in serum creatinine ≥ 0.3 mg/dL within 48 h; or a percentage increase in serum creatinine ≥ 50% from baseline which is known, or presumed, to have occurred within the prior 7 d. Baseline serum creatinine was defined as serum creatinine obtained in the previous 3 mo. In patients with more than one value within the previous 3 mo, the value closest to the admission time to the hospital was taken as the baseline value.

AKI staging

AKI staging was done as per international club of Ascites criteria; Stage 1 was defined as an increase in serum creatinine ≥ 0.3 mg/dL or ≥ 1.5-2 ULN from baseline, Stage 2 as an increase in serum creatinine > 2-3 ULN from baseline and Stage 3 as increase in serum creatinine > 3 ULN from baseline or serum creatinine ≥ 4.0 mg/dL with an acute increase ≥ 0.3mg/dL or initiation of renal replacement therapy. Further "Progression" of AKI was defined as progression to a higher stage and/or need of renal replacement therapy and "Regression" was defined as regression of AKI to a lower stage. The response to treatment was defined as "Full response" when serum creatinine value decreased to within 0.3 mg/dL of the baseline value, "Partial response" if reduction of serum creatinine ≥ 0.3mg/dL above baseline value and "No response" if there was no response in creatinine values. All patients were followed till 3 months to evaluate for 28-d and 90-d mortality. On admission, all patients were evaluated for the presence of infection by performing ascitic fluid analysis, blood culture, urine examination, urine culture, sputum gram stain and culture, chest X-Ray, and any other body fluid examination as indicated.

Pneumonia: Any new lung infiltrate with either symptom (cough, sputum, pleuritic pain, dyspnoea) or rales/crepitation on auscultation with components of systemic inflammatory response, *i.e.*, temperature > 38 °C or < 36 °C or TLC > 10000/mm^3 or < 4000/mm^3 or respiratory rate > 20/min or $PaCO_2$ < 32 mmHg or pulse > 90/min.

SBP: Either ascitic fluid PMNs (polymorphonuclear) > 250 cells/mm^3 with/without a positive ascitic fluid culture.

Spontaneous bacterial empyema: Either pleural fluid PMNs > 250 cells/mm^3 with positive culture or > 500 cells/mm^3 irrespective of culture positivity.

Bacteraemia: Blood culture positivity without any source of infection.

Cellulitis

Urinary tract infection (UTI): Urine microscopy showing WBC > 10/high power field with/without positive culture.

All patients with AKI were grouped into infection AKI, diuretic induced AKI and pre-renal AKI. Diuretic induced AKI was defined as patients who were on diuretics (furosemide and spironolactone) for the control of ascites with negative work up for infection or pre-renal causes. Pre-renal AKI was defined in patients with cirrhosis presenting with upper GI bleed, fluid losses due to diarrhea or vomiting *etc.* and with negative work up for infections and no history of diuretics. Diuretic induced AKI and pre-renal AKI were grouped as non-infection AKI.

Statistical analysis

All continuous variables were taken as mean ± SD (range) or median [IQR; Q1, Q3] and categorical variables as frequency and percentages. For comparison of continuous variables, Mann–Whitney U test/Student t-test and for categorical variables, χ^2 and Fisher exact tests were used. 28-and 90-d mortality was assessed using survival analysis. $P < 0.05$ was taken as significant. SPSS v21.0 (IBM, USA) was used for analysis.

RESULTS

Out of 140 patients of cirrhosis with AKI were admitted during the study period, 21 patients did not fulfil inclusion criteria (Figure 1). Finally, 119 patients of cirrhosis with AKI were included into the study.

The most common etiology of cirrhosis was alcohol (n = 98), chronic hepatitis B and C (n = 5 each), non-alcoholic steatohepatitis related cirrhosis (n = 4), both alcohol and chronic hepatitis C (n = 4), both alcohol and chronic hepatitis B (n = 2), and autoimmune cirrhosis (n = 1).

Among 119 patients, infection with AKI was present in 67 (56%). Non-infection AKI included 36 (30%) patients with pre-renal and 16 (14%) patients with diuretic induced AKI (Figure 1). Out of 67 patients of infection AKI, SBP was present in 30 (45%), pneumonia in 9 (13%), cellulitis in 7 (10%), UTI in 2 (3%), splenic abscess in 1 (1.5%) and source of infection unidentified in 18 (27%) patients.

At baseline, Infection AKI group had higher creatinine (2.6 mg/dL *vs* 2.2 mg/dL, P = 0.016) as compared to non-infection AKI. Further, infection AKI group had higher mean serum bilirubin, higher INR, lower serum albumin, lower serum sodium, higher haemoglobin, higher TLC, and higher prevalence of HE than non-infection AKI group respectively (Table 1).

Infection AKI had higher progression of AKI (19/67 *vs* 2/52; P = 0.01) and higher 28-d mortality (38/67 *vs* 4/52; P < 0.001) than non-infection AKI group respectively. In non-infection AKI group, four non-survivors belonged to prerenal AKI. At 90-d, there was no significant difference of mortality among infection AKI and non-infection AKI group (49/67 *vs* 13/52; P = 0.2) respectively (Table 2).

Overall, out of 119 patients, at 28-d, there were 77 survivors and 42 non-survivors. On univariate analysis, survivors had lower serum bilirubin, lower INR, lower TLC, and lower prevalence of HE compared to non-survivors. The multivariate analysis revealed higher bilirubin and presence of HE to predict 28-d mortality (Table 3).

In subgroup analysis of Infection AKI group, non-survivors (n = 38) had higher TLC, higher bilirubin, higher INR and higher prevalence of HE as compared to survivors (n = 29). On multivariate analysis, serum bilirubin and presence of HE were independent predictors of 28-d mortality (Table 4).

As per CANONIC grading of ACLF, there were 35 patients in no ACLF, 23 in ACLF grade-1, 27 in ACLF grade-2, 34 in ACLF grade-3. At 28-d, there was mortality of one patient with no ACLF, three in ACLF grade-1, 13 in ACLF grade-2, and 25 in ACLF grade-3. At 90-d, there was a mortality of five patients in no ACLF, five in ACLF grade-1, 18 in ACLF grade-2, and 34 in ACLF grade-3 (Figure 2). In infection AKI group (n = 67), 55 patients had ACLF and 12 had no ACLF.

DISCUSSION

The study gives three important findings in relation to infection AKI in cirrhosis of liver: (1) prevalence of infection AKI in cirrhosis; (2) One-and three-mo mortality; and (3) predictors of mortality at 28-d in infection AKI group. There was a 56% prevalence of infection AKI in patients with cirrhosis presenting with AKI. Remaining patients had AKI due to pre-renal and diuretic-related causes. This study had SBP as the cause of infection in 45% followed by pneumonia (13%) and cellulitis (10%) in acute decompensation of cirrhosis. The CANONIC series had SBP in 25% of all infections and source of infection was undefined in 13%[9]. The International Club of Ascites Global Study Group also showed higher prevalence of SBP (35% *vs* 27%) and pneumonia (28% *vs* 19%) in Asia compared to Europe respectively[2]. The Global study group showed higher rates of ACLF in Asia compared to global data (46% *vs* 35%; P < 0.01) in patients with cirrhosis with infection respectively[10]. Our study had ACLF in 82% of patients in infection AKI group. We had selectively included patients of cirrhosis with AKI and as renal dysfunction is a late manifestation in the course of cirrhosis, this may be the reason behind the higher rates of ACLF in our study population as compared to previous studies which included all patients with acute decompensation of cirrhosis.

The previous data from India suggest higher rates of acute viral hepatitis A and E as a cause for acute insult in acute decompensation of cirrhosis and ACLF[11]. However, recent studies show a trend towards increasing rates of infection with multidrug resistant (MDR) and extremely drug resistant (XDR) bacteria in Asia[12]. The Global study showed higher prevalence of MDR (76% *vs* 16%) and XDR bacteria (33% *vs* 1%-16%) in Indian centers, as compared to Western centers respectively[10].

Presence of infections in cirrhosis activates systemic inflammation and results in multi-organ dysfunction[13]. The pathogen associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) arising from the gut and damage associated molecular patterns (DAMPs) released from necrotic hepatocytes stimulate toll like receptors (TLRs) on hepatocytes and cause release of Interleukin (IL)-1, IL-6, tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha, *etc.* The cytokine storm, PAMPs and DAMPs in the circulation increase the expression of TLR4 receptors in the kidneys leading to increased permeability, proteinuria, and alteration in vascular tone. Through various molecular pathways, oxidative stress and apoptosis in tubular epithelial cells increases and results in sepsis induced AKI[14,15]. In animal studies, pharmacological interventions targeting TLR receptors in the kidney have shown reduced injury in sepsis induced AKI[16]. Shah *et al*[17] showed that there is already increased expression of TNF-alpha, TLR4, *etc.* in kidneys in cirrhosis, making them

Table 1 Baseline characteristics of patients in Infection and non-infection acute kidney injury groups

Variables	Infection AKI (*n* = 67)	Non-infection AKI (*n* = 52)	*P* value
Age (yr, mean ± SD)	42 ± 23	41 ± 21	0.23
Males, *n* (%)	58 (86%)	47 (90%)	0.31
Hb (gm/dL)	8.5 (3.6-14.7)	8.1 (3-14)	0.037
TLC (× 10^3/mm^3)	17 (2-40)	7.8 (2.5-18)	0.001
Platelet count (× 10^9/L)	110 (60-200)	130 (80-220)	0.335
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	11.3 (0.8-46.6)	4.4 (0.8-27.9)	0.003
INR	2.1 (0.9-3.9)	1.9 (0.9-3.6)	0.045
Albumin (gm/dL)	2.3 (1.6-3.9)	2.5 (1-3.7)	0.04
Creatinine (mg/dL)	2.6 (1.4-6)	2.2 (1.2-5.4)	0.016
Sodium (mEq/L)	132.5 (116-164)	135.9 (120-151)	0.04
HE, *n*	47	22	0.03
CTP	12 (6-15)	11 (6-14)	0.73
MELD	27 (11-38)	24 (10-35)	0.95

Data expressed as median (range) otherwise expressed. Hb: Hemoglobin; INR: International normalized ratio; CTP: Child-Turcotte Pugh score; MELD: Model for end stage liver disease.

Table 2 Mortality data among infection and non-infection acute kidney injury groups

Mortality	Infection AKI (*n* = 67)	Non-infection AKI (*n* = 52)		*P* Value
		Diuretic-induced (*n* = 16)	Pre-renal (*n* = 36)	
28-d (*n* = 42)	38	0	4	< 0.0001
90-d (*n* = 20)	11	3	6	0.206

Data expressed as frequency. AKI: Acute kidney injury.

susceptible to inflammatory insult and gut decontamination with norfloxacin prevents renal dysfunction after LPS stimulation. The present study revealed that 1-mo mortality in the infection AKI group was significantly higher than non-infection AKI (38 *vs* 4; $P < 0.0001$) respectively. It is likely that the greatest impact of infection as an acute insult is on short term mortality, and if aggressive and appropriate management is given timely, it may improve renal function also.

Various studies on histopathology of renal tissues in cirrhosis have shown direct renal damage due to high bilirubin levels. There is formation of bile casts in the tubular lumen and accumulation of conjugated bilirubin in tubular epithelial cells, which leads to mitochondrial damage with defective oxidative phosphorylation. All above changes predispose patients of cirrhosis with jaundice to cholemic nephropathy[18]. Nazar *et al*[19] evaluated response of terlipressin in treatment of hepatorenal syndrome type-1 and found serum bilirubin level > 10 mg/dL as a predictor of poor response to therapy. The response rate in patients with bilirubin > 10 mg/dL was 13% as compared to 67% in bilirubin values < 10 mg/dL ($P = 0.001$). We reported higher mean bilirubin values in the infection AKI group than non-infection AKI group (11.3 *vs* 4.4 mg/dL) respectively. Possibly with increasing severity of chronic liver disease as assessed by MELD score, the immune function worsens and there is propensity to get infection in these patients. Our study also revealed significantly higher serum bilirubin values (15.7 *vs* 4.2 mg/dL) in non-survivors than survivors at 28-d, respectively.

In ACLF, HE is multifactorial. Sepsis, metabolic disturbances like hypokalemia, hyponatremia secondary to diuretic use or volume loss, liver dysfunction with hyperammonemia can precipitate HE. We have shown previously that there is increasing cerebral edema in patients with increasing grades of ACLF[20]. Therefore, HE also marks a poor prognosis in patients with infection AKI.

Our study has some limitations. The sample size could be higher, due to which subgroup analysis could not be done as the number of patients were small in individual groups. Second, being a tertiary care institute, most of the patients were referred from primary and secondary care centers after receiving antibiotics, therefore, culture reports were not available in all the patients. Also, the data on

Table 3 Univariate and multivariate analysis of survivors and non-survivors at 28-d

Variables	Survivors (*n* = 77)	Non-survivors (*n* = 42)	Univariate	Multivariate
Age (yr, mean ± SD)	41 ± 21	40 ± 22	0.73	-
Males, *n* (%)	69 (86.9%)	36 (85.7%)	0.41	-
Hb (gm/dL)	8.3 (4-14)	8.4 (3.4-14)	0.838	-
TLC (× 10^3/mm^3)	11 (2.5-37)	17.4 (2-39)	0.001	-
Platelet count (× 10^9/L)	114.6 (100-200)	130 (60-220)	0.520	-
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	4.2 (0.5-30)	15.7 (0.2-46)	0.001	< 0.001
INR	1.8 (1-3.7)	2.1 (1.2-3.8)	0.006	-
Albumin (gm/dL)	2.4 (1-3.7)	2.4 (1.8-3.9)	0.689	-
Sodium (mEq/L)	135 (116-164)	131 (120-146)	0.336	-
HE, *n*	32	37	< 0.001	< 0.01

Data expressed as median (range) otherwise expressed. INR: International normalized ratio; Hb: Hemoglobin; TLC: Total leukocyte count; HE: Hepatic encephalopathy.

Table 4 Univariate and multivariate analysis of survivors and non-survivors in infection acute kidney injury group (*n* = 67) at 28-d

Variables	Survivors (*n* = 29)	Non-survivors (*n* = 38)	Univariate	Multivariate
Age (yr, mean ± SD)	40 ± 21	40 ± 22	0.81	-
Males, *n* (%)	23 (79%)	35 (92%)	0.9	-
Hb (gm/dL)	8.1 (4-14)	7.5 (3.4-14)	0.06	-
TLC (× 10^3/mm^3)	10 (2.5-36)	18.3 (2-39)	0.001	-
Platelet count (× 10^9/L)	112 (65-203)	125 (60-220)	0.520	-
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	4.6 (1.2-30)	16.3 (1.5-46)	0.004	0.01
INR	1.9 (1.3-3.7)	2.1 (1.1-3.8)	0.005	-
Albumin (gm/dL)	2.3 (1-3.6)	2.4 (1.5-3.9)	0.73	-
Sodium (mEq/L)	135 (116-154)	132 (119-148)	0.45	-
HE, *n*	10	37	< 0.001	< 0.01

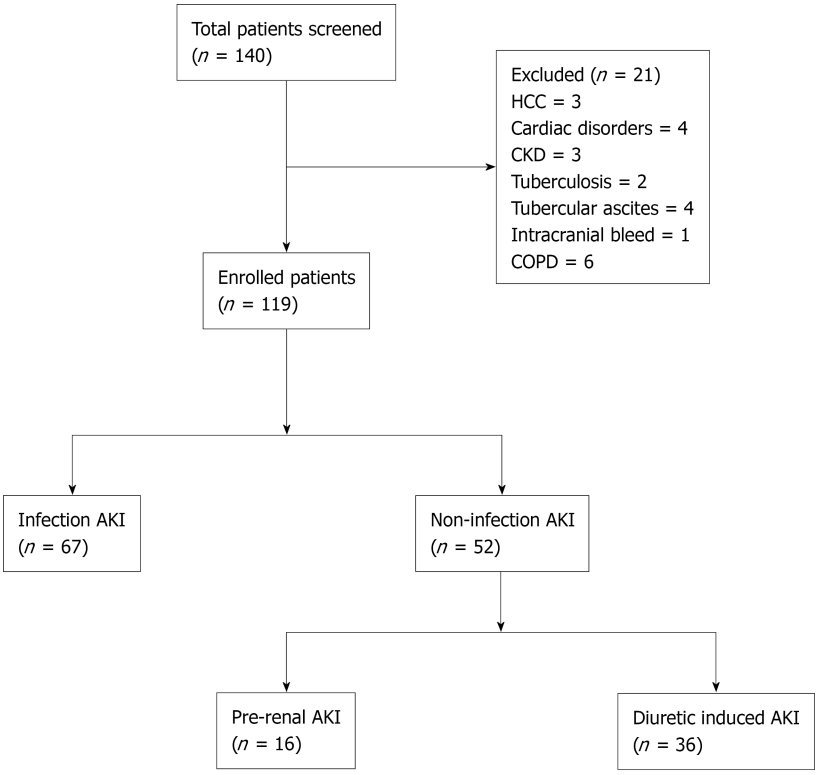
Data expressed as median (range) otherwise expressed. INR: International normalized ratio; Hb: Hemoglobin; TLC: Total leukocyte count; HE: Hepatic encephalopathy.

beta blockers was not available at baseline for all the patients and could not be analyzed.

In ACLF, renal dysfunction is multifactorial with the presence of sepsis, circulatory dysfunction either due to volume loss or sepsis and higher bilirubin levels. We showed that pre-renal, upper GI bleed and diuretic-induced AKI is less severe with favorable outcomes after successful management with very low rate of recurrence. On the other hand, in patients with infections, it is not only the control of infection, but also the number of organ failures which is crucial to determine the final outcome of these patients. Finally, higher grades of ACLF in patients with infection, AKI having liver dysfunction and cerebral failure has worst prognosis with high 28-d mortality.

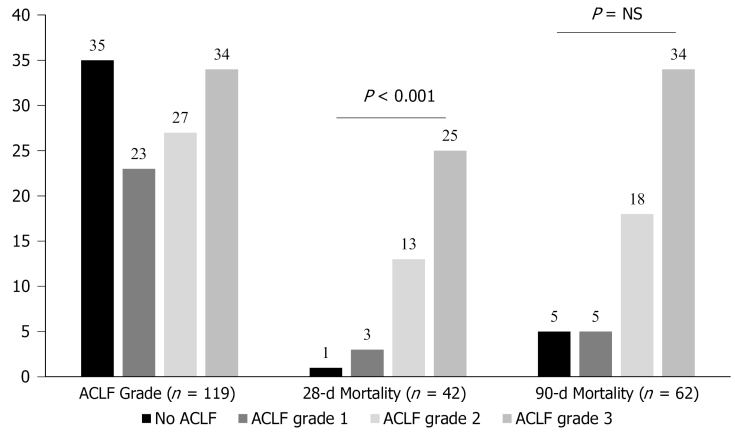
CONCLUSION

Infections lead to worsening hemodynamics in cirrhosis which results in organ failures. Renal dysfunction in these patients further complicates the clinical scenario. We noted that higher bilirubin levels and Hepatic encephalopathy in patients with infection associated AKI portends a dismal prognosis. The present study emphasizes the worse prognosis with infection and need of early identification and aggressive management on admission to improve short-term mortality.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.592 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Flow of patients into the study. AKI: Acute kidney injury; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; CKD: Chronic kidney disease.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.592 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Distribution of acute-on-chronic liver failure grades and 28- and 90-d mortality as per acute-on-chronic liver failure grades among patients of all groups. ACLF: Acute-on-chronic liver failure.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Acute kidney injury (AKI) in cirrhosis has dismal outcomes. Recent data suggests infections being most common insult for acute decompensation of cirrhosis. Infections lead to acute deterioration of already compromised hemodynamics in cirrhosis.

Research motivation

Infections in cirrhosis is a precursor towards multi-organ dysfunction. Kidney failure is one of the early manifestation in cirrhosis which has a potential for reversibility. Identifying high risk of mortality in patients with AKI in cirrhosis may warrant early institution of treatment, especially in presence of infection. This may help to develop new protocols to salvage kidney in presence of infections in

cirrhosis.

Research objectives

To compare infection and non-infection AKI in cirrhosis, and to determine predictors of mortality at 28-d in patients with infection associated AKI.

Research methods

It was a prospective, observational study conducted at a tertiary care hospital for a period of 1 year. After written, informed consent total 119 patients with AKI in cirrhosis were included into the study. AKI was defined as per International Club of Ascites-AKI 2015 criteria. Patients were divided into infection and non-infection AKI groups. Non-infection AKI included patients with pre-renal and diuretic induced AKI. Infection and non-infection AKI groups were compared for clinical and laboratory data. In infection AKI group logistic regression analysis was performed to determine 28-d predictors of mortality.

Research results

There were 119 patients of cirrhosis with AKI. Alcohol (n = 104) was most common etiology of cirrhosis. The infection AKI group had 67 (56%) patients and non-infection AKI had 52 (44%) patients which included pre-renal AKI in 36 (30%) and diuretic-induced AKI in 16 (14%). Infection AKI patients had higher progression of AKI (19/67 *vs* 2/52; P = 0.01) and 28-d mortality (38/67 *vs* 4/5; $P \leq 0.01$) as compared to non-infection AKI patients. On subgroup analysis of Infection AKI group, on multivariate analysis, serum bilirubin as well as presence of HE were independent predictors of 28-d mortality. There was no significant difference of mortality at 90-d between two groups.

Research conclusions

This study says that AKI in cirrhosis with infection has high short term mortality. High bilirubin and presence of hepatic encephalopathy predicts high 28-d mortality in infection associated AKI. Probably AKI in patients with cirrhosis is multifactorial with sepsis, volume depletion, bilirubin as important factors.

Research perspectives

High bilirubin levels can contribute to nephropathy as well as encephalopathy. Still, we do not have effective therapies for high bilirubin values. Future research should focus on drugs to lower bilirubin levels. And probably more data is needed on infections in cirrhosis.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

We thank Prof Rakesh Mittal, Department of Pharmacology, Pt B D Sharma Institute of Medical Sciences for reviewing outcomes of statistical analysis.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Gupta T was the guarantor and designed the study; Ranga N was involved in acquisition of data and drafted the initial manuscript; Goyal SK performed statistical analysis and interpretation of data; Gupta T revised the manuscript critically for important intellectual content.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the institutional ethics committee at Pt. BD Sharma Institute of Medical Sciences, Rohtak (India).

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: There are no conflicts of interest to report.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: India

ORCID number: Tarana Gupta 0000-0003-3453-2040; Naveen Ranga 0000-0002-1697-8252; Sandeep Kumar Goyal 0000-0002-9113-7664.

S-Editor: Chang KL
L-Editor: Filipodia
P-Editor: Chang KL

REFERENCES

1 **Asrani SK**, Kamath PS. Natural history of cirrhosis. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* 2013; **15**: 308 [PMID: 23314828 DOI: 10.1007/s11894-012-0308-y]
2 **D'Amico G**, Pasta L, Morabito A, D'Amico M, Caltagirone M, Malizia G, Tinè F, Giannuoli G, Traina M, Vizzini G, Politi F, Luca A, Virdone R, Licata A, Pagliaro L. Competing risks and prognostic stages of cirrhosis: a 25-year inception cohort study of 494 patients. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **39**: 1180-1193 [PMID: 24654740 DOI: 10.1111/apt.12721]
3 **D'Amico G**, Morabito A, D'Amico M, Pasta L, Malizia G, Rebora P, Valsecchi MG. Clinical states of cirrhosis and competing risks. *J Hepatol* 2018; **68**: 563-576 [PMID: 29111320 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2017.10.020]
4 **D'Amico G**, Morabito A, D'Amico M, Pasta L, Malizia G, Rebora P, Valsecchi MG. New concepts on the clinical course and stratification of compensated and decompensated cirrhosis. *Hepatol Int* 2018; **12**: 34-43 [PMID: 28681347 DOI: 10.1007/s12072-017-9808-z]
5 **Racanelli V**, Rehermann B. The liver as an immunological organ. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: S54-S62 [PMID: 16447271 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21060]
6 **Dirchwolf M**, Ruf AE. Role of systemic inflammation in cirrhosis: From pathogenesis to prognosis. *World J Hepatol* 2015; **7**: 1974-1981 [PMID: 26261687 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v7.i16.1974]
7 **Mehta G**, Gustot T, Mookerjee RP, Garcia-Pagan JC, Fallon MB, Shah VH, Moreau R, Jalan R. Inflammation and portal hypertension - the undiscovered country. *J Hepatol* 2014; **61**: 155-163 [PMID: 24657399 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.03.014]
8 **Trebicka J**, Reiberger T, Laleman W. Gut-Liver Axis Links Portal Hypertension to Acute-on-Chronic Liver Failure. *Visc Med* 2018; **34**: 270-275 [PMID: 30345284 DOI: 10.1159/000490262]
9 **Moreau R**, Jalan R, Gines P, Pavesi M, Angeli P, Cordoba J, Durand F, Gustot T, Saliba F, Domenicali M, Gerbes A, Wendon J, Alessandria C, Laleman W, Zeuzem S, Trebicka J, Bernardi M, Arroyo V; CANONIC Study Investigators of the EASL–CLIF Consortium. Acute-on-chronic liver failure is a distinct syndrome that develops in patients with acute decompensation of cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2013; **144**: 1426-1437, 1437.e1 [PMID: 23474284 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2013.02.042]
10 **Piano S**, Singh V, Caraceni P, Maiwall R, Alessandria C, Fernandez J, Soares EC, Kim DJ, Kim SE, Marino M, Vorobioff J, Barea RCR, Merli M, Elkrief L, Vargas V, Krag A, Singh SP, Lesmana LA, Toledo C, Marciano S, Verhelst X, Wong F, Intagliata N, Rabinowich L, Colombato L, Kim SG, Gerbes A, Durand F, Roblero JP, Bhamidimarri KR, Boyer TD, Maevskaya M, Fassio E, Kim HS, Hwang JS, Gines P, Gadano A, Sarin SK, Angeli P; International Club of Ascites Global Study Group. Epidemiology and Effects of Bacterial Infections in Patients With Cirrhosis Worldwide. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 1368-1380.e10 [PMID: 30552895 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2018.12.005]
11 **Garg H**, Kumar A, Garg V, Sharma P, Sharma BC, Sarin SK. Clinical profile and predictors of mortality in patients of acute-on-chronic liver failure. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 166-171 [PMID: 21978580 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2011.08.029]
12 **Gupta T**, Lochan D, Verma N, Rathi S, Agrawal S, Duseja A, Taneja S, Chawla YK, Dhiman RK. Prediction of 28-day mortality in acute decompensation of cirrhosis through the presence of multidrug-resistant infections at admission. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2020; **35**: 461-466 [PMID: 31334860 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.14788]
13 **Arroyo V**, Angeli P, Moreau R, Jalan R, Clària J, Trebicka J, Fernández J, Gustot T, Caraceni P, Bernardi M; investigators from the EASL-CLIF Consortium, Grifols Chair and European Foundation for the Study of Chronic Liver Failure (EF-Clif). The systemic inflammation hypothesis: Towards a new paradigm of acute decompensation and multiorgan failure in cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2021; **74**: 670-685 [PMID: 33301825 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2020.11.048]
14 **Vázquez-Carballo C**, Guerrero-Hue M, García-Caballero C, Rayego-Mateos S, Opazo-Ríos L, Morgado-Pascual JL, Herencia-Bellido C, Vallejo-Mudarra M, Cortegano I, Gaspar ML, de Andrés B, Egido J, Moreno JA. Toll-Like Receptors in Acute Kidney Injury. *Int J Mol Sci* 2021; **22** [PMID: 33467524 DOI: 10.3390/ijms22020816]
15 **Gomez H**, Ince C, De Backer D, Pickkers P, Payen D, Hotchkiss J, Kellum JA. A unified theory of sepsis-induced acute kidney injury: inflammation, microcirculatory dysfunction, bioenergetics, and the tubular cell adaptation to injury. *Shock* 2014; **41**: 3-11 [PMID: 24346647 DOI: 10.1097/SHK.0000000000000052]
16 **Pulskens WP**, Teske GJ, Butter LM, Roelofs JJ, van der Poll T, Florquin S, Leemans JC. Toll-like receptor-4 coordinates the innate immune response of the kidney to renal ischemia/reperfusion injury. *PLoS One* 2008; **3**: e3596 [PMID: 18974879 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0003596]
17 **Shah N**, Dhar D, El Zahraa Mohammed F, Habtesion A, Davies NA, Jover-Cobos M, Macnaughtan J, Sharma V, Olde Damink SWM, Mookerjee RP, Jalan R. Prevention of acute kidney injury in a rodent model of cirrhosis following selective gut decontamination is associated with reduced renal TLR4 expression. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 1047-1053 [PMID: 22266601 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2011.11.024]
18 **Krones E**, Pollheimer MJ, Rosenkranz AR, Fickert P. Cholemic nephropathy - Historical notes and novel perspectives.

Biochim Biophys Acta Mol Basis Dis 2018; **1864**: 1356-1366 [PMID: 28851656 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2017.08.028]

19 **Nazar A**, Pereira GH, Guevara M, Martín-Llahi M, Pepin MN, Marinelli M, Solá E, Baccaro ME, Terra C, Arroyo V, Ginès P. Predictors of response to therapy with terlipressin and albumin in patients with cirrhosis and type 1 hepatorenal syndrome. *Hepatology* 2010; **51**: 219-226 [PMID: 19877168 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23283]

20 **Gupta T**, Dhiman RK, Ahuja CK, Agrawal S, Chopra M, Kalra N, Duseja A, Taneja S, Khandelwal N, Chawla Y. Characterization of Cerebral Edema in Acute-on-Chronic Liver Failure. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2017; **7**: 190-197 [PMID: 28970705 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2017.04.001]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 602-611

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.602

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Benign course of residual inflammation at end of treatment of liver transplant recipients after sofosbuvir based therapy

Bahaaeldeen Ismail, Karim M Benrajab, Pablo Bejarano, Phillip Ruiz, Debbie Sears, Andreas Tzakis, Xaralambos Bobby Zervos

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Unsolicited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): A
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Ferreira GSA, Mrzljak A

Received: October 23, 2021
Peer-review started: October 23, 2021
First decision: December 2, 2021
Revised: December 16, 2021
Accepted: February 15, 2022
Article in press: February 15, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Bahaaeldeen Ismail, Karim M Benrajab, Division of Digestive Diseases and Nutrition, University of Kentucky College of Medicine, Lexington, KY 40536, United States

Pablo Bejarano, Department of Pathology, Cleveland Clinic Florida, Weston, FL 33331, United States

Phillip Ruiz, Department of Pathology, University of Miami Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL 33136, United States

Debbie Sears, Andreas Tzakis, Xaralambos Bobby Zervos, Department of Liver Transplant, Cleveland Clinic Florida, Weston, FL 33331, United States

Corresponding author: Karim M Benrajab, MD, Assistant Professor, Internal Medicine/Division of Digestive Diseases and Nutrition, University of Kentucky College of Medicine, 770 Rose Street, MN649, Lexington, KY 40536, United States. karimbenrajab@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Persistent inflammation on histology after successful hepatitis C (HCV) treatment has been reported. However, data regarding the long-term impact in liver transplant recipients is limited, particularly after using direct-acting antiviral (DAA) therapies.

AIM

To evaluate the impact of successful treatment with DAAs on histological changes and occult HCV and to describe the clinical course of residual inflammation in liver transplant recipients.

METHODS

We conducted a case series of 13 chronic HCV infected liver transplant recipients successfully treated with DAAs between December 2013 and May 2014. All patients were treated for 24 wk and had non-detectable serum HCV RNA by the time of biopsy. Only patients with at least one liver biopsy at or after treatment were included. We examined liver biopsies for evidence of residual inflammation and the presence of intrahepatic HCV RNA.

RESULTS

Persistent inflammation was seen in 12/13 patients on end of treatment biopsy. Inflammation was still seen in the available five follow-up biopsies (range 38-48 wk after the end of treatment). Intrahepatic HCV RNA was undetectable in all biopsies. All patients had preserved graft function for a mean follow-up of 2.5 years, except one that developed chronic rejection.

CONCLUSION

After successful HCV treatment with DAAs, liver transplant recipients may have persistent inflammation on biopsy without evidence of intracellular RNA. The clinical outcome remained favorable in most patients. Further studies with a larger number and longer follow-up are needed to establish the implication of this finding on long-term graft function.

Key Words: Immunosuppression; Liver transplantation; Recurrent hepatitis C; Sustained virologic response; Interferon

Core Tip: Unexplained residual inflammation can be seen in a subset of liver transplant recipients successfully treated with direct-acting antiviral therapies; however, it does not seem to affect graft function. An extensive clinical and histopathologic workup should still be performed to exclude other potentially treatable conditions.

Citation: Ismail B, Benrajab KM, Bejarano P, Ruiz P, Sears D, Tzakis A, Zervos XB. Benign course of residual inflammation at end of treatment of liver transplant recipients after sofosbuvir based therapy. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 602-611

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/602.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.602

INTRODUCTION

Until the emergence of direct-acting antivirals (DAAs), hepatitis C virus (HCV) related liver cirrhosis was the most common indication for liver transplant in adults[1,2]. Unfortunately, HCV recurrence after transplant is universal, with immediate exposure after graft reperfusion, leading to accelerated fibrosis, eventually cirrhosis, and graft failure if untreated[3]. Graft survival in HCV infection has been inferior to transplant for other disease etiologies[4], and HCV remains a common indication for re-transplantation[5], leading to a high burden on transplant resources. Eradication of HCV in the immediate pre-or early post-transplant setting can preserve graft function, but historically a difficult goal to achieve. The availability of DAAs has made significant improvement in the efficacy and tolerability in the post-transplant population[6,7], compared to the interferon (IFN) based regimens. The latter had a lower rate of sustained virologic response (SVR) in this unique patient population (as low as 30%), with a higher discontinuation rate due to adverse events, including graft rejection[8].

Although SVR is the critical clinical endpoint, there are mixed results concerning the post-SVR histologic benefit and detection of intra hepatocyte HCV (occult HCV). Prior reports on HCV recurrence following liver transplantation showed histological improvement after achieving SVR with IFN based regimens[9], whereas other studies reported ongoing inflammation in a subset of patients[10,11]. One study included 36 Liver transplant (LT) recipients treated with IFN based regimens showed persistent inflammation in 69% of the post SVR biopsies and identified occult hepatitis C in only one out of 32 biopsies that were tested[11].

Data on inflammation following SVR after DAA are scarce. A study that included nine LT recipients treated with DAAs identified residual inflammation after SVR in four patients and HCV RNA in the tissue sample in four patients[12]. Another study included LT recipients with recurrent HCV and advanced fibrosis (F3-F4) showed improved liver function in the majority of patients; however, regression of fibrosis by elastography (48 wk after treatment) was only seen in 39/77 subjects (51%). Although details on liver histology for these patients were not reported, this remains concerning for residual inflammation in some patients that could have progressed over time[13].

We believe that the finding of persistent inflammation in LT recipients after SVR using DAAs requires further research work as it is of clinical importance to the transplant team. At the same time, many of the available series included a small sample and focused mainly on histology without providing long-term clinical data.

The study aimed to evaluate the impact of successful treatment with DAAs on histologic changes and the occurrence of occult HCV in liver transplant recipients with chronic HCV. The secondary aim was to describe the long-term clinical course of residual inflammation if present.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Patients population and data collection

We reviewed all chronic HCV infected liver transplant recipients treated with DAA regimens between December 2013 and May 2014. We excluded patients who did not achieve SVR or did not have at least one liver biopsy at or after the end of treatment. The study protocol was approved by the Institutional Review Board of the Cleveland Clinic Foundation in Florida. Data collected at baseline and during patient follow-up included; age, gender, race, date of transplant, baseline and end-of-treatment liver enzymes and viral load, HCV treatment regimen, other serologic autoimmune and virological markers, immunosuppression treatment regimen, and liver histology at end-of-treatment. When available, before-treatment and follow-up liver histology were also reported.

Outcome definitions

SVR: Defined as the absence of HCV RNA by polymerase chain reaction12 and 24 weeks after completion of treatment. The Linear Range of the used assay was 15 IU/mL to 100000000 IU/mL.

End of treatment liver biopsy: for the purpose of our study, this was defined as liver biopsy performed within 12 weeks after HCV RNA becomes undetectable.

Post-treatment liver biopsy: biopsy was done at least 6 mo after the end of treatment.

Biopsy method: All biopsies were performed percutaneously using an 18-gauge coaxial needle *via* ultrasound guidance. Two core tissue samples were obtained and placed in a formalin container. All samples reviewed by the pathologist contained at least 20 portal tracts to be considered adequate. Tissue sections were processed and stained with hematoxylin-eosin and trichrome stains. For the purpose of this study, the liver biopsies were evaluated by an expert liver pathologist with over 20 years of experience reading liver biopsies in an academic transplant center. The pathologist was blinded to the patients' clinical data, diagnoses, and previous biopsy interpretation. Evaluation of fibrosis and inflammation was described using Batts-Ludwig grading and staging[14]. Biopsies showing inflammation were carefully examined by the pathologist for the presence of rejection, de novo autoimmune hepatitis, and evidence of hepatotropic and non-hepatotropic viral hepatitis, including cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, and Herpes simplex virus.

Method for HCV quantification on liver samples: Total RNA was isolated from five to six 10 μm cuts (curls) from formalin-fixed, paraffin-embedded (FFPE) biopsies in a Maxwell 16/LEV instrument using the Maxwell®16 LEV RNA FFPE Purification Kit (Promega). The concentration of purified RNA was quantified in NanoDrop 2000. 50 μL of each RNA was diluted in 950 μL of SPEX buffer and ran in a COBAS® AmpliPrep/COBAS® TaqMan® System using the HCV test (Roche Molecular Systems Inc.). The viral load, when detected, was expressed as IU/100 ng of RNA.

RESULTS

Out of 46 patients treated for HCV following liver transplant during the study time, 13 patients met the inclusion criteria. Their baseline and demographic characteristics are summarized in Table 1.

Treatment regimens

One patient started treatment before transplant (125 days before transplant), while 12/13 patients started after transplant (mean 5 years from transplant, range 32 days – 18 years). Eight patients (62%) were treated with Sofosbuvir plus Ribavirin, three patients (23%) were treated with Sofosbuvir plus Simeprevir, and two patients (15%) were started on Sofosbuvir plus Ribavirin then switched to Sofosbuvir plus Simeprevir because of worsening anemia. The total treatment duration in all patients was 24 wk.

Virologic response

Serum HCV RNA was undetectable in all patients at end-of-treatment and remained undetectable for another 12 and 24 wk post-treatment, consistent with SVR 12 and 24 (Figure 1).

End of treatment biopsy

Biopsies at the end of treatment were reviewed in all included patients (mean time from treatment start to biopsy was 25 wk, range 20-33 wk). The biopsies were performed to evaluate abnormal liver function tests or assess the resolution of inflammation after HCV eradication.

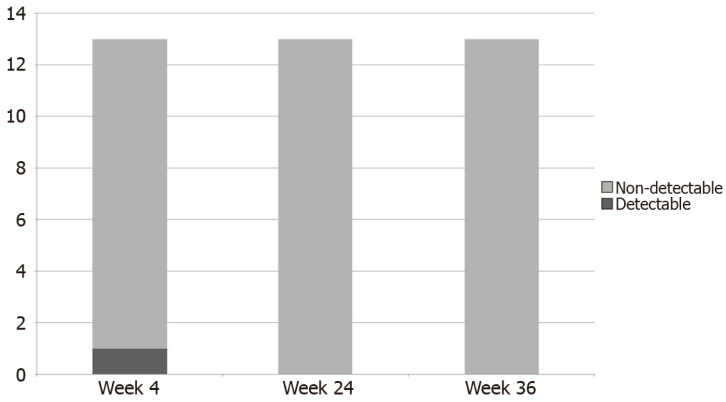
Table 1 Patients baseline and end of treatment charactarestics

	Gender	Age attreatment start	HCV genotype	Immune suppression	Baseline ALT U/L	Baseline RNA × 10^6	Time transplant to treatment (m)	Treatment regimen	End of treatment ALT U/L	End of treatment biopsy			
										Treatment to biopsy (wk)	Inflammation grade	Fibrosis stage	Other findings
1	F	59	1a	MMF, tacrolimus	57	1.3	22 mo	SOF/SIM	18	25	2	1	
2	M	57	1a	Tacrolimus	12	0.3	32 d	SOF/RBV	17	22	0	0	Mild centrilobular dilatation with focal hemorrhage
3	M	59	1a	MMF, tacrolimus	85	4.0	13 mo	SOF/RBV > SOF/SIM	11	32	2	0	
4	M	61	1a or 1b	Tacrolimus	20	0.1	5 mo	SOF/RBV	16	22	3	0	
5	M	68	1a or 1b	Tacrolimus	44	1.2	8.5 yr	SOF/RBV	18	25	1	3	
6	F	76	1a	Tacrolimus	20	10.6	5.5 mo	SOF/SIM	48	25	2	0	Histocytes granuloma
7	F	80	1a	Tacrolimus	12	5.2	18 yr	SOF/SIM	15	24	3	2	
8	M	62	1a	MMF, tacrolimus	166	1.7	43 d	SOF/RBV	9	30	1	0	Steatosis (< 5%)
9	M	60	3a	Tacrolimus, prednisone	23	0.9	4 mo	SOF/RBV	82	33	1	0	Rare councilmen bodies
10	M	58	1a	Tacrolimus	25	1.7	20 mo	SOF/RBV	30	25	4	3	Mild TCMR cannot be ruled out
11	M	53	3a	Cyclosporine	78	5.2	4.5 yr	SOF/RBV	37	23	4	2	Mild TCMR cannot be ruled out. Two portal tracts show non-necrotizing granulomas
12	F	61	2b	Tacrolimus	43	7.6	6 mo	SOF/RBV	34	20	2	1	
13	M	65	1a	Tacrolimus	94	2.0	7.5 yr	SOF/RBV > SOF/SIM	14	29	2	2	Mild absence of bile ducts

ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; MMF: Mycophenolate mofetil; RBV: Ribavirin; SIM: Simeprevir; SOF: Sofosbuvir.

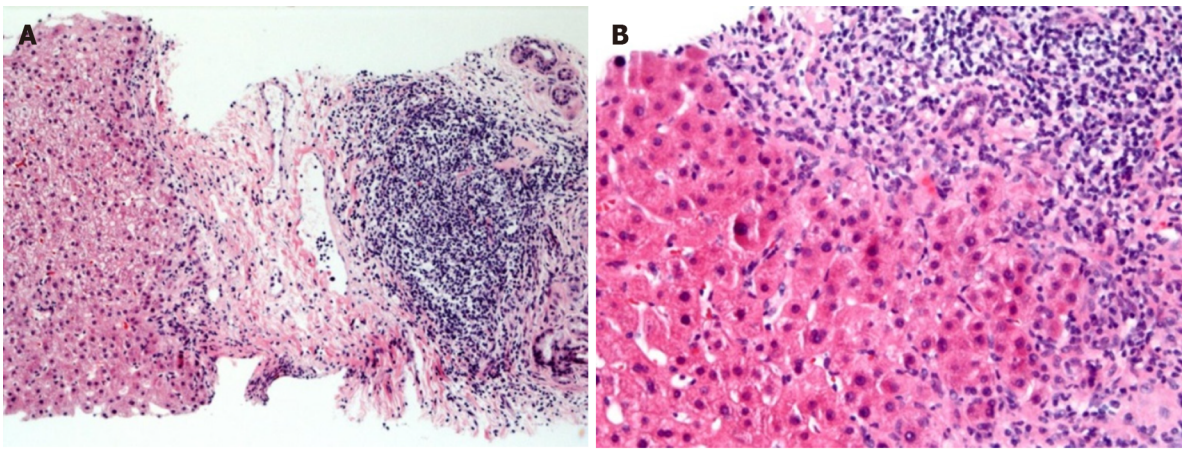
Although all patients had undetectable RNA by the time of biopsy, active inflammation was present in 12/13 patients. Eight patients (62%) had grade 1-2 inflammation, and four (31%) had grades 3-4, Table 1.

The inflammation observed was consistent with chronic HCV with the presence of chronic portal inflammation, lymphoid aggregates, lobular inflammation, and acidophil bodies (Figure 2). There was a histologic suggestion of mild T cell-mediated rejection on biopsy in 2 patients, but clinically deemed not to have rejection, as one had normal aminotransferases, and the other one had spontaneous normalization of aminotransferases without adjusting their immune suppression regimen. One patient had a



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.602 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Hepatitis C RNA during and after treatment.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.602 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 End of treatment liver biopsy. A: Portal tract showing fibrosis and a robust lymphoid aggregate reminiscent of a germinal center in the biopsy tissue from patient 12 who completed treatment for hepatitis C (Hematoxylin and eosin, X50); B: There is interface hepatitis as the portal lymphocytic infiltrates spill into the surrounding liver parenchyma in the biopsy tissue from patient 9 (Hematoxylin and eosin, 100X).

mild absence of bile ducts concerning for early chronic rejection. Two patients had occasional non-necrotizing granulomas in portal tracts without an identifiable cause. Steatosis was present in only one patient and was mild < 5%.

We compared pre- and post-therapy histological grades of inflammation in five patients (biopsies were performed at a mean of 17 wk before treatment start, range 10-26 wk). The mean time between pre and end of treatment biopsies was 43 wk, range 35-55 wk. Inflammation increased in three patients (by one point), decreased in one patient (by one point), and remained the same in one, Table 2.

Post-treatment liver biopsy

Post-treatment follow-up biopsies were available in five patients (range 38-48 wk after the end of treatment). Compared to end-of-treatment biopsies, inflammation decreased in 4 out of 5 patients (by one point) and increased in one patient (by one point). Fibrosis increased by one point in two patients and remained the same in two. No other causes of inflammation were identified clinically or histologically, Table 3.

HCV RNA was undetected on all available end-of-treatment (13) and post-treatment liver biopsies (5).

Clinical follow up

The clinical course for all patients was tracked for a mean of 2.5 years after the end of treatment. None of the patients had HCV relapse or worsening liver function. All had preserved graft function, normal aminotransferase, and alkaline phosphatase levels except one that had chronically elevated alkaline phosphatase and was later diagnosed with chronic ductopenic rejection (the patient that had a mild absence of bile ducts on the end of treatment biopsy).

Table 2 End of treatment biopsy compared to prior to treatment biopsy

Patient number	Weeks from biopsy to treatment start	Prior to treatment inflammation grade	End of treatment	
			Inflammation	
			Grade	Change
1	10	1	2	↑
5	14	2	1	↓
10	22	3	4	↑
11	18	3	4	↑
13	26	2	2	↔

↑: Increased; ↔ : Unchanged; ↓: Improved.

Table 3 End of treatment biopsy compared to follow up biopsy

Patient number	End of treatment biopsy		Weeks between both biopsies	ALT	Follow up biopsy	
	Inflammation	Fibrosis			Inflammation	Fibrosis
3	2	0	38	20	1 ↓	0 ↔
4	3	0	42	15	2 ↓	1 ↑
5	1	3	43	20	2 ↑	3 ↔
10	4	3	48	22	2 ↓	3↔
11	4	2	44	71	3 ↓	3 ↑

↑: Increased; ↔ : Unchanged; ↓: Improved.
ALT: Alanine aminotransferase.

DISCUSSION

Even after the wide use of DAAs, HCV-related cirrhosis remains one of the leading indications for liver transplant and re-transplant in adults[5]. Due to their safety profile, DAAs allow treating more patients with decompensated cirrhosis prior to transplant; however, treatment is commonly deferred to the post-transplant period to avoid reducing the transplant priority or allowing receipt of a hepatitis C positive organ[15]. DAAs show high SVR rates in transplant recipients; however, data regarding the histological impact of these drugs in terms of inflammatory changes is limited. Throughout our early DAA experience, we evaluated end of treatment and follow-up biopsies after achieving undetectable RNA. We noted that biopsies still showed persistent inflammation at the end of treatment in 12/13 patients, with no improvement from pre-treatment in 4/5 patients.

Additionally, all the available follow-up biopsies (up to 48 wk from the end of treatment) still showed persistent inflammation. We thoroughly evaluated different possibilities that could explain this persistent inflammation. Although no clinically significant drug interactions are reported between immune suppressive regimens and the included DAAs in our study[16], a cure of HCV can potentially influence immune suppression drug levels, and rejection may be a concern. Prior studies have shown an impact of ongoing HCV infection on CYP3A4[17] and eventually on cyclosporine and tacrolimus levels. In one report, lower doses of these immunosuppressants were needed to reach the same therapeutic level compared to non HCV infected patients[18], raising the possibility that resolution of HCV infection can lead to lower immunosuppressant level with subsequent rejection. This possibility was carefully examined in our patients; findings suggestive of mild T cell-mediated rejection were present only in two patients on end of treatment biopsies. The histological changes present were minimal and, when correlated, clinically deemed insignificant as the patients did well clinically without additional interventions or adjustment of immune suppression regimen. Persistent unexplained hepatitis in the liver allograft has been previously reported as idiopathic post-transplant hepatitis (IPTH), chronic hepatitis of unknown etiology, with a variable prevalence ranging from 10%-50% in the adult population[19]. The implication of this diagnosis in a chronic HCV setting is unclear as most of the studies excluded this patient population[20,21].

Furthermore, in our study, inflammation was present in higher frequency (in 12/13 end of treatment biopsies and all 5 post-treatment biopsies), suggesting the presence of another etiology. Prior studies also described a characteristic pattern of plasma cell hepatitis[10,22,23] in patients who achieved SVR after receiving IFN based therapy. This unique pattern was not seen in our patients. One possible explanation is that plasma cell hepatitis is seen more in IFN treated patients, given the immune stimulant effect of IFN leading to exposure of new antigens on hepatocytes[24]. All our patients treated with IFN free regimens can possibly explain the absence of this histologic pattern.

Prior studies reported occult HCV infection, a "controversial" term, indicating persistence of HCV RNA within hepatocytes and/or peripheral blood mononuclear cells despite successfully achieving SVR [25]. Although the active liver disease has not been reported with this finding, it has been shown that this persistent low-level HCV replication promotes persistence of both humoral and T-cellular HCV specific markers, that inversely correlated with time from SVR but can persist for up to 9 years[26]. Our patients, in theory, are at high risk for developing occult HCV for multiple reasons. First, it has been proposed that following treatment with DAA, there is a higher potential for developing occult HCV when compared to IFN based treatment due to the lack of induced immunologic response of the interferon effect[27]. Second, the risk of occult HCV in the immune-compromised patients is likely increased because of the limited ability of the immune system for complete viral clearance, similar to end-stage renal disease patients on dialysis[28]. However, the occurrence of occult infection remains questionable[29], and data following DAA have been inconsistent. One study reported detectable HCV RNA in hepatocytes or peripheral blood mononuclear cells in five out of nine post-transplant patients who were treated with DAA and had elevated liver enzymes despite achieving SVR[12].

In contrast, another study did not find evidence of intracellular RNA in 4 patients with persistent liver enzyme elevation after DAA[30]. The discrepancy in results could be related to the lack of method standardization used among studies to detect HCV RNA in tissue; different sensitivities have been reported depending on the used method and tissue processing before analysis[27,31]. Due to the retrospective nature of our study, we used FFPE specimens. We found no HCV RNA particles on the available end of treatment and post-treatment biopsies indicating that occult infection is not the underlying etiology of residual inflammation in our cohort.

The way viral infections induce liver inflammation is complex; one of the identified triggers of this immune response is the activation of transmembrane and cytosolic receptors that sense both the viral nucleic acid and certain host nucleic acid segments, particularly DNA derived from mitochondrial damage. It has been presumed that this plays a role in some non-viral liver injury models as acetaminophen hepatotoxicity and ischemic injury[32]. The persistent inflammation seen in our subjects could be triggered by the host rather than the remaining viral RNA. However, this is not certain as we did not immunologically characterize the inflammatory cells on liver biopsies for HCV-specific T-cell responses, and this can be an area for future research.

Another likely explanation for the persistent inflammation in our series can be the lag of the histological improvement behind viral clearance and biochemical improvement. Our study did not show complete resolution of inflammation on the end of treatment biopsies nor on post-treatment biopsies. However, most of our patients had post-treatment liver biopsy within 6 mo after completion of treatment, which might not be enough time for inflammation to resolve. Moreover, it should be noted that the change in inflammation grades and fibrosis stages between both biopsies is subtle; hence, we cannot exclude the possibility of this being secondary to sampling variation rather than a true change.

Our study limitations include the small number of patients, mostly genotype 1 treated with some early sofosbuvir-based regimens. However, we believe that our sample is relatively larger than similar studies that evaluated histologic changes post-transplant in this setting and that the findings are likely generalizable to other DAA regimens. Moreover, we did not check for HCV RNA in peripheral blood mononuclear cells due to the retrospective nature of our study, so there is a possibility that we may have missed occult infection in the mononuclear cells. However, in the setting of residual inflammation on liver biopsy that is consistent with HCV activity, we believe it is more important to examine the liver tissue, which was negative for HCV RNA particles, making occult HCV infection a less likely explanation for this persistent inflammation.

CONCLUSION

Our case series is among the few available that report the histologic findings and clinical outcomes in transplant recipients after achieving SVR using DAAs. We were also able to rule out occult HCV, and we followed the patients clinically for 2.5 years showing a benign course of the residual inflammation in most subjects. Based on our findings, the residual inflammation appears to have a favorable outcome, but it is crucial to exclude other causes of inflammation thoroughly. Moreover, based on our results and prior studies, we believe that checking occult HCV is not routinely necessary from a clinical standpoint. Liver transplant recipients often require liver biopsy for various reasons; recognizing the natural history of this residual inflammation is important to the transplant team. Further studies with a larger and more diverse patient population and longer follow-up will help better characterize the long-term outcome of

this persistent inflammation following SVR.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Liver transplant recipients may undergo liver biopsy for different indications, and persistent inflammation in patients who receive DAAs can be seen despite achieving sustained virologic response (SVR).

Research motivation

Data on the significance of persistent inflammation on histology after successful treatment of hepatitis C infection with Direct-acting antiviral (DAA) therapies is scarce.

Research objectives

We aimed to examine the impact of successful treatment with DAAs on histological changes and to describe the clinical course of residual inflammation in liver transplant recipients.

Research methods

A case series of chronic hepatitis C liver transplant recipients received DAA post-liver transplant and achieved sustained virologic response. Only patients with at least one liver biopsy were included.

Research results

Thirteen patients were included in this case series; all achieved SVR. Twelve patients were found to have persistent inflammation at the end of treatment biopsy. Five patients had follow-up biopsies, all of which had persistent inflammation. However, all patients had preserved graft function up to 2.5 years, except one who had chronic rejection.

Research conclusions

Persistent inflammation can be seen in liver transplant recipients treated with DAAs; however, it did not appear to affect the outcome.

Research perspectives

The findings of our case series shed light on the significance of persistent inflammation in liver transplant recipients post successful DAAs treatment. Further studies are needed to include a more diverse patient population.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Zervos XB and Tzakis A designed the research; Ismail B, Sears D performed the research; Ismail B, Bejarano P, Ruiz P analyzed the data; Sears D, Benrajab KM, Ismail B, and Zervos XB wrote the paper; all authors contributed to critical revision of the manuscript, and saw and approved the final version.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by Cleveland Clinic Institutional Review Board.

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Authors have no relevant relationships or conflict of interest to disclose.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Bahaaeldeen Ismail 0000-0001-9583-8508; Karim M Benrajab 0000-0002-7988-1159; Pablo Bejarano 0000-0001-7933-9223; Phillip Ruiz 0000-0003-2291-4594; Debbie Sears 0000-0002-8376-9979; Andreas Tzakis 0000-0001-8077-2315; Xaralambos Bobby Zervos 0000-0001-6783-0525.

S-Editor: Ma YJ
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

REFERENCES

1 **Verna EC**, Brown RS Jr. Hepatitis C virus and liver transplantation. *Clin Liver Dis* 2006; **10**: 919-940 [PMID: 17164125 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2006.08.012]
2 **Cholankeril G**, Ahmed A. Alcoholic Liver Disease Replaces Hepatitis C Virus Infection as the Leading Indication for Liver Transplantation in the United States. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2018; **16**: 1356-1358 [PMID: 29199144 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2017.11.045]
3 **Firpi RJ**, Clark V, Soldevila-Pico C, Morelli G, Cabrera R, Levy C, Machicao VI, Chaoru C, Nelson DR. The natural history of hepatitis C cirrhosis after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2009; **15**: 1063-1071 [PMID: 19718647 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21784]
4 **Gane EJ**, Portmann BC, Naoumov NV, Smith HM, Underhill JA, Donaldson PT, Maertens G, Williams R. Long-term outcome of hepatitis C infection after liver transplantation. *N Engl J Med* 1996; **334**: 815-820 [PMID: 8596547 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199603283341302]
5 **Berenguer M**, López-Labrador FX, Wright TL. Hepatitis C and liver transplantation. *J Hepatol* 2001; **35**: 666-678 [PMID: 11690716 DOI: 10.1016/s0168-8278(01)00179-9]
6 **Peyton A**, Bhamidimarri KR. Hepatitis C treatment in liver transplant setting. *Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken)* 2015; **5**: 145-149 [PMID: 31040972 DOI: 10.1002/cld.475]
7 **Coilly A**, Roche B, Duclos-Vallée JC, Samuel D. Optimal therapy in hepatitis C virus liver transplant patients with direct acting anti-virals. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 44-50 [DOI: 10.1111/liv.12728]
8 **Wang CS**, Ko HH, Yoshida EM, Marra CA, Richardson K. Interferon-based combination anti-viral therapy for hepatitis C virus after liver transplantation: a review and quantitative analysis. *Am J Transplant* 2006; **6**: 1586-1599 [PMID: 16827859 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-6143.2006.01362.x]
9 **Carrión JA**, Navasa M, García-Retortillo M, García-Pagan JC, Crespo G, Bruguera M, Bosch J, Forns X. Efficacy of antiviral therapy on hepatitis C recurrence after liver transplantation: a randomized controlled study. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 1746-1756 [PMID: 17484872 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2007.03.041]
10 **Dhanasekaran R**, Sanchez W, Mounajjed T, Wiesner RH, Watt KD, Charlton MR. Impact of fibrosis progression on clinical outcome in patients treated for post-transplant hepatitis C recurrence. *Liver Int* 2015; **35**: 2433-2441 [PMID: 26058570 DOI: 10.1111/liv.12890]
11 **Whitcomb E**, Choi WT, Jerome KR, Cook L, Landis C, Ahn J, Te HS, Esfeh J, Hanouneh IA, Rayhill SC, Gibson W, Plesec T, Koo J, Wang HL, Hart J, Pai RK, Westerhoff M. Biopsy Specimens From Allograft Liver Contain Histologic Features of Hepatitis C Virus Infection After Virus Eradication. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2017; **15**: 1279-1285 [PMID: 28501538 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2017.04.041]
12 **Elmasry S**, Wadhwa S, Bang BR, Cook L, Chopra S, Kanel G, Kim B, Harper T, Feng Z, Jerome KR, Kahn JA, Saito T. Detection of Occult Hepatitis C Virus Infection in Patients Who Achieved a Sustained Virologic Response to Direct-Acting Antiviral Agents for Recurrent Infection After Liver Transplantation. *Gastroenterology* 2017; **152**: 550-553.e8 [PMID: 27838287 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2016.11.002]
13 **Martini S**, Sacco M, Strona S, Arese D, Tandoi F, Dell Olio D, Stradella D, Cocchis D, Mirabella S, Rizza G, Magistroni P, Moschini P, Ottobrelli A, Amoroso A, Rizzetto M, Salizzoni M, Saracco GM, Romagnoli R. Impact of viral eradication with sofosbuvir-based therapy on the outcome of post-transplant hepatitis C with severe fibrosis. *Liver Int* 2017; **37**: 62-70 [PMID: 27344058 DOI: 10.1111/liv.13193]
14 **Goodman ZD**. Grading and staging systems for inflammation and fibrosis in chronic liver diseases. *J Hepatol* 2007; **47**: 598-607 [PMID: 17692984 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2007.07.006]
15 **AASLD-IDSA HCV Guidance Panel**. Hepatitis C Guidance 2018 Update: AASLD-IDSA Recommendations for Testing, Managing, and Treating Hepatitis C Virus Infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2018; **67**: 1477-1492 [PMID: 30215672 DOI: 10.1093/cid/ciy585]
16 **Unique patient populations: Patients WHO develop recurrent HCV infection post-liver transplantation**. AASLD-IDSA. Recomm. testing, Manag. Treat. Hepat C [DOI: 10.1002/cld.791]
17 **Morcos PN**, Moreira SA, Brennan BJ, Blotner S, Shulman NS, Smith PF. Influence of chronic hepatitis C infection on cytochrome P450 3A4 activity using midazolam as an in vivo probe substrate. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2013; **69**: 1777-1784 [PMID: 23765407 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-013-1525-5]
18 **Oo YH**, Dudley T, Nightingale P, Haydon G, Mutimer D. Tacrolimus and cyclosporin doses and blood levels in hepatitis C and alcoholic liver disease patients after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 81-87 [PMID: 18161844 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21387]
19 **Adeyi O**, Fischer SE, Guindi M. Liver allograft pathology: approach to interpretation of needle biopsies with clinicopathological correlation. *J Clin Pathol* 2010; **63**: 47-74 [PMID: 19847014 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2009.068254]
20 **Miyagawa-Hayashino A**, Haga H, Egawa H, Hayashino Y, Uemoto S, Manabe T. Idiopathic post-transplantation hepatitis following living donor liver transplantation, and significance of autoantibody titre for outcome. *Transpl Int* 2009; **22**: 303-312 [PMID: 19040488 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-2277.2008.00803.x]

21 **Syn WK**, Nightingale P, Gunson B, Hubscher SG, Neuberger JM. Natural history of unexplained chronic hepatitis after liver transplantation. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 984-989 [PMID: 17520743 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21108]

22 **Cholongitas E**, Samonakis D, Patch D, Senzolo M, Burroughs AK, Quaglia A, Dhillon A. Induction of autoimmune hepatitis by pegylated interferon in a liver transplant patient with recurrent hepatitis C virus. *Transplantation* 2006; **81**: 488-490 [PMID: 16477242 DOI: 10.1097/01.tp.0000196716.07188.c4]

23 **Fiel MI**, Agarwal K, Stanca C, Elhajj N, Kontorinis N, Thung SN, Schiano TD. Posttransplant plasma cell hepatitis (de novo autoimmune hepatitis) is a variant of rejection and may lead to a negative outcome in patients with hepatitis C virus. *Liver Transpl* 2008; **14**: 861-871 [PMID: 18508382 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21447]

24 **Berardi S**, Lodato F, Gramenzi A, D'Errico A, Lenzi M, Bontadini A, Morelli MC, Tamè MR, Piscaglia F, Biselli M, Sama C, Mazzella G, Pinna AD, Grazi G, Bernardi M, Andreone P. High incidence of allograft dysfunction in liver transplanted patients treated with pegylated-interferon alpha-2b and ribavirin for hepatitis C recurrence: possible de novo autoimmune hepatitis? *Gut* 2007; **56**: 237-242 [PMID: 16798778 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2006.092064]

25 **Radkowski M**, Gallegos-Orozco JF, Jablonska J, Colby TV, Walewska-Zielecka B, Kubicka J, Wilkinson J, Adair D, Rakela J, Laskus T. Persistence of hepatitis C virus in patients successfully treated for chronic hepatitis C. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 106-114 [PMID: 15619235 DOI: 10.1002/hep.20518]

26 **Hedenstierna M**, Weiland O, Brass A, Bankwitz D, Behrendt P, Uhnoo I, Aleman S, Cardell K, Fryden A, Norkrans G, Eilard A, Glaumann H, Pietschmann T, Sällberg M, Brenndörfer ED. Long-term follow-up of successful hepatitis C virus therapy: waning immune responses and disappearance of liver disease are consistent with cure. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **41**: 532-543 [PMID: 25627143 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13096]

27 **Attar BM**, Van Thiel D. A New Twist to a Chronic HCV Infection: Occult Hepatitis C. *Gastroenterol Res Pract* 2015; **2015**: 579147 [PMID: 26221136 DOI: 10.1155/2015/579147]

28 **Barril G**, Castillo I, Arenas MD, Espinosa M, Garcia-Valdecasas J, Garcia-Fernández N, González-Parra E, Alcazar JM, Sánchez C, Diez-Baylón JC, Martinez P, Bartolomé J, Carreño V. Occult hepatitis C virus infection among hemodialysis patients. *J Am Soc Nephrol* 2008; **19**: 2288-2292 [PMID: 18684893 DOI: 10.1681/ASN.2008030293]

29 **Coppola N**, Pisaturo M, Guastafierro S, Tonziello G, Sica A, Sagnelli C, Ferrara MG, Sagnelli E. Absence of occult hepatitis C virus infection in patients under immunosupressive therapy for oncohematological diseases. *Hepatology* 2011; **54**: 1487-1489 [PMID: 21608002 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24436]

30 **Del Bello A**, Abravanel F, Alric L, Lavayssiere L, Lhomme S, Bellière J, Izopet J, Kamar N. No evidence of occult hepatitis C or E virus infections in liver-transplant patients with sustained virological response after therapy with direct acting agents. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2019; **21**: e13093 [PMID: 30972874 DOI: 10.1111/tid.13093]

31 **Guerrero RB**, Batts KP, Brandhagen DJ, Germer JJ, Perez RG, Persing DH. Effects of formalin fixation and prolonged block storage on detection of hepatitis C virus RNA in liver tissue. *Diagn Mol Pathol* 1997; **6**: 277-281 [PMID: 9458386 DOI: 10.1097/00019606-199710000-00005]

32 **Sun Q**, Wang Q, Scott MJ, Billiar TR. Immune Activation in the Liver by Nucleic Acids. *J Clin Transl Hepatol* 2016; **4**: 151-157 [PMID: 27350945 DOI: 10.14218/JCTH.2016.00003]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 612-622

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.612

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Interrelationship between physical activity and depression in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

Ali A Weinstein, Leyla De Avila, Saisruthi Kannan, James M Paik, Pegah Golabi, Lynn H Gerber, Zobair M Younossi

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification
Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): D, D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Christodoulou D, El-Gendy HA, Zhang LL

Received: October 19, 2021
Peer-review started: October 19, 2021
First decision: December 3, 2021
Revised: December 21, 2021
Accepted: February 20, 2022
Article in press: February 20, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Ali A Weinstein, Leyla De Avila, James M Paik, Pegah Golabi, Lynn H Gerber, Zobair M Younossi, Betty and Guy Beatty Center for Integrated Research, Inova Health System, Falls Church, VA 22042, United States

Ali A Weinstein, Saisruthi Kannan, Global and Community Health, George Mason University, Fairfax, VA 22030, United States

Lynn H Gerber, Zobair M Younossi, Center for Liver Disease, Department of Medicine, Inova Fairfax Medical Campus, Falls Church, VA 22042, United States

Zobair M Younossi, Inova Medicine, Inova Health System, Falls Church, VA 22042, United States

Corresponding author: Zobair M Younossi, AGAF, FACG, FACP, MD, Chairman, Professor, Inova Medicine, Inova Health System, Claude Moore Health Education and Research Building 3300 Gallows Road, Falls Church, VA 22042, United States. zobair.younossi@inova.org

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is associated with a sedentary lifestyle and depressive symptoms. It is also well established that physical inactivity and depressive symptoms are related. However, an investigation of the interaction between all of these factors in NAFLD has not been previously conducted.

AIM

To investigate the interrelationship between physical inactivity and depressive symptoms in individuals with NAFLD.

METHODS

Data from the Rancho Bernardo Study of Healthy Aging were utilized. 589 individuals were included in the analyses (43.1% male; 95.8% non-Hispanic white; aged 60.0 ± 7.0 years). NAFLD was defined by using the hepatic steatosis index, depression using the Beck Depression Inventory, and physical activity by self-report of number of times per week of strenuous activity. Multivariable generalized linear regression models with Gamma distribution were performed to investigate the proposed relationship.

RESULTS

About 40% of the sample had evidence of NAFLD, 9.3% had evidence of depression, and 29% were physically inactive. Individuals with NAFLD and depression were more likely to be physically inactive (60.7%) compared to individuals with neither NAFLD nor depression (22.9%), individuals with depression without NAFLD (37.0%), and individuals with NAFLD without depression (33.3%). After accounting for various comorbidities (*i.e.*, age, sex, diabetes, hypertension, obesity), individuals with NAFLD and higher levels of physical activity were at a decreased odds of having depressive symptoms [16.1% reduction (95% confidence interval: -25.6 to -5.4%), $P = 0.004$], which was not observed in those without NAFLD.

CONCLUSION

Individuals with NAFLD have high levels of physical inactivity, particularly those with depressive symptoms. Because this group is at high risk for poor outcomes, practitioners should screen for the coexistence of depressive symptoms and NAFLD. This group should receive appropriate interventions aimed at increasing both participation and levels of intensity of physical activity.

Key Words: Liver disease; Outcomes research; Psychiatric disorders; Exercise

Core Tip: Physical inactivity and depressive symptoms are common in individuals with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Individuals with both NAFLD and depression are more likely to be sedentary than individuals without NAFLD or in individuals with NAFLD without depressive symptoms. Because this group is at high risk for poor outcomes, practitioners should screen for the coexistence of depressive symptoms and NAFLD. This group should receive appropriate interventions aimed at increasing both participation and levels of intensity of physical activity. It is therefore desirable that individuals with NAFLD should be screened for the presence of depressive symptoms to help determine appropriate interventions.

Citation: Weinstein AA, De Avila L, Kannan S, Paik JM, Golabi P, Gerber LH, Younossi ZM. Interrelationship between physical activity and depression in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 612-622
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/612.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.612

INTRODUCTION

Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is the most common chronic liver condition in the United States and globally[1]. NAFLD is a multisystem disease which can affect many organ systems and increase the risk of cardiovascular disease and type 2 diabetes mellitus, as well as numerous other conditions[2,3]. NAFLD, along with these other conditions, has been associated with a variety of behavioral factors, including a lack of physical activity, poor nutritional status, and substance consumption[4].

Specifically, a sedentary lifestyle has been related to the onset of NAFLD[5,6]. One potential pathway explaining this relationship is that a lack of physical activity is associated with obesity, which in turn is a major risk factor for NAFLD[5,7]. Increases in physical activity and exercise can lead to mobilization of fat from the liver and is suggested as a treatment for NAFLD[8-10]. Therefore, physical activity is an important behavior to understand in the context of NAFLD, both as a risk factor and as a treatment. Another factor that is highly related to physical inactivity is elevated depressive symptoms (both severity and frequency)[11]. In fact, there is a bi-directional relationship between a sedentary lifestyle and depressive symptoms such that physical inactivity is a risk factor for depressive symptoms and depressive symptoms are a risk factor for physical inactivity[5,12].

NAFLD has also been associated with depressive symptoms[13]. Individuals with NAFLD that also have a major depressive disorder are at an increased risk of developing other conditions such as cardiovascular diseases and stroke[14]. In general, individuals with elevated depressive symptoms have worse health outcomes, including increased morbidity and mortality [14]. Since one potential intervention for NAFLD is increasing levels of physical activity, it is important to consider the potential impact of depressive symptoms on the likelihood of participating in physical activity. It has been well established that individuals with depressive symptoms are less adherent to treatment for chronic illness, particularly treatments that involve behavioral changes[15].

Previous research has demonstrated the relationship between NAFLD and physical inactivity, between NAFLD and depressive symptoms, and between physical inactivity and depressive symptoms; however, we were not able to identify previous literature that explored the interaction of NAFLD, physical inactivity, and depressive symptoms together. The current investigation assesses the presence of these three factors in a community sample in order to explore the potential interrelationships.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Data source and study population

The Rancho Bernardo Study (RBS) of Healthy Aging has been previously described in detail[16]. Briefly, between 1972 and 1974, 6339 (82%) adults from the predominantly white and middle to upper middle class southern California community of Rancho Bernardo were enrolled in a longitudinal study focusing on healthy aging. In addition, RBS focused on determining risk factors for cardiovascular disease, diabetes, cognitive function, and bone disease. Participants were followed *via* 12 subsequent clinic visits occurring approximately every four years as well as annual mailers to follow-up on health status and vital status through July 2019.

Our study utilized data from 1781 participants who completed clinic visit 7 (1992-1996). Clinic visit 7 was chosen because it assessed the factors necessary to establish presence or absence of NAFLD. Of these, we excluded 17 participants for missing the hepatic steatosis index (HSI), 55 participants for missing Beck Depression Inventory (BDI), and 221 participants who had a history of hepatitis, iron overload (iron ≥ 198 mcg/dL in men and ≥ 170 mcg/dL in women), or excessive alcohol consumption. As depression can manifest differently in older adults[17] and physical activity levels are different in older adults, we further excluded 899 participants aged 70 and over, leaving 589 participants in the final analytical sample (Figure 1). All participants provided written informed consent prior to participation at each visit.

Measurements

Demographic factors, lifestyle factors, laboratory measures, and medical history data were collected at clinic visit 7 (1992-1996). Lifestyle information was obtained through standard questionnaires and included smoking status [non-smoker, former smoker (quit ≥ 2 years); active smoker], sedentary lifestyle (reported physical activity < 3 times per week) and excessive alcohol consumption (≥ 2 drinks/day in men and ≥ 1 drinks in women). Metabolic components were calculated by the following definitions: (1) Obesity pattern was categorized into lean (BMI: 18.5-25 kg/m^2); overweight (25-29.9 kg/m^2) and obese (≥ 30 kg/m^2); (2) Hypertension was defined as having a systolic blood pressure of > 140 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure of > 90 mmHg from an average of three measurements and/or use of antihypertensive medications; (3) Hyperlipidemia was defined as a serum cholesterol level of ≥ 200 mg/dL, LDL of ≥ 130 mg/dL, and HDL ≤ 40 mg/dL in men or ≤ 50 mg/dL in women; (4) Diabetes mellitus was defined by a fasting glucose level ≥ 126 mg/dL, post-challenge plasma glucose level of at least 200 mg/dL, and history of physician-diagnosed diabetes or use of diabetes medication; (5) Insulin resistance was defined by the homeostasis model assessment of insulin resistance[18]; and (6) Metabolic syndrome was defined as having at least three of the following: waist circumference > 102 cm in men or > 88 cm in women, fasting plasma glucose > 110 mg/dL, blood pressure > 130/85 mmHg, elevated triglycerides > 150 mg/dL, and HDL ≤ 40 mg/dL in men or ≤ 50 mg/dL in women[19].

Definition of depression and physical activity

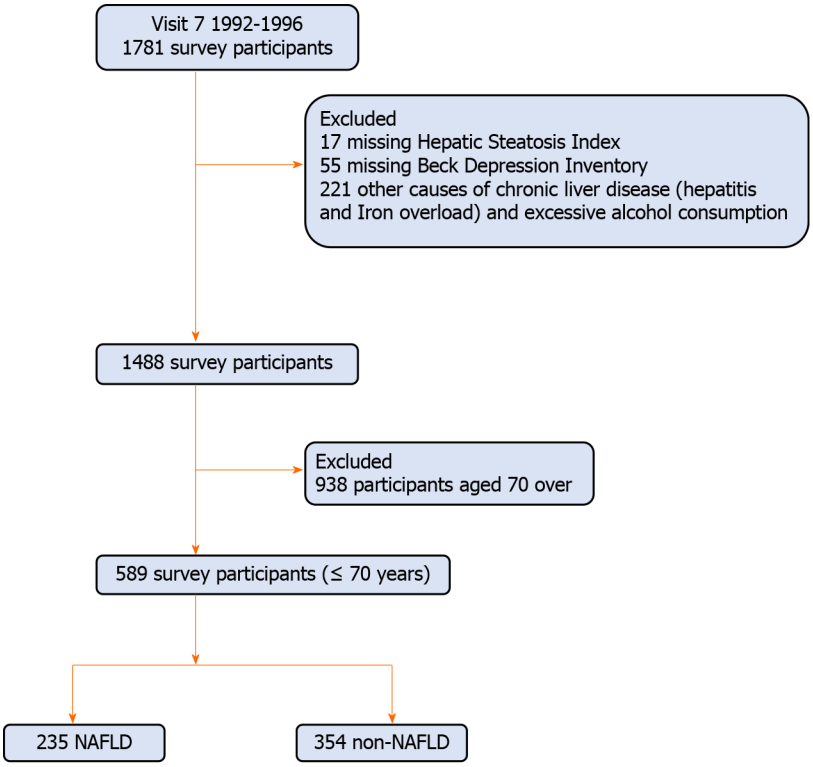
We categorized the presence of depression as a BDI score of ≥ 10[20]. Individuals that scored less than 10 were considered to not have depression. We categorized physical activity into 3 groups: (1) "physical inactivity" if participants didn't engage in any level of physical activity at least three times per week; (2) "ideal physical activity" if participants regularly (≥ 3/week) engaged in strenuous activity; and (3) "moderate physical activity" that encompassed everyone else.

Definition of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

NAFLD was defined by using the HSI, validated previously and used in epidemiologic studies[13,21,22] in the absence of secondary causes of liver disease. HSI was calculated by the following equation: 8 × (alanine aminotransferase/aspartate aminotransferase ratio) + BMI (+2 for diabetes; +2 for female). The published cut-off score of 36 was utilized to define the presence of NAFLD. Participants with a HSI of < 36 and no secondary causes of liver disease were presumed to not have the presence of NAFLD (non-NAFLD).

Statistical analysis

We compared demographic, lifestyle factors, clinical factors and medical history of the study cohort by the presence of NAFLD, depression and level of physical activity using a non-parametric Kruskal-Wallis test for continuous variables and chi-square test for categorical analysis. Multivariable generalized



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.612

Figure 1 Flow chart of study cohort selection. NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

linear regression model (GLM) with Gamma distribution was performed on BDI score to evaluate the effect of physical activity and NAFLD after adjusting for age, sex, current smoker, diabetes, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, obesity, history of cardiovascular disease and cancer. The adjusted relationship between factors and BDI scores was estimated using coefficients from GLM models, which were exponentiated to yield a percentage change in the outcome associated with each factor. Independent predictors of depression were studied using multivariable logistic regression. All differences reported here are statistically significant otherwise mentioned at the 0.05 Level. All analyses were performed using SAS version 9.4 (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC).

RESULTS

Of 589 study subjects (43.1% male; 95.8% non-Hispanic white; mean (SD) age 60.0 (7.0) years), 235 (39.9%) subjects had evidence of NAFLD and 55 (9.3%) had evidence of depression. Furthermore, 12.6% had diabetes, 75.7% had hyperlipidemia, 20.0% had hypertension, 26.7% had insulin resistance, 29.0% were physically inactive and 11.9% were active smokers.

Compared to individuals without NAFLD, individuals with NAFLD were statistically significantly more commonly male (52.3% *vs* 37.0%), more likely to be overweight/obese (93.6% *vs* 28.0%) more likely to have insulin resistance (46.4% *vs* 13.6%), hyperlipidemia (85.5% *vs* 69.2%), diabetes (23.4% *vs* 5.4%), and metabolic syndrome (43.4% *vs* 6.5%) (all $P < 0.02$). Among individuals with NAFLD, 36.6% fell into the physical inactivity category and 24.7% were in the ideal physical activity category; whereas among individuals without NAFLD, 24.0% fell into the physical inactivity category and 36.7% were in the ideal physical activity category ($P < 0.002$) (Table 1). Individuals with NAFLD had a statistically significantly higher mean BDI score than those without NAFLD (4.49 *vs* 3.67, $P = 0.004$), although the mean scores were relatively low in each group.

Of the entire cohort, 4.8% had both NAFLD and depression, 4.6% had depression without NAFLD, 35.1% had NAFLD without depression and 55.5% had neither depression nor NAFLD. Demographic, lifestyle and general health comorbidities of participants according to the presence of NAFLD and depression status are presented in Table 2. Compared to individuals with NAFLD but no depression, individuals with both NAFLD and depression were more likely to have a history of arthritis (17.6% *vs* 10.5%). Compared to individuals with depression but no NAFLD, individuals with both NAFLD and depression were less likely to be lean (7.1% *vs* 85.2%) and have a higher rate of insulin resistance (42.9% *vs* 3.7%) and metabolic syndrome (39.3% *vs* 7.4%).

Table 1 Demographic, lifestyle and general health comorbidities of participants according to the presence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

	All (*n* = 589)	Non-NAFLD (*n* = 354)	NAFLD (*n* = 235)	*P* value
Age, mean ± SD	59.97 ± 6.97	59.99 ± 7.40	59.94 ± 6.29	0.3959
Male, %	254 (43.12%)	131 (37.01%)	123 (52.34%)	0.0002
White, %	564 (95.76%)	340 (96.05%)	224 (95.32%)	0.6686
Smoking status, %				
Current	70 (11.90%)	47 (13.31%)	23 (9.79%)	0.1958
Former	239 (40.65%)	141 (39.94%)	98 (41.70%)	0.6706
Non-smoker	279 (47.45%)	165 (46.74%)	114 (48.51%)	0.674
Regular exercise, %				
Physically Inactive	171 (29.03%)	85 (24.01%)	86 (36.60%)	0.001
Moderate physical activity	230 (39.05%)	139 (39.27%)	91 (38.72%)	0.8949
Ideal physical activity	188 (31.92%)	130 (36.72%)	58 (24.68%)	0.0021
Obesity, % BMI				
Lean	270 (45.84%)	255 (72.03%)	15 (6.38%)	< 0.0001
Overweight	234 (39.73%)	99 (27.97%)	135 (57.45%)	< 0.0001
Obese	85 (14.43%)	0 (0.00%)	85 (36.17%)	< 0.0001
History of CVD, %	40 (6.79%)	23 (6.50%)	17 (7.23%)	0.7278
History of arthritis, %	68 (11.54%)	39 (11.02%)	29 (12.34%)	0.6226
History of cancer (any), %	97 (16.47%)	48 (13.56%)	49 (20.85%)	0.0195
Insulin resistance, %	157 (26.66%)	48 (13.56%)	109 (46.38%)	< 0.0001
Hypertension, %	117 (19.86%)	66 (18.64%)	51 (21.70%)	0.3623
Hyperlipidemia, %	446 (75.72%)	245 (69.21%)	201 (85.53%)	< 0.0001
Diabetes, %	74 (12.56%)	19 (5.37%)	55 (23.40%)	< 0.0001
Metabolic syndrome[1], %	125 (21.26%)	23 (6.52%)	102 (43.40%)	< 0.0001
BDI, mean ± SD	4.00 ± 3.71	3.67 ± 3.62	4.49 ± 3.80	0.0041

CVD: Cardiovascular disease; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; SD: Standard deviation. NCEP ATP III (2005 revision).

[1]*P* value by nonparametric Kruskal-Wallis Test for continuous variables, chi-square test for categorical variable, Data are presented as the mean ± SD for numerical variables and count (%) for categorical variables.

For the individuals that had NAFLD and depression, 60.7% fell within the physical inactivity category which is statistically significantly greater than all of the other groups [individuals with neither NAFLD nor depression (22.9%), individuals with depression without NAFLD (37.0%), and individuals with NAFLD without depression (33.3%)] (Figure 2). Characteristics of individuals according to the presence of NAFLD and physical activity are presented in Supplementary Table 1.

In stratified analyses across the presence of NAFLD, accounting for age, sex, current smoker, diabetes, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, obesity, history of cardiovascular disease and any cancer in GLMs, individuals with NAFLD and higher levels of physical activity experienced greater odds of having a lower BDI score [16.1% reduction (95% confidence interval: -25.6 to -5.4%), $P = 0.004$]. This association between level of activity and BDI scores was not observed in those without NAFLD (Table 3).

To assess the association of physical activity and NAFLD on BDI scores, GLMs were performed (Table 4). In the unadjusted model, compared with non-NAFLD individuals with an ideal level of physical activity, NAFLD individuals with physical inactivity had an increased BDI score [46.8% increase (19.3 to 80.8%), $P < 0.001$]. Even in the fully adjusted model, this result was consistently observed [36.3% increase (9.1% to 70.2%) $P < 0.001$]. Non-NAFLD Individuals with physical inactivity did not statistically significantly differ from non-NAFLD individuals with an ideal level of physical activity ($P = 0.465$).

Table 2 Demographic, lifestyle and general health comorbidities of participants according to the presence of depression and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

	Individuals with NAFLD			Individuals without NAFLD		
	No depression (*n* = 207)	Depression (*n* = 28)	*P* value	No depression (*n* = 327)	Depression (*n* = 27)	*P* value
Age, mean ± SD	59.91 ± 6.34	60.15 ± 6.00	0.9433	60.02 ± 7.32	59.61 ± 8.44	0.9813
Male, %	115 (55.56%)	8 (28.57%)	0.0073	125 (38.23%)	6 (22.22%)	0.0978
White, %	197 (95.17%)	27 (96.43%)	0.7671	316 (96.64%)	24 (88.89%)	0.0471
Smoking status, %						
Current	19 (9.18%)	4 (14.29%)	0.3934	41 (12.58%)	6 (22.22%)	0.1563
Former	86 (41.55%)	12 (42.86%)	0.8949	133 (40.80%)	8 (29.63%)	0.2549
Non-smoker	102 (49.28%)	12 (42.86%)	0.5236	152 (46.63%)	13 (48.15%)	0.8789
Regular exercise, %						
Physically inactive	69 (33.33%)	17 (60.71%)	0.0048	75 (22.94%)	10 (37.04%)	0.0992
Moderate physical activity	86 (41.55%)	5 (17.86%)	0.0157	129 (39.45%)	10 (37.04%)	0.8051
Ideal physical activity	52 (25.12%)	6 (21.43%)	0.6706	123 (37.61%)	7 (25.93%)	0.2259
Obesity, % BMI						
Lean	13 (6.28%)	2 (7.14%)	0.8609	232 (70.95%)	23 (85.19%)	0.1132
Overweight	118 (57.00%)	17 (60.71%)	0.7094	95 (29.05%)	4 (14.81%)	0.1132
Obese	76 (36.71%)	9 (32.14%)	0.6365	0 (0.00%)	0 (0.00%)	-------
History of CVD, %	14 (6.76%)	3 (10.71%)	0.4488	21 (6.42%)	2 (7.41%)	0.8417
History of arthritis, %	21 (10.14%)	8 (28.57%)	0.0054	37 (11.31%)	2 (7.41%)	0.5331
History of any cancer, %	46 (22.22%)	3 (10.71%)	0.1595	47 (14.37%)	1 (3.70%)	0.1196
Insulin resistance, %	97 (46.86%)	12 (42.86%)	0.6902	47 (14.37%)	1 (3.70%)	0.1196
Hypertension, %	44 (21.26%)	7 (25.00%)	0.6519	61 (18.65%)	5 (18.52%)	0.9861
Hyperlipidemia, %	177 (85.51%)	24 (85.71%)	0.9767	226 (69.11%)	19 (70.37%)	0.8918
Diabetes, %	50 (24.15%)	5 (17.86%)	0.4601	16 (4.89%)	3 (11.11%)	0.1682
Metabolic syndrome[1], %	91 (43.96%)	11 (39.29%)	0.6394	21 (6.44%)	2 (7.41%)	0.8451

CVD: Cardiovascular disease; SD: Standard deviation; NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease, NCEP ATP III (2005 revision).

[1]*P* value by nonparametric Kruskal-Wallis Test for continuous variables, chi-square test for categorical variable. Data are presented as the mean ± SD for numerical variables and count (%) for categorical variables.

In multivariable logistic regression, we included in the model: NAFLD, diabetes, age, sex, smoking status, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, cardiovascular disease, and cancer. The statistically significant risk factors of depression were NAFLD Odds Ratio (OR 2.01 1.08-3.72), $P = 0.028$), being male [OR 0.37 (0.19-0.72), $P = 0.003$] and physical inactivity [OR 1.68 (0.78-3.65), $P = 0.005$] (Supplementary Table 2).

DISCUSSION

This study investigated the interrelationships between NAFLD, depressive symptoms and physical activity. Our results demonstrate a strong likelihood of physical inactivity in individuals with NAFLD and depression, which was at a higher rate than was seen in individuals without NAFLD or in individuals with NAFLD without depressive symptoms.

Similar findings have been found in individuals with type 2 diabetes[23]. Various symptoms of depression (lack of motivation, low self-esteem, feelings of helplessness, anhedonia) might explain why individuals with depressive symptoms are more often physically inactive[24], but having only depression in this cohort did not explain the inactivity level. The co-existence between NAFLD and depression is likely to associate with physical inactivity.

Table 3 Univariable and multivariable changes in beck depression inventory according to physical activity, stratified by the presence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease

	NAFLD		Non-NAFLD	
	% change (95%CI)	*P*	% change (95%CI)	*P*
Unadjusted	-16.91 (-26.28 - -6.35)	0.0024	-8.96 (-18.25 - 1.38)	0.0871
Age-sex adjusted	-14.74 (-24.42 - -3.83)	0.0095	-6.79 (-16.35 - 3.87)	0.203
Model 1	-14.6 (-24.34 - -3.61)	0.01	-3.43 (-13.64 - 7.98)	0.54
Model 2	-16.12 (-25.6 - -5.44)	0.004	-3.27 (-13.49 - 8.15)	0.5592

Generalized linear regression with a gamma error distribution and a log-link function. Level of Physical activity is defined as a continuous variable (1 = inactive, 2 = moderate, 3 = Ideal); Model 1 adjusted for Physical activity, age, sex, current smoker, DM, hypertension, hyperlipidemia and obesity; Model 2 adjusted for all variables in model 1 + history of CVD and history of cancer. NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

Table 4 Univariable and multivariable changes in beck depression inventory score according to the presence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and level of physical activity

	Unadjusted		Age-sex adjusted		Model 1		Model 2	
Group	% change (95%CI)	*P*	% change (95%CI)	*P*	% change (95%CI)	*P*	% change (95%CI)	*P*
Non-NAFLD with physical ideal	Reference		Reference		Reference		Reference	
Non-NAFLD with physical moderate	16.67 (-3.33 - 40.82)	0.108	11.5 (-7.68 - 34.67)	0.2584	7.77 (-11.05 - 30.58)	0.4447	6.99 (-11.65 - 29.56)	0.4891
Non-NAFLD with physical inactivity	19.85 (-2.87 - 47.89)	0.0913	14.15 (-7.5 - 40.87)	0.2174	8.25 (-12.74 - 34.29)	0.4708	8.34 (-12.58 - 34.26)	0.4645
NAFLD with physical ideal	1.23 (-20.04 - 28.15)	0.919	3.31 (-18.23 - 30.53)	0.7849	-2.43 (-24.49 - 26.08)	0.851	-2.19 (-24.33 - 26.45)	0.866
NAFLD with physical moderate	23.08 (-0.09 - 51.63)	0.051	23.99 (0.79 - 52.53)	0.042	15.68 (-7.7 - 44.98)	0.206	16.24 (-7.23 - 45.65)	0.1911
NAFLD with physical inactivity	46.84 (19.28 - 80.75)	0.0003	43.06 (16.39 - 75.84)	0.0007	35.02 (8.03 - 68.74)	0.0083	36.25 (9.1 - 70.16)	0.0064

Generalized linear regression with a gamma error distribution and a log-link function. Level of Physical activity is defined as a continuous variable (1 = Poor, 2 = moderate, 3 = Ideal); Model 1 adjusted for Physical activity, age, sex, current smoker, DM, hypertension, hyperlipidemia and obesity; Model 2 adjusted for all variables in model 1 + history of CVD and history of cancer. NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

Depression and NAFLD occur together more often than would be predicted by chance[25]. There are many potential factors that may help to explain this overlap, including the presence of diabetes and obesity, both risk factors for NAFLD and depression[25]. Another area of overlap is the increase in circulating inflammatory cytokines in both depression and NAFLD[26]. In addition, physical inactivity is a risk factor for both depression and NAFLD[5,11]. However, further investigation is needed to clarify this bi-directional relationship between depression and NAFLD.

The findings of the current study show that both physical inactivity and depressive symptoms are common in individuals with NAFLD. In addition, individuals with NAFLD and depressive symptoms are much more likely to be physically inactive than people with depression without NAFLD and those without either. NAFLD is a risk factor for all-cause mortality and exercise is an antidote to this. The combination of depression and NAFLD is significantly associated with low level of physical activity, which in itself is a risk for all-cause mortality. It is therefore desirable that individuals with NAFLD should be screened for the presence of depressive symptoms. Depressive symptoms are likely to contribute to a low level of physical activity, and if treated, may increase participation in more vigorous activity for greater durations. Additionally, increased physical activity has been shown to help mobilize fat from the liver[8,9], and increased physical activity has been shown to have anti-depressive effects [27]. Therefore, it may be important to screen for the combined presence of NAFLD and depression, treat each appropriately, and aim to maximize participation in physical activity. Longitudinal studies

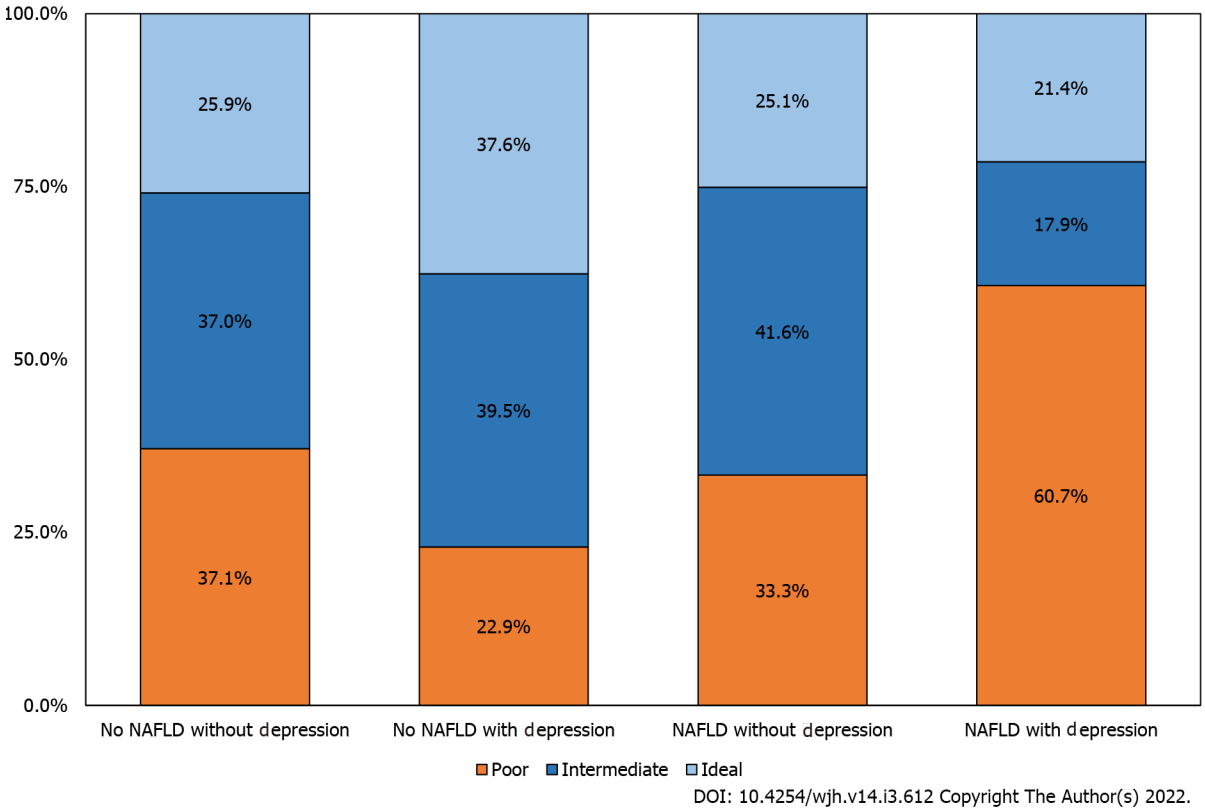


Figure 2 Percentage distribution of physical activity, by the presence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and depressive symptoms.
NAFLD: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease.

investigating these interrelationships are needed to determine if physical inactivity is one of the factors that may link depressive symptoms to subsequent poor health outcomes in NAFLD patients.

Some limitations should be noted. Due to the cross-sectional nature of the current investigation, no causal relationships nor directionality can be inferred between physical inactivity, depressive symptoms, and NAFLD. Another limitation is that we used a noninvasive test (HSI) to identify NAFLD rather than a liver biopsy or other sensitive radiologic tests since these were not available. An objective method of physical activity assessment (*i.e.*, an activity monitor) was not available. In addition, these data were collected in 1992-1996, therefore an older version of the BDI was used and the diagnosis of viral hepatitis was relatively new at the time. We also acknowledge that our findings are not generalizable to the general population, as all participants were well educated, medically insured, predominantly white, and middle to upper-middle-class. Lastly, participants have a relatively low prevalence of obesity, diabetes, and metabolic syndrome compared to the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey III[28] which may have influenced the results.

CONCLUSION

Individuals with NAFLD have high levels of physical inactivity, particularly those with depressive symptoms. Because this group is at high risk for poor outcomes, practitioners should screen for the coexistence of depressive symptoms and NAFLD. This group should receive appropriate interventions aimed at increasing both participation and levels of intensity of physical activity.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Since one potential intervention for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is increasing levels of physical activity, it is important to consider the potential impact of depressive symptoms on the likelihood of participating in physical activity. It has been well established that individuals with depressive symptoms are less adherent to treatment for chronic illness, particularly treatments that involve behavioral changes.

Research motivation

Previous research has demonstrated the relationship between NAFLD and physical inactivity, between NAFLD and depressive symptoms, and between physical inactivity and depressive symptoms; however, we were not able to identify previous literature that explored the interaction of NAFLD, physical inactivity, and depressive symptoms together.

Research objectives

The current investigation assesses the presence of NAFLD, physical inactivity, and depressive symptoms in a community sample in order to explore the potential interrelationships.

Research methods

Data from the Rancho Bernardo Study were used. 589 individuals were included in the analyses (43.1% male; 95.8% non-Hispanic white; aged 60.0 ± 7.0 years). NAFLD was defined by using the hepatic steatosis index, depression using the Beck Depression Inventory, and physical activity by self-report of number of times per week of strenuous activity. Multivariable generalized linear regression models with Gamma distribution were performed to investigate the proposed relationship.

Research results

About 40% of the sample had evidence of NAFLD, 9.3% had evidence of depression, and 29% were physically inactive. Individuals with NAFLD and depression were more likely to be physically inactive (60.7%) compared to individuals with neither NAFLD nor depression (22.9%), individuals with depression without NAFLD (37.0%), and individuals with NAFLD without depression (33.3%). After accounting for various comorbidities (*i.e.*, age, sex, diabetes, hypertension, obesity), individuals with NAFLD and higher levels of physical activity were at a decreased odds of having depressive symptoms [16.1% reduction (95% confidence interval: -25.6 to -5.4%), $P = 0.004$], which was not observed in those without NAFLD.

Research conclusions

Individuals with NAFLD have high levels of physical inactivity, particularly those with depressive symptoms. Because this group is at high risk for poor outcomes, practitioners should screen for the coexistence of depressive symptoms and NAFLD. This group should receive appropriate interventions aimed at increasing both participation and levels of intensity of physical activity.

Research perspectives

Further investigation is needed to clarify this bi-directional relationship between depression and NAFLD. Future work should explore screening for the combined presence of NAFLD and depression to determine if treatment with appropriate physical activity interventions can enhance outcomes.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Weinstein AA, de Avila, L, Golabi P, Gerber LH, and Younossi ZM designed the research study; Paik JM analyzed the data; and Weinstein AA, Kannan S, de Avila L, and Paik JM wrote the manuscript; all authors have read and approve the final manuscript.

Supported by Betty and Guy Beatty Center for Integrated Research.

Institutional review board statement: This study is the analysis of de-identified, publicly available data and does not constitute human subjects research, therefore it does not need institutional review board approval.

Informed consent statement: This is a secondary data analysis of a publicly available deidentified data, therefore, informed ethics committee approval and informed consent is not relevant here. The original data collection adhered to all ethical standards (ethics committee approval and informed consent).

Conflict-of-interest statement: Dr. Zobair M Younossi is a consultant to BMS, Gilead, AbbVie, Intercept, and GSK. All other authors report no proprietary or commercial interest in any product or concept discussed in this article.

Data sharing statement: Data are available by request from https://knit.ucsd.edu/ranchobernardostudy/access/

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: United States

ORCID number: Ali A Weinstein 0000-0002-3371-6086; Leyla De Avila 0000-0003-3731-8058; Saisruthi Kannan 0000-0001-8557-5054; James M Paik 0000-0003-2294-323X; Pegah Golabi 0000-0001-9818-0983; Lynn H Gerber 0000-0001-7525-680X; Zobair M Younossi 0000-0001-9313-577X.

S-Editor: Ma YJ
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Ma YJ

REFERENCES

1 **Argo CK**, Caldwell SH. Epidemiology and natural history of non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Clin Liver Dis* 2009; **13**: 511-531 [PMID: 19818302 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2009.07.005]
2 **Li AA**, Ahmed A, Kim D. Extrahepatic Manifestations of Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease. *Gut Liver* 2020; **14**: 168-178 [PMID: 31195434 DOI: 10.5009/gnl19069]
3 **Byrne CD**, Targher G. NAFLD: a multisystem disease. *J Hepatol* 2015; **62**: S47-S64 [PMID: 25920090 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2014.12.012]
4 **Macavei B**, Baban A, Dumitrascu DL. Psychological factors associated with NAFLD/NASH: a systematic review. *Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci* 2016; **20**: 5081-5097 [PMID: 28051263]
5 **Croci I**, Coombes JS, Bucher Sandbakk S, Keating SE, Nauman J, Macdonald GA, Wisloff U. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: Prevalence and all-cause mortality according to sedentary behaviour and cardiorespiratory fitness. The HUNT Study. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis* 2019; **62**: 127-134 [PMID: 30796942 DOI: 10.1016/j.pcad.2019.01.005]
6 **Kwak MS**, Kim D. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and lifestyle modifications, focusing on physical activity. *Korean J Intern Med* 2018; **33**: 64-74 [PMID: 29202557 DOI: 10.3904/kjim.2017.343]
7 Correction: Dose-response association between physical activity and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease: a case-control study in a Chinese population. *BMJ Open* 2020; **10**: e026854corr1 [PMID: 32029501 DOI: 10.1136/bmjopen-2018-026854corr1]
8 **Gerber LH**, Weinstein A, Pawloski L. Role of exercise in optimizing the functional status of patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Clin Liver Dis* 2014; **18**: 113-127 [PMID: 24274868 DOI: 10.1016/j.cld.2013.09.016]
9 **Abdelbasset WK**, Tantawy SA, Kamel DM, Alqahtani BA, Elnegamy TE, Soliman GS, Ibrahim AA. Effects of high-intensity interval and moderate-intensity continuous aerobic exercise on diabetic obese patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: A comparative randomized controlled trial. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2020; **99**: e19471 [PMID: 32150108 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000019471]
10 **Locklear CT**, Golabi P, Gerber L, Younossi ZM. Exercise as an intervention for patients with end-stage liver disease: Systematic review. *Medicine (Baltimore)* 2018; **97**: e12774 [PMID: 30334965 DOI: 10.1097/MD.0000000000012774]
11 **Achttien R**, van Lieshout J, Wensing M, van der Sanden MN, Staal JB. Symptoms of depression are associated with physical inactivity but not modified by gender or the presence of a cardiovascular disease; a cross-sectional study. *BMC Cardiovasc Disord* 2019; **19**: 95 [DOI: 10.1186/s12872-019-1065-8]
12 **Jung JY**, Park SK, Oh CM, Chung PW, Ryoo JH. Non-Alcoholic Fatty Liver Disease and Its Association with Depression in Korean General Population. *J Korean Med Sci* 2019; **34**: e199 [PMID: 31373184 DOI: 10.3346/jkms.2019.34.e199]
13 **Kim D**, Yoo ER, Li AA, Tighe SP, Cholankeril G, Harrison SA, Ahmed A. Depression is associated with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease among adults in the United States. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2019; **50**: 590-598 [PMID: 31328300 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15395]
14 **Tomeno W**, Kawashima K, Yoneda M, Saito S, Ogawa Y, Honda Y, Kessoku T, Imajo K, Mawatari H, Fujita K, Hirayasu Y, Nakajima A. Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease comorbid with major depressive disorder: The pathological features and poor therapeutic efficacy. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2015; **30**: 1009-1014 [PMID: 25619308 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12897]
15 **Lam WY**, Fresco P. Medication Adherence Measures: An Overview. *Biomed Res Int* 2015; **2015**: 217047 [PMID: 26539470 DOI: 10.1155/2015/217047]
16 **Barrett-Connor E**. The prevalence of diabetes mellitus in an adult community as determined by history or fasting hyperglycemia. *Am J Epidemiol* 1980; **111**: 705-712 [PMID: 7386445 DOI: 10.1093/oxfordjournals.aje.a112948]
17 **Haigh EAP**, Bogucki OE, Sigmon ST, Blazer DG. Depression Among Older Adults: A 20-Year Update on Five Common Myths and Misconceptions. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry* 2018; **26**: 107-122 [PMID: 28735658 DOI: 10.1016/j.jagp.2017.06.011]
18 **Matthews DR**, Hosker JP, Rudenski AS, Naylor BA, Treacher DF, Turner RC. Homeostasis model assessment: insulin resistance and beta-cell function from fasting plasma glucose and insulin concentrations in man. *Diabetologia* 1985; **28**: 412-419 [PMID: 3899825 DOI: 10.1007/BF00280883]
19 **Third Report of the National Cholesterol Education Program (NCEP) Expert Panel on Detection**, Evaluation, and Treatment of High Blood Cholesterol in Adults (Adult Treatment Panel III) Final Report. Circulation. 2002; 106. Available from: https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12485966/
20 **Beck AT**, Steer RA, Carbin MG. Psychometric properties of the Beck Depression Inventory: Twenty-five years of evaluation. *Clin Psychol Rev* 1988; **8**: 77-100 [DOI: 10.1016/0272-7358(88)90050-5]
21 **Lee JH**, Kim D, Kim HJ, Lee CH, Yang JI, Kim W, Kim YJ, Yoon JH, Cho SH, Sung MW, Lee HS. Hepatic steatosis index: a simple screening tool reflecting nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Dig Liver Dis* 2010; **42**: 503-508 [PMID:

19766548 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2009.08.002]

22 **Meffert PJ**, Baumeister SE, Lerch MM, Mayerle J, Kratzer W, Völzke H. Development, external validation, and comparative assessment of a new diagnostic score for hepatic steatosis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2014; **109**: 1404-1414 [PMID: 24957156 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2014.155]

23 **Koopmans B**, Pouwer F, de Bie RA, van Rooij ES, Leusink GL, Pop VJ. Depressive symptoms are associated with physical inactivity in patients with type 2 diabetes. The DIAZOB Primary Care Diabetes study. *Fam Pract* 2009; **26**: 171-173 [PMID: 19321598 DOI: 10.1093/fampra/cmp016]

24 **Seime RJ**, Vickers KS. The challenges of treating depression with exercise: From evidence to practice. *Clin Psychol Sci Pract* 2006; **13**: 194-197 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-2850.2006.00022.x]

25 **Xiao J**, Lim LKE, Ng CH, Tan DJH, Lim WH, Ho CSH, Tan EXX, Sanyal AJ, Muthiah MD. Is Fatty Liver Associated With Depression? *Front Med (Lausanne)* 2021; **8**: 691696 [PMID: 34277666 DOI: 10.3389/fmed.2021.691696]

26 **Lee JW**, Park SH. Association between depression and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: Contributions of insulin resistance and inflammation. *J Affect Disord* 2021; **278**: 259-263 [PMID: 32977263 DOI: 10.1016/j.jad.2020.09.073]

27 **Motl RW**, Konopack JF, McAuley E, Elavsky S, Jerome GJ, Marquez DX. Depressive symptoms among older adults: long-term reduction after a physical activity intervention. *J Behav Med* 2005; **28**: 385-394 [PMID: 16049630 DOI: 10.1007/s10865-005-9005-5]

28 **Paik JM**, Deshpande R, Golabi P, Younossi I, Henry L, Younossi ZM. The impact of modifiable risk factors on the long-term outcomes of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2020; **51**: 291-304 [PMID: 31782543 DOI: 10.1111/apt.15580]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 623-633

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.623

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Observational Study

Assessment of fibroblast growth factor 19 as a non-invasive serum marker for hepatocellular carcinoma

Ghada Abdelrahman Mohamed, Ehab Hasan Nashaat, Hadeer Mohamed Fawzy, Ahmed Mohamed ElGhandour

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): 0
Grade C (Good): C
Grade D (Fair): D
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: Kanno H, Tong GD

Received: October 19, 2021
Peer-review started: October 19, 2021
First decision: December 3, 2021
Revised: December 19, 2022
Accepted: February 20, 2022
Article in press: February 20, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Ghada Abdelrahman Mohamed, Ehab Hasan Nashaat, Hadeer Mohamed Fawzy, Ahmed Mohamed ElGhandour, Department of Internal Medicine, Gastroenterology and Hepatology Unit, Faculty of Medicine, Ain Shams University, Cairo 11591, Egypt

Corresponding author: Ghada Abdelrahman Mohamed, MD, Lecturer, Department of Internal Medicine, Gastroenterology and Hepatology Unit, Faculty of Medicine, Ain Shams University, El Khalifa El-Maamon St., Abbassia, Cairo 11591, Egypt. ghadaabdelrahman@med.asu.edu.eg

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Fibroblast growth factor 19 (FGF-19) is one of the founding members of the endocrine FGF subfamily. Recently, it has been the subject of much interest owing to its role in various physiological processes affecting glucose and lipid metabolism and the regulation of bile acid secretion as well as cell proliferation, differentiation, and motility. Additionally, FGF-19 secretion in an autocrine style has reportedly contributed to cancer progression in various types of malignancies including hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

AIM

To estimate the serum FGF-19 concentrations in HCC cases and assess its diagnostic performance for the detection of HCC.

METHODS

We recruited 90 adult participants and divided them into three equal groups: Healthy controls, cirrhosis patients, and HCC patients. Serum FGF-19 concentrations were measured using the Human FGF-19 ELISA kit.

RESULTS

We detected a high statistically significant difference in serum FGF-19 levels among the three groups. The highest level was observed in the HCC group, followed by the cirrhosis and control groups (236.44 ± 40.94 *vs* 125.63 ± 31.54 *vs* 69.60 ± 20.90 pg/mL, respectively, $P \leq 0.001$). FGF-19 was positively correlated with alpha fetoprotein (AFP; $r = 0.383$, $P = 0.003$) and international normalised ratio ($r = 0.357$, $P = 0.005$), while it was negatively correlated with albumin ($r = -0.500$, $P \leq 0.001$). For the detection of HCC, receiver operating characteristic curve analysis showed that the best cut-off point of AFP was > 8.2 ng/mL with an area

under the curve (AUC) of 0.78, sensitivity of 63.33%, specificity of 83.33%, positive predictive value (PPV) of 79.2%, negative predictive value (NPV) of 69.4%, and total accuracy of 78%. However, FGF-19 at a cut-off point > 180 pg/mL had an AUC of 0.98, sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 90.0%, PPV of 90.0%, NPV of 100%, and total accuracy of 98%.

CONCLUSION

FGF-19 represents a possible novel non-invasive marker for HCC. It may improve the prognosis of HCC patients due to its utility in several aspects of HCC detection and management.

Key Words: Fibroblast growth factor 19; FGF-19; Fibroblast growth factors; Tumour biomarkers; Hepatocellular carcinoma; Detection; Cirrhosis

Core Tip: We recruited 90 adult participants and divided them into three equal groups: Healthy controls, cirrhosis patients, and hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) patients. We detected a high statistically significant difference in fibroblast growth factor 19 (FGF-19) levels among the three groups, with the highest level occurring in the HCC group, followed by the cirrhosis and control groups (236.44 ± 40.94 *vs* 125.63 ± 31.54 *vs* 69.60 ± 20.90 pg/mL, respectively, $P \leq 0.001$). For the detection of HCC, receiver operating characteristic curve analysis showed that FGF-19 demonstrated a better diagnostic performance than alpha fetoprotein (area under the curve = 0.98 *vs* 0.78). Consequently, we can conclude that FGF-19 represents a possible novel non-invasive marker for HCC.

Citation: Mohamed GA, Nashaat EH, Fawzy HM, ElGhandour AM. Assessment of fibroblast growth factor 19 as a non-invasive serum marker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 623-633
URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/623.htm
DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.623

INTRODUCTION

Fibroblast growth factor 19 (FGF-19) is one of the founding members of the endocrine FGF subfamily [1]. Recently, it has been the subject of much interest owing to its role in various physiological processes affecting glucose and lipid metabolism and bile acid secretion as well as cell proliferation, differentiation, and motility[2-4]. Additionally, FGF-19 secretion in an autocrine style has reportedly contributed to cancer progression in various types of malignancies including hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)[5-9].

FGF-19 has a restricted pattern of expression. It is mostly expressed in the terminal ileum in response to the bile-acid-stimulated intestinal Farnesoid X receptor (FXR)[10], and then, through the portal circulation to the liver, it attaches to its receptor, fibroblast growth factor receptor 4 (FGFR4), and a co-factor known as β-klotho. This action initiates the transcription of various genes that negatively regulate bile acid synthesis through the downregulation of CYP7A1[11].

Although FGF-19 is formed principally in the ileum and FGF-19 expression is almost absent in the human liver under normal conditions, current studies propose that FGF-19 may be autocrined by human hepatocytes under cholestatic conditions, peritumoral tissue cirrhosis, and HCC. The secretion of FGF-19 in these conditions demonstrates the protective negative feedback of FGF-19 in order to guard hepatocytes from the cytotoxicity of bile acids[12-14] and the promotion of the development and progression of HCC by bile acids through mTOR dependent mechanisms[15]. This beneficial effect of the FGF-19 pathway has also been proposed in other studies in *FXR*-/-knock out mice that developed hepatic malignancies, which were inhibited by the expression of an *FXR* transgene in the intestine[16]. This effect indicates the protective aspect of Fgf15 (the mouse homolog of human FGF-19) in relation to hepatic malignancies. Additionally, Fgf15/FGF19 mediated hepatic regeneration in mice in other studies[17,18].

However, the higher expression of FGF-19 in HCC patients has been found to promote tumour cell survival and has antiapoptotic impacts that are applied through the FGFR4-glycogen synthase kinase (GSK)3β-Nrf2 signalling pathway[19]. Moreover, Kang *et al*[20] showed that a distinctive molecular subtype of FGF-19 is correlated with a poor prognosis in HCC patients. In addition, Cui *et al*[21] and Zhao *et al*[22] reported that Fgf15 and FGF-19, respectively, promoted the progression of HCC by stimulating epithelial-mesenchymal transition and Wnt/β-catenin cascade, which is linked to tumour aggression and mortality. Furthermore, previous data has pointed to FGF-19 as a promoter of liver stem cells in HCC patients, as noted in the robust association between FGF-19 and EpCAM, which is a

moderator of cell adhesion and signalling and a special biomarker for liver cancer stem cells[23,24]. Additionally, confirmation of the role of FGF-19 signalling in HCC progression arises from the tumour-preventing effect of the selective FGFR4 inhibitor BLU9931 in a mouse HCC model with implanted FGF-19-producing, FGFR4-expressing hepatic cells[25]. These results suggest that FGF-19 may be implicated in tumour development in HCC cases.

Since FGF-19 is a serum protein secreted by HCC cells in an autocrine loop style, and systemic concentrations of FGF-19 have been found to reflect its portal concentrations[14,26], we aimed to estimate the serum FGF-19 concentrations in HCC cases and assess the diagnostic performance of FGF-19 for the detection of HCC.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

This observational study was conducted at Ain Shams University Hospitals in Cairo, Egypt from March 2021 to September 2021. This study was performed in accordance with the ethics principles of the Declaration of Helsinki and was authorised by the ethics board of the Faculty of Medicine, Ain Shams University (No. FMASU MS 66/2021). Written informed approval was obtained from all the participants before they were enrolled in the study.

We consecutively recruited 90 adult participants and divided them into three equal groups: Healthy controls, cirrhosis patients, and HCC patients. Patients with any malignant disease other than HCC were excluded. None of the HCC cases had either neoadjuvant chemotherapy or radiotherapy.

Diagnosis of cirrhosis and HCC

Cirrhosis was diagnosed according to laboratory parameters, clinical manifestations, and/or histological criteria[27]. HCC was identified through contrast-enhanced imaging studies and/or histological criteria as per the practice guidelines[28].

Measurement of serum FGF-19 concentrations

The serum FGF-19 concentrations were measured using the Human FGF-19 ELISA kit (SunRed Biological Technology Co. Ltd., Shanghai, China, Catalogue # 201-12-2199) with a sensitivity of 2.032 pg/mL, assay range of 2.5-700 pg/mL, intra-assay coefficient of variability (CV) < 10%, and inter-assay CV < 12%.

Statistical methods

Data were analysed using the Statistical Package for Social Science (IBM SPSS Statistics for Windows, Version 20.0. Armonk, NY: IBM Corp). The qualitative variables are shown as numbers and percentages, while the quantitative variables are shown as the mean, standard deviation, or median and interquartile range, as appropriate. The differences among the groups were calculated using the Chi-square test, Fisher exact test, independent *t*-test, one-way ANOVA test, or Kruskal-Wallis test, as appropriate. A receiver operating characteristic (ROC) curve analysis was applied to assess the diagnostic performance of FGF-19 and alpha fetoprotein (AFP) for HCC detection. A P value of less than 0.05 was considered statistically significant.

RESULTS

This study included 90 participants divided into control, cirrhosis, and HCC groups. The HCC group was comprised of 19 males (63.3%) and 11 females (36.7%), with a mean age of 57.37 years. In the cirrhotic group, there were 20 males (66.7%) and 10 (33.3%) females, with a mean age of 53.57 years. The control group included 18 males (60%) and 12 females (40%), with a mean age of 51.07 years (Table 1). According to the Child-Pugh class, 14 of the HCC cases (46.7%) belonged to Class C, while 18 (60%) of the cirrhotic cases belonged to Class A (P = 0.002, Table 1). There were statistically significant differences among the three groups concerning AFP, haemoglobin, platelets, alanine aminotransferase, aspartate aminotransferase (AST), albumin, international normalised ratio (INR), fasting blood glucose, and bilirubin (Table 1).

We detected a high statistically significant difference in the FGF-19 levels of the three groups. The highest level occurred in the HCC group, followed by the cirrhosis and control groups (236.44 ± 40.94 *vs* 125.63 ± 31.54 *vs* 69.60 ± 20.90 pg/mL, respectively, $P \leq 0.001$; Table 1, Figure 1). There were seven HCC patients with negative AFP; however, they had elevated FGF-19 levels (> 180 pg/mL). Serum FGF-19 levels were not significantly different according to the Child–Pugh class in the cirrhosis and HCC groups (Table 2).

The tumour characteristics of the HCC cases are shown in Table 3. Serum FGF-19 levels were higher in relation to the size of the tumour, the presence of portal vein thrombosis, jaundice, lower limb oedema, and weight loss; however, these differences did not reach statistical significance (Table 4). FGF-

Table 1 Characteristics of all participants

		Control (*n* = 30)	Cirrhosis (*n* = 30)	HCC (*n* = 30)	*P* value	*Post-hoc* analysis
Age (yr)		51.07 ± 12.38	53.57 ± 10.48	57.37 ± 10.25	0.091	
Sex	Female	12 (40%)	10 (33.3%)	11 (36.7%)	0.866	
	Male	18 (60%)	20 (66.7%)	19 (63.3%)		
Aetiology of hepatic disease			HCV (*n* = 18, 60%)	HCV (*n* = 25, 83.33%)	0.691	
			HBV (*n* = 7, 23.3%)	HBV (*n* = 3, 10%)		
			Others (*n* = 5, 16.6%)	Others (*n* = 2, 6.66%)		
Child-Pugh Class	Class A		18 (60%)	5 (16.7%)	0.002	
	Class B		6 (20%)	11 (36.7%)		
	Class C		6 (20%)	14 (46.7%)		
Fibroblast growth factor 19 (pg/mL)		69.60 ± 20.90	125.63 ± 31.54	236.44 ± 40.94	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 ≤ 0.001
Alpha fetoprotein (ng/mL)		3.35 (2.5 – 4.5)	6.4 (4 – 6.9)	513.5 (5.6 – 1500)	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 ≤ 0.001
Haemoglobin (g/dL)		13.16 ± 1.24	10.68 ± 1.11	10.49 ± 1.59	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 = 0.588
White blood cells (10^9/L)		7.09 ± 2.01	6.37 ± 2.27	5.86 ± 2.43	0.109	
Platelets (10^9/L)		288.10 ± 92.79	144.17 ± 48.27	136.13 ± 43.78	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 = 0.636
Alanine aminotransferase (U/L)		20.67 ± 7.02	65.47 ± 33.00	52.97 ± 23.25	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 = 0.044
Aspartate aminotransferase (U/L)		23.23 ± 12.69	49.87 ± 24.78	45.93 ± 20.02	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 = 0.444
Creatinine (mg/dL)		0.90 ± 0.22	0.99 ± 0.36	1.11 ± 0.51	0.112	
Urea (mg/dL)		21.70 ± 7.37	30.10 ± 18.82	32.97 ± 25.17	0.057	
Albumin (g/dL)		3.96 ± 0.34	3.33 ± 0.53	2.65 ± 0.43	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 ≤ 0.001
INR		1.09 ± 0.11	1.54 ± 0.24	1.85 ± 0.36	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 ≤ 0.001
Bilirubin (mg/dL)		0.75 ± 0.26	1.80 ± 0.74	1.97 ± 0.42	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001
						P3 = 0.211
Fasting blood glucose (μmoI/L)		5.19 ± 0.19	4.46 ± 0.28	4.46 ± 0.28	≤ 0.001	P1 ≤ 0.001
						P2 ≤ 0.001

			P3 = 1.000

HBV: Hepatitis B virus; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; HCV: Hepatitis C virus; INR: International normalised ratio.

Table 2 Serum fibroblast growth factor 19 levels in the cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma groups according to Child-Pugh score

	Child-Pugh Class	Cirrhosis (*n* = 30)	HCC (*n* = 30)
Fibroblast growth factor 19 (pg/mL)	Class A	129.311 (± 38.01)	223.320 (± 37.39)
	Class B	123.383 (± 21.51)	230.209 (± 30.96)
	Class C	116.833 (± 15.69)	246.029 (± 48.71)
	P value	0.7046	0.479

HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

Table 3 Tumour characteristics of hepatocellular carcinoma cases

		HCC (*n* = 30)
Size	< 2 cm	3 (10%)
	2-3 cm	17 (56.7%)
	> 5 cm	10 (33.3%)
Number of tumour foci	Single	10 (33.3%)
	2-3	9 (30%)
	Multiple	11 (36.7%)
Portal vein thrombosis	No	21 (70%)
	Yes	9 (30%)
Metastasis	No	27
	Yes	3

HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.

19 was positively correlated with AFP (r = 0.383, P = 0.003) and INR (r = 0.357, P = 0.005), while it was negatively correlated with albumin (r = -0.500, $P \leq 0.001$; Table 5, Figure 2).

For the detection of HCC, the ROC curve analysis showed that the best cut-off point of AFP was > 8.2 ng/mL with an area under the curve (AUC) of 0.78, sensitivity of 63.33%, specificity of 83.33%, positive predictive value (PPV) of 79.2%, negative predictive value (NPV) of 69.4%, and total accuracy of 78%. However, FGF-19 at a cut-off point > 180 pg/mL had an AUC of 0.98, sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 90.0%, PPV of 90.0%, NPV of 100%, and total accuracy of 98% (Table 6, Figure 3).

DISCUSSION

HCC is the third highest cause of tumour death globally, with a 5-year survival rate of approximately 20% despite the developments in imaging technologies and therapeutic methodologies[29]. Unfortunately, the majority of HCC patients are diagnosed at an advanced stage of disease; therefore, early recognition of the disease is crucial to improving the prognosis and overall survival of patients[24].

Tumour markers have commonly been utilised for numerous objectives, such as diagnosis, follow-up care after treatment, optimisation of therapeutic effectiveness, and prediction of prognosis. Earlier studies have identified various serum markers for HCC which can be applied as diagnostic and prognostic markers for HCC. Although the assessment of these biomarkers is not essential for establishing a conclusive diagnosis of HCC as per the guidelines, these biomarkers play a key role in HCC diagnosis and monitoring[28,30,31]. However, it has been found that AFP, which is the most studied marker, may remain in the normal range not only in the early stages, but also in the advanced stages of HCC[32]. Moreover, an increase of AFP is occasionally detected in cirrhotic patients.

Table 4 Serum fibroblast growth factor 19 levels according to variables in the hepatocellular carcinoma group

		FGF-19 pg/mL (mean ± SD)	*P* value
Size	< 2 cm	219.9 ± 51.79	0.254
	2-3 cm	229.2 ± 36.06	
	> 5 cm	253.72 ± 44.39	
Number	Single	234.17 ± 36.38	0.885
	2 - 3	242.28 ± 45.69	
	Multiple	233.74 ± 44.22	
Portal vein thrombosis	No	230.55 ± 39.13	0.235
	Yes	250.2 ± 44.08	
Right upper quadrant pain	No	237.171 ± 41.026	0.885
	Yes	234.744 ± 43.163	
Weight loss	No	229.132 ± 34.285	0.106
	Yes	256.550 ± 52.793	
Pruritus	No	239.518 ± 39.170	0.505
	Yes	227.988 ± 47.214	
Jaundice	No	226.182 ± 29.468	0.118
	Yes	249.86 ± 50.48	
Fever	No	237.668 ± 40.531	0.834
	Yes	234.33 ± 43.54	
Oedema	No	228.945 ± 37.054	0.16
	Yes	251.44 ± 46.12	

FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19.

Considering these two facts, alternative serum markers with high levels of sensitivity and specificity are needed.

It has previously been reported that FGF-19 may be associated with the pathogenesis and clinical characteristics of HCC[12,24]. Thus, we aimed to investigate the diagnostic utility of FGF-19 in HCC cases. We observed significantly higher serum FGF-19 levels in the HCC group compared to the control and cirrhosis groups. Serum FGF-19 levels were also higher in relation to the size of the tumour and presence of portal vein thrombosis; however, these differences did not reach statistical significance owing to the small sample size.

In accordance with our results, Maeda *et al*[12] detected higher serum levels of FGF-19 in their HCC group (214.5 pg/mL) compared to the cirrhosis group (100.1 pg/mL, $P < 0.001$) and the control group (78.8 pg/mL, $P = 0.002$). However, no statistically significant difference was detected between the cirrhotic cases and controls in their study.

Similar to the current results, Li *et al*[24] detected significantly higher serum FGF-19 levels in the HCC group compared to the control group (145.57 ± 118.72 *vs* 90.18 ± 13.88 pg/mL, $P = 0.044$). They also reported that FGF-19 levels were significantly raised in the HCC tissues (57.80 ± 4.39 pg/10 mg total protein) in comparison to both healthy control tissues (33.29 ± 1.53 pg/10 mg total protein, $P < 0.001$) and paired peritumoral tissues (46.33 ± 2.53 pg/10 mg total protein, $P = 0.032$). Additionally, *FGF-19* mRNA expression was significantly raised in the HCC tissues in comparison to paired peritumoral tissues (3.30 ± 1.82 *vs* 2.25 ± 0.82, respectively, $P = 0.025$). Moreover, FGF-19 expression increased significantly with a strong positive correlation ($r = 0.968$) consistent with the histological severity of hepatic disease, showing a trend in samples with steatosis (224.13 ± 115.68, $P = 0.087$), steatohepatitis (413.99 ± 159.55, $P = 0.002$), cirrhosis (613.35 ± 157.29, $P < 0.001$), and HCC (2507.28 ± 831.10, $P = 0.001$) in comparison to the paired peritumoral tissues (142.96 ± 41.32).

Our results are also consistent with those of Sun *et al*[33], who detected higher FGF-19 levels in the HCC and diabetes-HCC groups than in the control and diabetes groups (220.5, 185.1, 115.8, and 70.4 pg/mL, respectively, $P < 0.001$). All these results indicate that FGF-19 may have a role in the pathogenesis of HCC.

Table 5 Correlation between fibroblast growth factor 19 and alpha fetoprotein with patients' laboratory data

	AFP		FGF-19	
	r	*P* value	*r*	*P* value
AFP	–	–	0.383	0.003
FGF-19	0.383	0.003	–	–
Age	0.062	0.640	0.125	0.343
Haemoglobin	-0.196	0.133	-0.060	0.651
White blood cells	-0.064	0.627	-0.144	0.272
Platelets	0.018	0.893	-0.151	0.248
Alanine aminotransferase	0.036	0.786	-0.151	0.249
Aspartate aminotransferase	0.040	0.764	-0.024	0.855
Creatinine	-0.164	0.211	0.093	0.480
Urea	-0.022	0.867	0.012	0.929
Albumin	-0.213	0.102	-0.500	0.000
INR	-0.001	0.993	0.357	0.005
Bilirubin	-0.093	0.479	0.008	0.952
Fasting blood glucose	-0.135	0.477	0.056	0.767

AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19; INR: International normalised ratio.

Table 6 Diagnostic performance of fibroblast growth factor 19 and alpha fetoprotein for differentiation of hepatocellular carcinoma cases

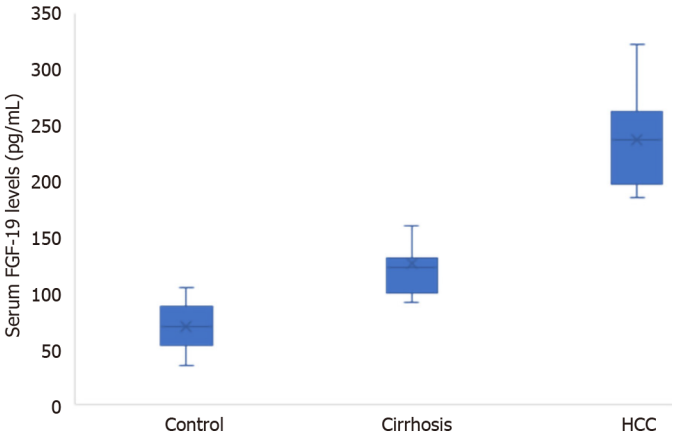
	Cut-off point	AUC	Sensitivity	Specificity	PPV	NPV
FGF-19	> 180 pg/mL	0.98	100%	90%	90%	100%
AFP	> 8.2 ng/mL	0.78	63.33%	83.33%	79.2%	69.4%

AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; AUC: Area under the curve; FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; NPV: Negative predictive value; PPV: Positive predictive value.

In line with the results of the current research, Sun *et al*[33] detected a positive association between FGF-19 and AFP in HCC patients ($P < 0.05$). However, Maeda *et al*[12] found no significant association between serum FGF-19 concentrations and AFP. Moreover, in partial agreement with the present study, Wunsch *et al*[34] observed that serum and hepatic concentrations of FGF-19 were associated with the severity of hepatic disease, as measured by laboratory parameters including albumin ($r = -0.408$, $P = 0.007$), haemoglobin ($r = -0.394$, $P = 0.01$), AST ($r = 0.328$, $P = 0.03$), and total bilirubin ($r = 0.577$, $P < 0.001$).

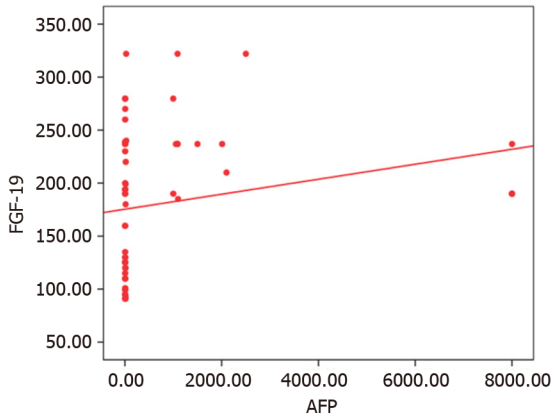
For HCC detection, in the study by Maeda *et al*[12], the ROC curve analysis determined a cut-off point of FGF-19 of 200 pg/mL, which had an AUC of 0.795, sensitivity of 53.2%, specificity of 95.1%, PPV of 95.9%, and NPV of 48.7%. This result was comparable to those of AFP (AUC = 0.827). However, in the current study, FGF-19 had a better diagnostic performance at a cut-off > 180 pg/mL with an AUC of 0.98, sensitivity of 100%, specificity of 90%, PPV of 90%, and NPV of 100%.

The current study was limited by a small sample size and a high ratio of patients with advanced HCC. Further studies are needed to investigate the clinical applications of the current results. FGF-19 could serve as a predictor of prognosis and a marker for follow-up after HCC treatment. Additionally, the FGF-19 pathway has received increased interest as a possible therapeutic target in chronic liver diseases[5,35-37]. In fact, anti-FGF-19 antibody therapy has been described as inhibiting HCC evolution in FGF-19 transgenic mice[38].



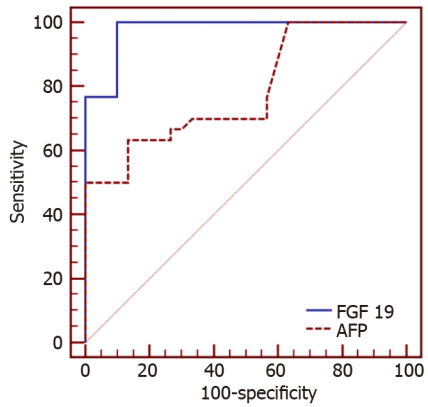
DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.623 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 1 Serum fibroblast growth factor 19 levels in the control, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma groups. FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19; HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.623 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 2 Correlation between serum fibroblast growth factor 19 and alpha fetoprotein. AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.623 **Copyright** The Author(s) 2022.

Figure 3 Receiver operating characteristic curves for assessing the diagnostic performance of FGF-19 and alpha fetoprotein for the differentiation of HCC cases. AFP: Alpha fetoprotein; FGF-19: Fibroblast growth factor 19.

CONCLUSION

FGF-19 could be a possible novel non-invasive marker for HCC. It may improve the prognosis of HCC patients due to its utility in several aspects of HCC detection and management.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Fibroblast growth factor 19 (FGF-19) is one of the founding members of the endocrine FGF subfamily. Recently, it has been the subject of much interest owing to its role in various physiological processes affecting glucose and lipid metabolism and bile acid secretion as well as cell proliferation, differentiation, and motility. Additionally, FGF-19 secretion in an autocrine style has reportedly contributed to cancer progression in various types of malignancies including hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC).

Research motivation

Tumour markers for HCC with a high sensitivity and specificity are necessary.

Research objectives

We aimed to estimate the serum FGF-19 concentrations in HCC cases and assess the diagnostic performance of FGF-19 for the detection of HCC.

Research methods

We recruited 90 adult participants and divided them into three equal groups: Healthy controls, cirrhosis patients, and HCC patients. Serum FGF-19 concentrations were measured using the Human FGF-19 ELISA kit.

Research results

We detected a high statistically significant difference in the FGF-19 levels between the three groups, with the highest level occurring in the HCC group, followed by the cirrhosis and control groups (236.44 ± 40.94 *vs* 125.63 ± 31.54 *vs* 69.60 ± 20.90 pg/mL, respectively, $P \leq 0.001$). For the detection of HCC, ROC curve analysis showed that FGF-19 produced a better diagnostic performance than alpha fetoprotein with an AUC of 0.98 *vs* 0.78.

Research conclusions

FGF-19 may be a possible novel non-invasive marker for HCC.

Research perspectives

FGF-19 could serve as a predictor of prognosis and a marker for follow-up after HCC treatment. Furthermore, the FGF-19 pathway may be a therapeutic target for the management of HCC.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Mohamed GA, Nashaat EH, and ElGhandour AM designed the study; Fawzy HM participated in the acquisition of the data; Mohamed GA, Nashaat EH, Fawzy HM, and ElGhandour AM participated in the analysis and interpretation of the data; Mohamed GA, Nashaat EH, Fawzy HM, and ElGhandour AM revised the article critically for important intellectual content; Mohamed GA wrote the manuscript.

Institutional review board statement: The study was reviewed and approved by the institutional review board of Faculty of Medicine, Ain Shams University, Cairo, Egypt.

Informed consent statement: Informed consent was obtained from every participant before the enrollment into the study.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors have nothing to disclose.

Data sharing statement: The statistical code and dataset are available from the corresponding author at ghadaabdelrahman@med.asu.edu.eg. The participants gave informed consent for the data sharing.

STROBE statement: The authors have read the STROBE Statement—checklist of items, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the STROBE Statement—checklist of items.

Country/Territory of origin: Egypt

ORCID number: Ghada Abdelrahman Mohamed 0000-0003-0320-1011; Ehab Hasan Nashaat 0000-0002-7686-6463; Hadeer Mohamed Fawzy 0000-0001-7941-0931; Ahmed Mohamed ElGhandour 0000-0002-6106-4636.

S-Editor: Ma YJ
L-Editor: Wang TQ
P-Editor: Ma YJ

REFERENCES

1 **Rysz J**, Gluba-Brzózka A, Mikhailidis DP, Banach M. Fibroblast growth factor 19-targeted therapies for the treatment of metabolic disease. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2015; **24**: 603-610 [DOI: 10.1517/13543784.2015.1006357]
2 **Zhang J**, Li H, Bai N, Xu Y, Song Q, Zhang L, Wu G, Chen S, Hou X, Wang C, Wei L, Xu A, Fang Q, Jia W. Decrease of FGF19 contributes to the increase of fasting glucose in human in an insulin-independent manner. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2019; **42**: 1019-1027 [PMID: 30852757 DOI: 10.1007/s40618-019-01018-5]
3 **Babaknejad N**, Nayeri H, Hemmati R, Bahrami S, Esmaillzadeh A. An Overview of FGF19 and FGF21: The Therapeutic Role in the Treatment of the Metabolic Disorders and Obesity. *Horm Metab Res* 2018; **50**: 441-452 [DOI: 10.1055/a-0623-2909]
4 **Gómez-Ambrosi J**, Gallego-Escuredo JM, Catalán V, Rodríguez A, Domingo P, Moncada R, Valentí V, Salvador J, Giralt M, Villarroya F, Frühbeck G. FGF19 and FGF21 serum concentrations in human obesity and type 2 diabetes behave differently after diet- or surgically-induced weight loss. *Clin Nutr* 2017; **36**: 861-868 [PMID: 27188262 DOI: 10.1016/j.clnu.2016.04.027]
5 **Repana D**, Ross P. Targeting FGF19/FGFR4 Pathway: A Novel Therapeutic Strategy for Hepatocellular Carcinoma. *Diseases* 2015; **3**: 294-305 [PMID: 28943626 DOI: 10.3390/diseases3040294]
6 **Shimokawa T**, Furukawa Y, Sakai M, Li M, Miwa N, Lin YM, Nakamura Y. Involvement of the FGF18 gene in colorectal carcinogenesis, as a novel downstream target of the beta-catenin/T-cell factor complex. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 6116-6120 [PMID: 14559787]
7 **Zaharieva BM**, Simon R, Diener PA, Ackermann D, Maurer R, Alund G, Knönagel H, Rist M, Wilber K, Hering F, Schönenberger A, Flury R, Jäger P, Fehr JL, Mihatsch MJ, Gasser T, Sauter G, Toncheva DI. High-throughput tissue microarray analysis of 11q13 gene amplification (CCND1, FGF3, FGF4, EMS1) in urinary bladder cancer. *J Pathol* 2003; **201**: 603-608 [PMID: 14648664 DOI: 10.1002/path.1481]
8 **Gowardhan B**, Douglas DA, Mathers ME, McKie AB, McCracken SR, Robson CN, Leung HY. Evaluation of the fibroblast growth factor system as a potential target for therapy in human prostate cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2005; **92**: 320-327 [PMID: 15655558 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602274]
9 **Ruohola JK**, Viitanen TP, Valve EM, Seppänen JA, Loponen NT, Keskitalo JJ, Lakkakorpi PT, Härkönen PL. Enhanced invasion and tumor growth of fibroblast growth factor 8b-overexpressing MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 4229-4237 [PMID: 11358849]
10 **Zhang JH**, Nolan JD, Kennie SL, Johnston IM, Dew T, Dixon PH, Williamson C, Walters JR. Potent stimulation of fibroblast growth factor 19 expression in the human ileum by bile acids. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2013; **304**: G940-G948 [PMID: 23518683 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00398.2012]
11 **Kong B**, Wang L, Chiang JY, Zhang Y, Klaassen CD, Guo GL. Mechanism of tissue-specific farnesoid X receptor in suppressing the expression of genes in bile-acid synthesis in mice. *Hepatology* 2012; **56**: 1034-1043 [PMID: 22467244 DOI: 10.1002/hep.25740]
12 **Maeda T**, Kanzaki H, Chiba T, Ao J, Kanayama K, Maruta S, Kusakabe Y, Saito T, Kobayashi K, Kiyono S, Nakamura M, Ogasawara S, Suzuki E, Ooka Y, Nakamoto S, Nakagawa R, Muroyama R, Kanda T, Maruyama H, Kato N. Serum fibroblast growth factor 19 serves as a potential novel biomarker for hepatocellular carcinoma. *BMC Cancer* 2019; **19**: 1088 [PMID: 31718608 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-019-6322-9]
13 **Lin ZZ**, Hsu C, Jeng YM, Hu FC, Pan HW, Wu YM, Hsu HC, Hu MC, Cheng AL. Klotho-beta and fibroblast growth factor 19 expression correlates with early recurrence of resectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Liver Int* 2019; **39**: 1682-1691 [PMID: 30698907]
14 **Johansson H**, Mörk LM, Li M, Sandblom AL, Björkhem I, Höijer J, Ericzon BG, Jorns C, Gilg S, Sparrelid E, Isaksson B, Nowak G, Ellis E. Circulating Fibroblast Growth Factor 19 in Portal and Systemic Blood. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2018; **8**: 162-168 [PMID: 29892179 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2017.07.001]
15 **Gao L**, Lv G, Li R, Liu WT, Zong C, Ye F, Li XY, Yang X, Jiang JH, Hou XJ, Jing YY, Han ZP, Wei LX. Glycochenodeoxycholate promotes hepatocellular carcinoma invasion and migration by AMPK/mTOR dependent autophagy activation. *Cancer Lett* 2019; **454**: 215-223 [PMID: 30980867 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2019.04.009]
16 **Degirolamo C**, Modica S, Vacca M, Di Tullio G, Morgano A, D'Orazio A, Kannisto K, Parini P, Moschetta A. Prevention of spontaneous hepatocarcinogenesis in farnesoid X receptor-null mice by intestinal-specific farnesoid X receptor reactivation. *Hepatology* 2015; **61**: 161-170 [PMID: 24954587 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27274]
17 **Kong B**, Huang J, Zhu Y, Li G, Williams J, Shen S, Aleksunes LM, Richardson JR, Apte U, Rudnick DA, Guo GL. Fibroblast growth factor 15 deficiency impairs liver regeneration in mice. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2014; **306**: G893-G902 [PMID: 24699334 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00337.2013]
18 **Uriarte I**, Fernandez-Barrena MG, Monte MJ, Latasa MU, Chang HC, Carotti S, Vespasiani-Gentilucci U, Morini S, Vicente E, Concepcion AR, Medina JF, Marin JJ, Berasain C, Prieto J, Avila MA. Identification of fibroblast growth factor 15 as a novel mediator of liver regeneration and its application in the prevention of post-resection liver failure in mice. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 899-910 [PMID: 23292666 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302945]
19 **Teng Y**, Zhao H, Gao L, Zhang W, Shull AY, Shay C. FGF19 Protects Hepatocellular Carcinoma Cells against

Endoplasmic Reticulum Stress *via* Activation of FGFR4-GSK3β-Nrf2 Signaling. *Cancer Res* 2017; **77**: 6215-6225 [PMID: 28951455 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-17-2039]

20 **Kang HJ**, Haq F, Sung CO, Choi J, Hong SM, Eo SH, Jeong HJ, Shin J, Shim JH, Lee HC, An J, Kim MJ, Kim KP, Ahn SM, Yu E. Characterization of Hepatocellular Carcinoma Patients with *FGF19* Amplification Assessed by Fluorescence in situ Hybridization: A Large Cohort Study. *Liver Cancer* 2019; **8**: 12-23 [PMID: 30815392 DOI: 10.1159/000488541]

21 **Cui G**, Martin RC, Jin H, Liu X, Pandit H, Zhao H, Cai L, Zhang P, Li W, Li Y. Up-regulation of FGF15/19 signaling promotes hepatocellular carcinoma in the background of fatty liver. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2018; **37**: 136 [PMID: 29973237 DOI: 10.1186/s13046-018-0781-8]

22 **Zhao H**, Lv F, Liang G, Huang X, Wu G, Zhang W, Yu L, Shi L, Teng Y. FGF19 promotes epithelial-mesenchymal transition in hepatocellular carcinoma cells by modulating the GSK3β/β- catenin signaling cascade *via* FGFR4 activation. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 13575-13586 [PMID: 26498355 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.6185]

23 **Chan AW**, Tong JH, Chan SL, Lai PB, To KF. Expression of stemness markers (CD133 and EpCAM) in prognostication of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Histopathology* 2014; **64**: 935-950 [PMID: 24506513 DOI: 10.1111/his.12342]

24 **Li Y**, Zhang W, Doughtie A, Cui G, Li X, Pandit H, Yang Y, Li S, Martin R. Up-regulation of fibroblast growth factor 19 and its receptor associates with progression from fatty liver to hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncotarget* 2016; **7**: 52329-52339 [PMID: 27447573 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.10750]

25 **Hagel M**, Miduturu C, Sheets M, Rubin N, Weng W, Stransky N, Bifulco N, Kim JL, Hodous B, Brooijmans N, Shutes A, Winter C, Lengauer C, Kohl NE, Guzi T. First Selective Small Molecule Inhibitor of FGFR4 for the Treatment of Hepatocellular Carcinomas with an Activated FGFR4 Signaling Pathway. *Cancer Discov* 2015; **5**: 424-437 [PMID: 25776529 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-14-1029]

26 **Koelfat KV**, Bloemen JG, Jansen PL, Dejong CH, Schaap FG, Olde Damink SW. The portal-drained viscera release fibroblast growth factor 19 in humans. *Physiol Rep* 2016; **4** [PMID: 28003563 DOI: 10.14814/phy2.13037]

27 **Heidelbaugh JJ**, Bruderly M. Cirrhosis and chronic liver failure: part I. Diagnosis and evaluation. *Am Fam Physician* 2006; **74**: 756-762 [PMID: 16970019]

28 **European Association for the Study of the Liver**. EASL Clinical Practice Guidelines: Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2018; **69**: 182-236 [PMID: 29628281 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2018.03.019]

29 **Ferlay J**, Soerjomataram I, Dikshit R, Eser S, Mathers C, Rebelo M, Parkin DM, Forman D, Bray F. Cancer incidence and mortality worldwide: sources, methods and major patterns in GLOBOCAN 2012. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **136**: E359-E386 [PMID: 25220842 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.29210]

30 **Aboelfotoh AO**, Foda EM, Elghandour AM, Teama NM, Abouzein RA, Mohamed GA. Talin-1; other than a potential marker for hepatocellular carcinoma diagnosis. *Arab J Gastroenterol* 2020; **21**: 80-84 [PMID: 32439236 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajg.2020.04.017]

31 **Heimbach JK**, Kulik LM, Finn RS, Sirlin CB, Abecassis MM, Roberts LR, Zhu AX, Murad MH, Marrero JA. AASLD guidelines for the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2018; **67**: 358-380 [PMID: 28130846 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29086]

32 **Toyoda H**, Kumada T, Tada T, Sone Y, Kaneoka Y, Maeda A. Tumor Markers for Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Simple and Significant Predictors of Outcome in Patients with HCC. *Liver Cancer* 2015; **4**: 126-136 [PMID: 26020034 DOI: 10.1159/000367735]

33 **Sun Y**, Zhu M, Zhao H, Ni X, Chang R, Su J, Huang H, Cui S, Wang X, Yuan J, OuYang R, Zhang R, Chen W, Gu Y, Sun Y. Serum Fibroblast Growth Factor 19 and Total Bile Acid Concentrations Are Potential Biomarkers of Hepatocellular Carcinoma in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus. *Biomed Res Int* 2020; **2020**: 1751989 [PMID: 32104677 DOI: 10.1155/2020/1751989]

34 **Wunsch E**, Milkiewicz M, Wasik U, Trottier J, Kempińska-Podhorodecka A, Elias E, Barbier O, Milkiewicz P. Expression of hepatic Fibroblast Growth Factor 19 is enhanced in Primary Biliary Cirrhosis and correlates with severity of the disease. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 13462 [PMID: 26293907 DOI: 10.1038/srep13462]

35 **Hirschfield GM**, Mason A, Luketic V, Lindor K, Gordon SC, Mayo M, Kowdley KV, Vincent C, Bodhenheimer HC Jr, Parés A, Trauner M, Marschall HU, Adorini L, Sciacca C, Beecher-Jones T, Castelloe E, Böhm O, Shapiro D. Efficacy of obeticholic acid in patients with primary biliary cirrhosis and inadequate response to ursodeoxycholic acid. *Gastroenterology* 2015; **148**: 751-61.e8 [PMID: 25500425 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2014.12.005]

36 **Neuschwander-Tetri BA**, Loomba R, Sanyal AJ, Lavine JE, Van Natta ML, Abdelmalek MF, Chalasani N, Dasarathy S, Diehl AM, Hameed B, Kowdley KV, McCullough A, Terrault N, Clark JM, Tonascia J, Brunt EM, Kleiner DE, Doo E; NASH Clinical Research Network. Farnesoid X nuclear receptor ligand obeticholic acid for non-cirrhotic, non-alcoholic steatohepatitis (FLINT): a multicentre, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2015; **385**: 956-965 [PMID: 25468160 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)61933-4]

37 **Chae YK**, Ranganath K, Hammerman PS, Vaklavas C, Mohindra N, Kalyan A, Matsangou M, Costa R, Carneiro B, Villaflor VM, Cristofanilli M, Giles FJ. Inhibition of the fibroblast growth factor receptor (FGFR) pathway: the current landscape and barriers to clinical application. *Oncotarget* 2017; **8**: 16052-16074 [PMID: 28030802 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.14109]

38 **Zheng N**, Wei W, Wang Z. Emerging roles of FGF signaling in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Transl Cancer Res* 2016; **5**: 1-6 [PMID: 27226954]

World Journal of Hepatology

Submit a Manuscript: https://www.f6publishing.com

World J Hepatol 2022 March 27; 14(3): 634-646

DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Randomized Clinical Trial

Effect of a specific *Escherichia coli Nissle 1917* strain on minimal/mild hepatic encephalopathy treatment

Elina Manzhalii, Valentyna Moyseyenko, Vitalii Kondratiuk, Nataliia Molochek, Tetyana Falalyeyeva, Nazarii Kobyliak

Specialty type: Gastroenterology and hepatology

Provenance and peer review: Invited article; Externally peer reviewed.

Peer-review model: Single blind

Peer-review report's scientific quality classification

Grade A (Excellent): 0
Grade B (Very good): B
Grade C (Good): 0
Grade D (Fair): 0
Grade E (Poor): 0

P-Reviewer: De Carlis R

Received: March 31, 2021
Peer-review started: March 31, 2021
First decision: July 27, 2021
Revised: August 1, 2021
Accepted: February 22, 2022
Article in press: February 22, 2022
Published online: March 27, 2022

Elina Manzhalii, Valentyna Moyseyenko, Vitalii Kondratiuk, Department of Propedeutics of Internal Medicine, Bogomolets National Medical University, Kyiv 01601, Ukraine

Nataliia Molochek, Tetyana Falalyeyeva, Educational and Scientific Centre "Institute of Biology and Medicine", Taras Shevchenko National University of Kyiv, Kyiv 01601, Ukraine

Nataliia Molochek, Department of Pediatrics, Bogomolets National Medical University, Kyiv 01601, Ukraine

Tetyana Falalyeyeva, Nazarii Kobyliak, Department of Scientific, Medical Laboratory CSD, Kyiv 01004, Ukraine

Nazarii Kobyliak, Department of Endocrinology, Bogomolets National Medical University, Kyiv 01601, Ukraine

Corresponding author: Nazarii Kobyliak, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Endocrinology, Bogomolets National Medical University, Pushkinska 22 Street, Kyiv 01601, Ukraine. nazariikobyliak@gmail.com

Abstract

BACKGROUND

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) can be considered a result of dysregulated gut-liver-brain axis function, where cognitive impairment can be reversed or prevented by the beneficial effects induced by "gut-centric" therapies, such as the administration of nonabsorbable disaccharides, nonabsorbable antibiotics, probiotics and prebiotics.

AIM

To assess the short-term efficacy and safety of the probiotic *Escherichia coli Nissle* (EcN) 1917 strain compared to lactulose and rifaximin in patients with minimal/mild HE.

METHODS

From January 2017 to March 2020, a total of 45 patients with HE were enrolled in this prospective, single-centre, open-label, randomized study. Participants were randomly assigned at a ratio of 1:1:1 to one of the treatment groups: The EcN group (n = 15), lactulose group (n = 15) or rifaximin group (n = 15) for a 1 mo

intervention period. The main primary outcomes of the study were changes in serum ammonia and Stroop test score. The secondary outcomes were markers of a chronic systemic inflammatory response (IL-6, IL-8, and IFN-γ) and bacteriology of the stool flora evaluated by specialized nonculture techniques after a 1 mo intervention period.

RESULTS

Patients who were given rifaximin or EcN showed a more significant reduction in serum ammonia and normalization of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* abundance compared to the lactulose group. However, the most pronounced restoration of the symbiotic microflora was associated with EcN administration and characterized by the absence of *E. coli* with altered properties and pathogenic enterobacteria in patient faeces. In the primary outcome analysis, improvements in the Stroop test parameters in all intervention groups were observed. Moreover, EcN-treated patients performed 15% faster on the Stroop test than the lactulose group patients (P = 0.017). Both EcN and rifaximin produced similar significant reductions in the proinflammatory cytokines INF-γ, IL-6 and IL-8. EcN was more efficient than lactulose in reducing proinflammatory cytokine levels.

CONCLUSION

The use of the probiotic EcN strain was safe and quite efficient for HE treatment. The probiotic reduced the ammonia content and the level of serum proinflammatory cytokines, normalized the gut microbiota composition and improved the cognitive function of patients with HE. The application of the EcN strain was more effective than lactulose treatment.

Key Words: Hepatic encephalopathy; Chronic liver disease; cirrhosis; Gut microbiota; *E. coli Nissle 1917*; Cognitive functions; Stroop test; Rifaximin; Lactulose

Core Tip: In a prospective, single-centre, open-label, randomized study, the short-term efficacy and safety of *Escherichia coli Nissle* (EcN) 1917 compared to that of lactulose and rifaximin in patients with hepatic encephalopathy were evaluated. The probiotic reduced the ammonia content and the level of serum proinflammatory cytokines, normalized the gut microbiota composition and improved the cognitive functions of patients with hepatic encephalopathy. The application of the EcN strain was more effective than lactulose treatment.

Citation: Manzhalii E, Moyseyenko V, Kondratiuk V, Molochek N, Falalyeyeva T, Kobyliak N. Effect of a specific *Escherichia coli Nissle 1917* strain on minimal/mild hepatic encephalopathy treatment. *World J Hepatol* 2022; 14(3): 634-646

URL: https://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v14/i3/634.htm

DOI: https://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

INTRODUCTION

Non-alcoholic steatohepatitis is a major cause of liver cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma; both primary indications for liver transplantation[1,2]. End-stage liver cirrhosis can lead to recurrent hepatic encephalopathy (HE). HE is a brain disorder caused by hepatocellular insufficiency and/or portosystemic shunting that manifests itself in a wide range of neurological or psychiatric disorders ranging from subclinical changes to coma[3]. HE, a challenging complication of advanced liver disease, occurs in approximately 30%-45% of patients with cirrhosis[4]. HE is classified using the West Haven criteria: Minimal (MHE), covert HE (grade I) or overt HE (OHE, grades II-IV)[5]. Numerous pathogenic factors contribute to the development of this disease[6].

Ammonia and mercaptans play a dominant role in the development of HE. Ammonia is formed from the nitrogen of nutrients in the intestine, primarily by the destruction of urea by urease, which is present in the colonial microflora[7]. Under normal conditions, ammonia is metabolized by the liver to urea, but under conditions of liver damage, urea can enter the systemic bloodstream and provoke nitrooxidative stress in the brain[8]. This process is accompanied by neurotransmission and cognitive function decline. Ammonia enhances the permeability of the blood-brain barrier by increasing the concentration of aromatic amino acids in brain tissues, in particular tryptophan, which leads to the synthesis of false neurotransmitters that replace real neurotransmitters (dopamine and norepinephrine) and thus interfere with normal neurotransmitters[9]. Decreased synthesis of physiological dopamine and norepinephrine

leads to inadequate neurotransmission and HE development[10]. False neurotransmitters not only can be synthesized in the central nervous system (CNS) the intestinal microflora is also a source[11]. When liver function is impaired or if there are portosystemic shunts, neurotransmitters enter the CNS, causing HE. Subsequent studies have provided some convincing evidence of the association of HE with intestinal dysbiosis. Thus, intraperitoneal administration of liposaccharides (LPS) in a mouse model of cirrhosis was associated with induction of precoma and worsening of cytotoxic cerebral oedema[12]. Moreover, small intestinal bacterial overgrowth (SIBO) is a common and increasingly recognized disorder in cirrhosis (30% to 73%)[13,14]. One of the most important predisposing factors of SIBO is small bowel dysmotility[15]. Multiple studies have shown that the presence of SIBO is strongly linked to the pathogenesis of HE[16,17]. Therefore, HE can be considered a result of dysregulated gut-liver-brain axis function, where cognitive impairment can be reversed or prevented by the beneficial effects induced by "gut-centric" therapies such as nonabsorbable disaccharides, nonabsorbable antibiotics, probiotics, prebiotics, and faecal microbiota transplantation (FMT)[18].

The treatment of choice is nonabsorbable disaccharides, such as lactulose and lactitol, which presumably acidify the stool and eradicate toxic metabolites[19]. However, treatment with lactulose is associated with nonserious (mainly gastrointestinal) adverse events such as diarrhoea[20], and one-third of these patients with HE do not respond to this standard treatment and have refractory HE[21]. Hence, newer drugs with effective improvement in HE and better side effect profiles are still being tested.

Regarding this aspect, probiotics modulating gut microbiota, and specifically those increasing urease-free strains to target ammonia production and absorption, may be considered important therapeutic options for HE patients, particularly in scenarios of noncompliance or intolerance to lactulose[22]. Probiotics are defined as live microorganisms promoted with claims that they provide health benefits when consumed in adequate amounts[23-25]. They are considered generally safe and may bring the health benefits claimed for them[26,27]. An early meta-analysis of the effects of pre-, pro-, or synbiotics that modulate the gut microbiota showed a significant improvement in MHE[22]. However, most of the assessed probiotics were limited to *Lactobacillus* or *Bifidobacterium* strains. The probiotic strain *Escherichia coli Nissle* 1917 (EcN), in contrast to a number of *Lactobacillus* or *Bifidobacterium* strains, stimulates the production of the anti-inflammatory cytokine interleukin (IL)-10[28]. Given certain metabolic processes of normal microflora and the features of the EcN strain, including short-chain fatty acid (SCFA) generation, bile acid metabolism, an increase in anti-inflammatory cytokines and a decrease in proinflammatory cytokines[29], their use may be effective for the treatment of HE in cirrhotic patients.

The aim of the present study was to assess the short-term efficacy and safety of probiotic EcN strains compared to lactulose and rifaximin in patients with mild (Stage 1-2) or MHE.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

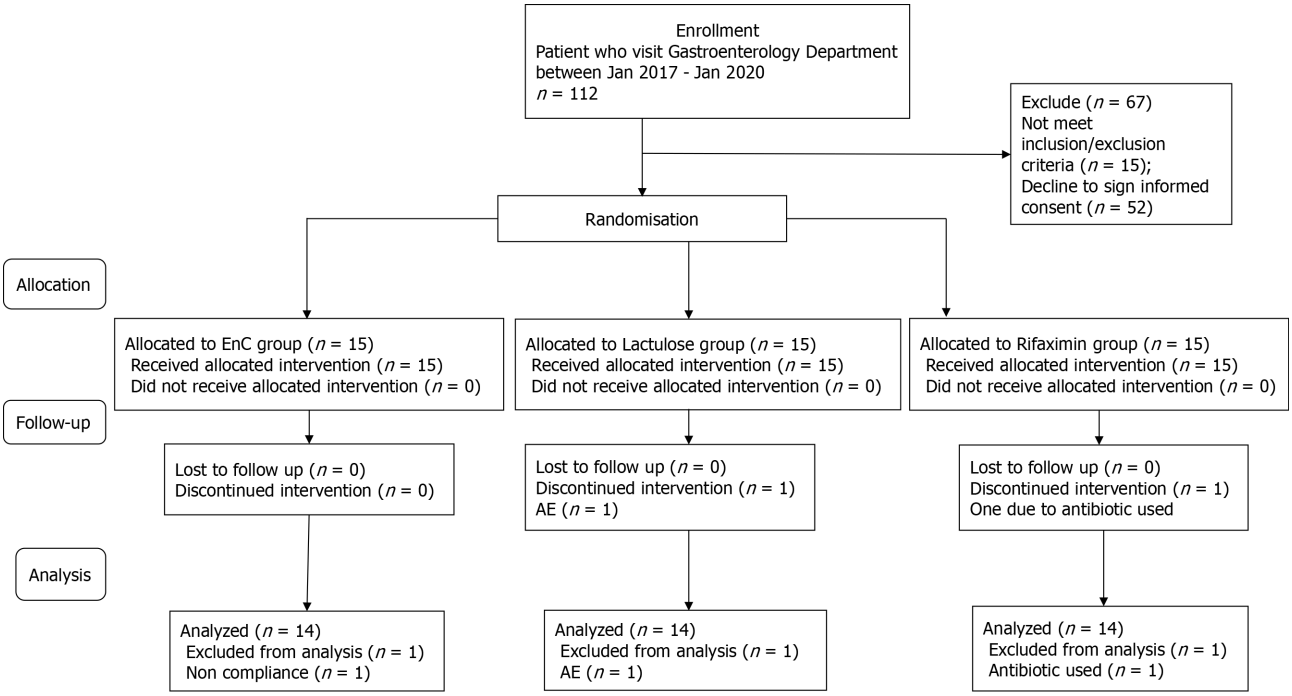
Patient selection

This study was conducted at Bogomolets National Medical University between January 2017 and March 2020. A total of 45 patients with HE were enrolled in this prospective, single-centre, open-label, randomized study. The inclusion criteria were as follows: adult patients (age: 18-65 years) with cirrhosis diagnosed on the basis of liver biopsy, liver stiffness measurement or radiological study and the presence of minimal or mild (Grade 1-2) HE as defined by West Haven criteria; two or more documented episodes of HE in the last 6 mo, in addition to at least one episode in the last 3 mo; and a signed informed consent form. Patients were excluded if they had received L-ornithine-L-aspartate, zinc, metronidazole, neomycin, antibiotics, probiotics and yogurt consumption in the previous six weeks or if they had a history of allergy or intolerance to lactulose and/or rifaximin. The other exclusion criteria were neurologic diseases such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease or nonhepatic metabolic encephalopathies, severe current disease (hepatic, renal, respiratory, or cardiovascular), pregnancy, any condition thought to be associated with poor compliance (*e.g.*, alcoholism or drug addiction) or any condition or circumstance that would, in the opinion of the investigator, prevent completion of the study or interfere with analysis of study results.

Study design

This prospective, open-label, single-centre, randomized clinical study compared probiotic EcN strains with lactulose and rifaximin treatment for 1 mo in patients with mild (Stage 1-2) or MHE. The 45 participants were randomly assigned at a ratio of 1:1:1 to one of the treatment groups using a computer-generated numeric sequence. The EcN group (n = 15) received probiotics (2,5-25·10^9 colony forming units - CFU/g) according to the scheme for the first 4 days, 1 capsule (QD), and then twice daily (BID) for 1 mo. Participants in the lactulose group (n = 15) received 30-60 mL in 2 or 3 divided doses so that the patient passed 2-3 semisoft stools per day for 1 month of the intervention period. The third group (rifaximin group, n = 15) was prescribed oral rifaximin 500 mg two times per day.

Patient compliance was evaluated by remnant pill counting and direct questions from an investigator after completion of the treatment. Compliance was defined as good when less than 15% of the pills were unconsumed at remnant pill counting. If it was found that a participant had missed > 15% of the



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

Figure 1 Consolidated standards of reporting trials flow chart - trial protocol. AE: Adverse events.

suggested doses, the subject data were excluded from the final results. At the same time, all of the patients were asked about adverse events (AEs). In case of minor AEs, the participants had an opportunity either to continue or to cease taking the medication but nevertheless were asked to complete further visits. Patients who reported serious AEs caused by the intervention, such as diarrhoea, nausea/vomiting or sepsis; who underwent changes in previous therapy; or who had taken antibiotics other than rifaximin were not included in the final analysis.

The study protocol was approved by the Ethics Committee at Bogomolets National Medical University (protocol number: 106/2017) and was registered in the Clinical Trial.gov database under entry number NCT04787276.

Outcome measures and study procedures

After informed consent was signed, the patients provided samples of their blood serum in a fasting state, which were immediately frozen at -20 °C. Corresponding clinical and demographic data were gathered for each patient.

The main primary outcomes of the study were changes in serum ammonia and the Stroop test after a 1 mo intervention period. Cognitive functions were determined by the Stroop test[30] using the mobile application EncephalAppStroop. Each patient took the test on a smartphone twice (before and after treatment), and all results were recorded. The test consisted of two stages: without the Stroop-off effect and with the Stroop-on effect. At each stage, patients were presented with stimuli coloured red, blue, or green, and they were required to accurately label the colour. It was necessary to identify 10 stimuli in each stage of the test, and there were 5 total iterations in each stage. Before each stage, the program issued 2 training iterations. If the patient made a mistake, (i.e., pressed the wrong colour), the iteration was stopped and rebooted from the beginning, and the patient had to complete 5 iterations without error. In the Stroop-off stage, patients saw a neutral stimulus "###" on the screen in one of three colours and had to set the colour correctly. At the Stroop stage, patients saw the text stimuli, "RED", "BLUE", and "GREEN" on the screen, and each inscription could be in three possible colours (red, blue, or green), producing a total of 9 possible combinations. The patient had to evaluate the colour of the text without errors despite the written name of the colour. The stage with the Stroop effect is more complicated because there are more errors, and more time is needed to respond when the colour is not indicated by its name (for example, the word "red" is printed in blue-coloured font instead of red-coloured font). At the end of the test, the total time(s) required to complete the Stroop-off and Stroop-on stages was estimated.

The secondary outcomes of the study that were considered for investigating the efficiency of the intervention were markers of a chronic systemic inflammatory response (IL-6, IL-8, and IFN-γ) and bacteriology measured in the stool flora by specialized nonculture techniques.

All patients underwent bacteriological examination of faeces for dysbiosis. The percentage of patients in each group characterized by a decrease below the normal content of symbiotic bacteria *Bifidobacterium* (less than 10^7 CFU/g), *Lactobacilli* (less than 10^7 CFU/d), *E. coli* with normal properties (less than 10^6 CFU/d) and increase in the content of *E. coli* with altered properties (more than 10^6 CFU/g), pathogenic enterobacteria (not normally detected) and *Candida* (more than 10^4 CFU/d) was determined. Given that some patients were characterized by changes in one component of the microflora and others were within normal limits, we also determined the percentage of patients characterized by changes in the content of at least one of the representatives of microbiocenosis.

The serum levels of ammonia and cytokines were determined following a 12-h fasting period by the hospital clinical laboratory. Cytokine levels were determined (IL-6, IL-8, and IFNγ) using ELISA kits from Vector Best (Novosibirsk, Russia). The concentration of cytokines was calculated according to the calibration schedule and expressed in pg/mL.

Statistical analyses

Statistical analysis was performed using the standard software SPSS version 20.0 (SPSS, Inc., Chicago, Illinois) and GraphPad Prism, version 6.0 (GraphPad Software, Inc., La Jolla, CA, USA). Quantitative changes are presented as the mean and standard error (M ± SE), and qualitative changes are presented as percentages. To prove the normal distribution hypothesis, the Kolmogorov-Smirnov one-sample test was used. Data distribution was analysed using the Kolmogorov-Smirnov normality test. Variables with a parametric distribution were then analysed using one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA), and if the results were significant, a Tukey post hoc test was performed. Data with a nonparametric distribution were analysed using the Kruskal-Wallis test. To compare the data in the same patients before and after treatment, Student's t-test for dependent samples was employed. The χ-square test was used to assess differences between categorical data. Differences between groups were considered significant at a value of $P < 0.05$.

RESULTS

Patient characteristics

Recruitment started in January 2017 and continued until January 2020. For enrolment, the patient database of the Gastroenterology Department was used. For primary analysis, 112 patients were selected. After careful consideration for compliance with the inclusion/exclusion criteria, 15 patients were not eligible. The main reasons were the previous use of agents that can impact gut microbiota composition and overt HE (grades III-IV) as defined by West Haven criteria. A face-to-face conversation was held with all other potential participants explaining the main study criteria, purpose and methodology. After consideration of the proposal, 52 patients refused to give their informed consent. At the end of the enrolment period, with possible bias adjustment, 45 patients with HE were chosen to be included in the study. All patients were equally distributed in a random order to take the intervention for 1 mo. A CONSORT flow chart with a general protocol schedule is shown in Figure 1.

Of the 45 patients, 43 (95.5%) completed their allocated regimens. The remaining 2 patients (4.5%) were excluded from the study analysis. One patient from the lactulose group permanently discontinued participation because of diarrhoea. After AE onset, the lactulose dosage was lowered to 10 mL following 5 mL two times a day, but the event did not resolve and led to the patient's discontinuation. Another patient from the rifaximin group had been treated with antibiotics. One patient from the EcN group was excluded from the analysis due to noncompliance, as this participant received less than 85% of the prescribed intervention. Therefore, the data from 42 (93.3%) study participants were included in the final per-protocol analysis (Figure 1).

The average patient age was 48.95 ± 6.51 years, and the HE duration ranged from 5 to 12 years. Of these patients, 33.3% of patients exhibited grade I, 26.2% exhibited grade II and 40.5% exhibited MHE according to the West Haven criteria. The baseline demographic and clinical characteristics of the enrolled patients did not significantly differ between groups (Table 1).

Primary outcome analysis

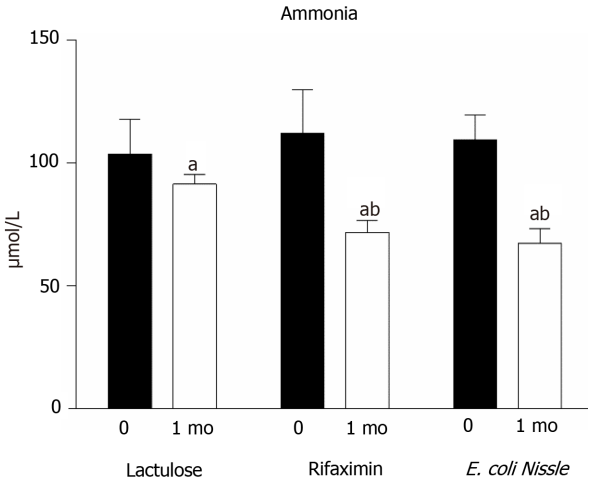
After treatment with lactulose, the concentration of ammonia decreased by 11.8% ($P < 0.05$) (Figure 1). Patients who were given rifaximin or the EcN probiotic strain showed a more significant reduction in ammonia than after lactulose. In the rifaximin group, the ammonia content decreased by 35.9% ($P < 0.05$) after treatment and by 21.5% ($P < 0.05$) compared to the level of ammonia in patients receiving lactulose (Figure 2). The rate of ammonia reduction in the EcN group was 38.5% ($P < 0.05$). Moreover, the obtained data indicate that the therapeutic use of EcN was almost 30% more effective than lactulose (Figure 2).

Cognitive impairment in terms of primary outcome analysis was assessed separately in patients with HE according to the Stroop test, which was divided into two stages. In the first and simpler stage (Stroop off), the mobile application was presented to patients with a text stimulus "###" in one of three possible colours (red, blue, or green), and the patient had to accurately assess the colour. The total time

Table 1 Baseline clinical parameters in examined patients (mean ± SE or %)

	Lactulose group	Rifaximin group	EcN group	*P* value[1]
Age, yr	48.92 ± 1.64	49.07 ± 1.76	48.85 ± 1.93	0.996
Male, % (*n*)	78.6 (11)	78.6 (11)	71.4 (10)	0.877
Etiology of cirrhosis				
HCV, % (*n*)	57.1 (8)	42.9 (6)	50.0 (7)	0.940
Alcoholism, % (*n*)	21.4 (3)	35.7 (5)	28.6 (4)	
Mixed, % (*n*)	21.4 (3)	21.4 (3)	21.4 (3)	
Cirrhosis duration, years	8.14 ± 0.61	8.00 ± 0.61	8.07 ± 0.60	0.986
Time to progression from hepatitis to cirrhosis, years	4.00 ± 0.41	3.42 ± 0.38	3.56 ± 0.32	0.468
Child-pugh score				
A, % (*n*)	35.7 (5)	42.9 (6)	28.6 (4)	0.733
B, % (*n*)	64.3 (9)	57.1 (8)	71.4 (10)	
HE grade				
MHE, % (*n*)	42.9 (6)	35.7 (5)	42.9 (6)	0.979
Grade 1, % (*n*)	35.7 (5)	35.7 (5)	28.6 (4)	
Grade 2, % (*n*)	21.4 (3)	28.6 (4)	28.6 (4)	

[1]The difference between all study groups calculated using one-way ANOVA or χ^2 test for categorical data. HE: Hepatic encephalopathy; MHE: Minimal HE; EcN: *Escherichia coli Nissle*.

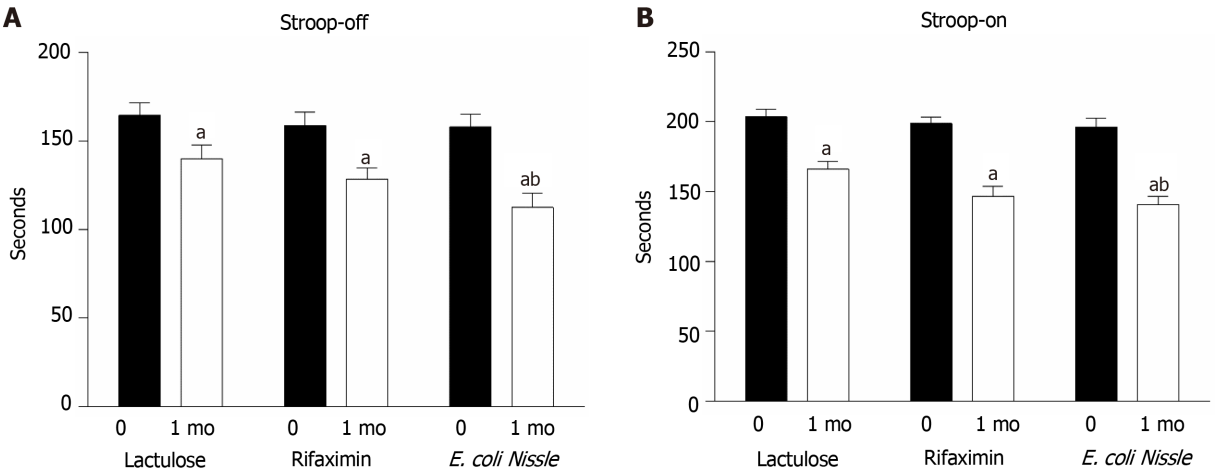


DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

Figure 2 Serum ammonia concentration in patients with hepatic encephalopathy receiving treatment with lactulose, rifaximin and probiotics *E.coli Nissle 1917* (*n* = 14 in each group). [a]*P* < 0.05 as compared to pre-treatment levels; [b]*P* < 0.05 as compared to the lactulose treatment. *E. coli*: *Escherichia coli*.

of correct determination of 10 presented stimuli was recorded over five iterations (i.e., the total number of responses was 50). It has been shown that the test time for patients with HE exceeded the test time of healthy people by almost 2 times, so if a healthy person correctly determined the colour of 10 text characters in an average of less than 20 s, most patients with HE needed more than 20-30 s to pass the test (the time for 5 test solutions was 160 ± 10 s, respectively).

HE treatment significantly improved patients' cognitive abilities. Under the conditions of lactulose administration, the time required to resolve the Stroop-off test was reduced by 14.9% (P = 0.028), after treatment with rifaximin by 19.0% (P = 0.001), and in EcN by 28.7% (P < 0.001). The efficiency of probiotics in restoring mental performance was higher than that of lactulose (Figure 3A).



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

Figure 3 The total time of evaluation of stimuli in Stroop test in patients with hepatic encephalopathy receiving treatment with lactulose, rifaximin and probiotics *E.coli Nissle 1917* (*n* = 14 in each group). A: Stroop-off; B: Stroop-on. [a]*P* < 0.05 as compared to pre-treatment levels; [b]*P* < 0.05 as compared to the lactulose treatment. *E. coli: Escherichia coli*.

In the second stage (Stroop on, with the Stroop effect), the program presented one of the three possible text stimuli "RED", "BLUE", "GREEN" in three possible colours (red, blue, or green), i.e., there were a total of 9 possible combinations, and the patient had to accurately assess the colour of the text regardless of its signage. The difficulty of this stage lies in the need to match the colour correctly while ignoring the name of the colour, so the total time to pass this test was slightly longer than that of the Stroop-off stage.

Patients with HE had a correct response rate 2 times lower than that of healthy people. The rate of Stroop's test was increased in all intervention groups: For lactulose from 203.71 ± 5.33 to 166.07 ± 5.39 (P < 0.001), for rifaximin from 198.93 ± 4.43 to 146.86 ± 7.09% (P < 0.001) and for EcN from 196.43 ± 6.25 to 140.71 ± 6.07% (P < 0.001) seconds after treatment (Figure 3B). However, complete recovery of cognitive function was not recorded for all patients. It should be noted that the efficacy of the probiotic compared to lactulose was noted according to the results of the second stage. Patients who were prescribed EcN completed the test 15% faster (P = 0.017) than the lactulose group (Figure 3B).

Secondary outcome analysis

Along with liver dysfunction, patients were diagnosed with gut dysbiotic disorders. More than 85% of patients in all groups were characterized by changes in at least one group of normoflora (Table 1). The content of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* was less than 10^7 CFU/g in more than 70% and 57% of patients, respectively (Table 1). Approximately 30% of patients had a reduced content of *Escherichia coli* with normal properties and an increased content of bacteria with altered properties. Pathogenic enterobacteria were detected in 35.7% of each group of patients with HE, and *Candida* were found in almost half of the patients (Table 2).

With lactulose application, the percentage of patients with dysbiotic disorders of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* significantly decreased. Significant improvement of other microflora indicators in this group was not registered. In the rifaximin group, normalization of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* was observed in 28.6% (P < 0.05) and 21.4% (P < 0.05), respectively. There was also a decrease in the number of patients with increased levels of *Escherichia coli*, pathogenic enterobacteria and *Candida*. The most pronounced restoration of the symbiotic microflora was found in the EcN group. Normalization of *Bifidobacteria* abundance was registered in 57.1% (P < 0.05) of patients, and *Lactobacilli* was registered in 35.7% (P < 0.05). After EcN treatment, *E. coli* with altered properties or pathogenic enterobacteria was not detected in any of the patients, and only one patient exhibited an increase in the content of yeast-like fungi (Table 2).

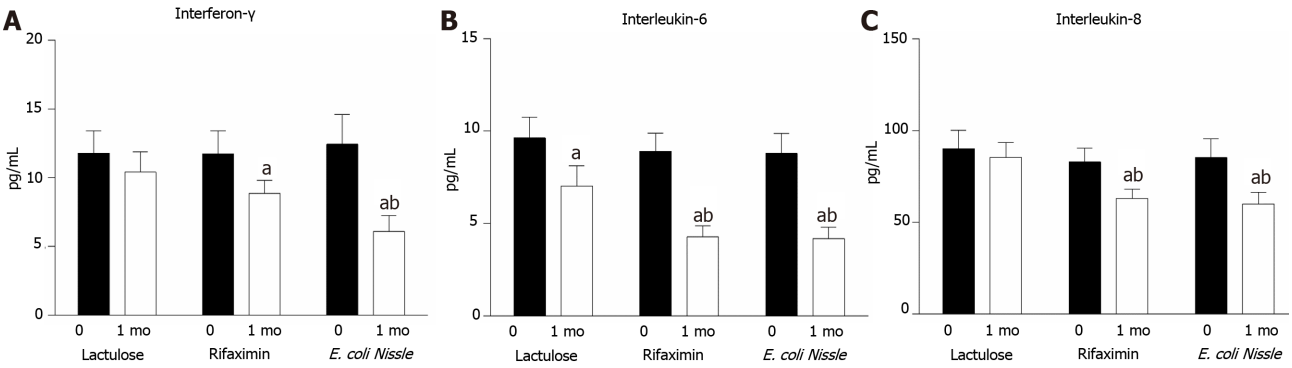
Along with liver damage, the intensification of inflammatory processes was recorded for all patients. This indicator was confirmed by an increase in the concentration of proinflammatory cytokines in the blood: IL-6, IL-8 and INF-γ were observed at frequencies 2-10 times higher than normal. For the group of patients treated with lactulose, the contents of proinflammatory INF-γ and IL-8 did not change significantly after treatment, but there was a decrease in the level of IL-6 from 9.63 ± 1.12 to 7.02 ± 1.09 (P = 0.019) pg/mL compared to the baseline level (Figure 4).

The use of rifaximin led to a significant reduction in the concentrations of serum INF-γ (11.74 ± 1.68 *vs* 8.86 ± 0.71 pg/mL; p=0.049), IL-6 (8.9 ± 0.98 *vs* 4.28 ± 0.59 pg/mL; P < 0.001) and IL-8 (82.95 ± 7.6 *vs* 63.02 ± 5.03 pg/mL; p=0.026) after treatment (Figure 4). For patients treated with probiotics, the reduction in inflammatory processes did not differ significantly from the effects of rifaximin. Thus,

Table 2 The percentage of patients with hepatic encephalopathy and concomitant changes in the microflora under treatment with lactulose, rifaximin and EcN (*n* = 14 in each group)

Group of microflora	Percentage of patients with dysbiotic disorders, %					
	Lactulose group		Rifaximin group		EcN group	
	Before treatment	After treatment	Before treatment	After treatment	Before treatment	After treatment
Bifidobacteria	78.6	57.1[a]	71.4	42.9[a]	85.7	28.6[a,b]
Lactobacilli	64.3	42.9[a]	57.1	35.7[a]	57.1	21.4[a,b]
E.coli with normal properties	28.6	28.6	35.7	28.6	35.7	7.1[a,b]
E.coli with altered properties	28.6	21.4	28.6	14.3[a]	28.6	0.0[a,b]
Pathogenic enterobacteria	35.7	28.6	35.7	21.4[a]	35.7	0.0[a,b]
Candida	42.9	35.7	50.0	28.6[a]	50.0	7.1[a,b]
A change in at least one group of microorganisms was revealed	85.7	71.4[a]	92.9	64.3[a]	92.9	28.6[a,b]

[a]$P < 0.05$ as compared to pre-treatment levels.
[b]$P < 0.05$ as compared to the lactulose treatment.



DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v14.i3.634

Figure 4 Serum cytokine levels in patients with HE receiving treatment with lactulose, rifaximin and probiotics *E.coli Nissle 1917* (*n* = 14 in each group). A: INF-γ; B: IL-6; C: IL-8. [a]$P < 0.05$ as compared to pre-treatment levels; [b]$P < 0.05$ as compared to the lactulose treatment. *E. coli: Escherichia coli.*

along with EcN use, the level of INF-γ decreased by 51.0% ($P = 0.005$), IL-6 decreased by 52.3% ($P = 0.001$) and IL-8 decreased by 29.6% ($P = 0.007$) compared to the baseline value (Figure 4). By comparing the efficacy of EcN and lactulose in the treatment of HE, one can affirm the stronger anti-inflammatory properties of the probiotic, which is 20% more efficient compared to lactulose in reducing the level of the studied proinflammatory cytokines.

Adverse events

There were no reported adverse events or side effects derived from the intervention across patient included to final per protocol analysis, this was evidenced by the fact that there were no changes in biochemical tests at the end of the intervention in either group.

DISCUSSION

Microbiota dysbiosis and chronic systemic inflammation are among the risk factors for the onset and progression of pathologies such as obesity, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease and liver cirrhosis[31], but changes in the intestinal microflora and inflammation in patients with HE have not been adequately studied[32]. As a result, there is an evident need to determine the impact of chronic inflammation and microflora on the epithelium of the intestinal wall, which can also affect the development of HE in people with liver disease[33]. The reduced detoxification function of the microbiota in intestinal dysbiosis increases the load on the enzymatic systems of the liver, which aggravates its metabolic and

structural changes[34]. In addition, patients with liver cirrhosis showed a positive correlation between *Porphyromonadaceae* and *Alcaligenaceae* as well as low expressiveness of cognitive tests. These observations serve as additional confirmation that the increase in ammonia concentration is associated not only with liver dysfunction. Bajaj *et al* showed an increase in the content of ammonia-producing bacteria *Alcaligenaceae* in the intestine under HE conditions[35]. Successful recovery of the microflora can significantly reduce the activity of bacterial urease, absorption of ammonia in the intestine and the intensity of inflammatory processes and endotoxaemia, which is due to reduced absorption of toxins, including indoles, oxindoles, phenols and mercaptans[34]. Therefore, current strategies of HE treatment must also affect the intestinal microbiota.

Lactulose (4-O-β-galactopyranosyl-D-fructose) is widely used in the treatment of HE. It reduces pH levels in the intestine as a result of SCFA formation, creating conditions for the growth of acid-resistant *Lactobacteria* and *Bifidobacteria* that do not express the enzyme urease[7,36]. The literature regarding the effects of lactulose on the composition of microflora is quite contradictory. In contrast to reports on the restoration of indigenous microflora (*Lactobacillaceae*) under the influence of lactulose, Bajaj *et al* (2014) demonstrated intestinal dysbiosis and a decrease in the ratio between autochthonous and non-autochthonous bacteria with a high content of gram-positive bacteria *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Bacteroidaceae* despite treatment with lactulose[37].

Rifaximin is an antibiotic that is not absorbed in the gut and causes a mild change in the intestinal microflora, increasing the presence of beneficial species but without affecting the overall ratio of bacteria [38]. This modulating effect on the composition of the intestinal flora partly explains the clinical efficacy of rifaximin in reducing endotoxaemia and inflammatory markers that contribute to HE progression [39].

The data obtained in the current study show that the efficacy of lactulose as a gut microbiota recovery agent is not high enough, which is consistent with other works in which the efficacy of lactulose was not detected[40,41]. In contrast, treatment with rifaximin or EcN led to normalization of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* abundance. However, the most pronounced restoration of the symbiotic microflora was associated with EcN administration and characterized by the absence of *E. coli* with altered properties and pathogenic enterobacteria in patient features.

To our knowledge, the current study represents the first comparative analysis of the short-term efficacy of probiotic EcN strains to lactulose and rifaximin in patients with HE. One of the early RCTs failed to improve several combination tests, which showed extended reaction times in patients with MHE after treatment with EcN compared to placebo[42]. However, EcN treatment significantly improved intestinal colonization ($P < 0.001$) and tended to reduce endotoxin levels significantly on day 42 ($P = 0.07$)[42]. In contrast, our study showed the improvement of Stroop test parameters in all intervention groups after treatment. However, complete recovery of cognitive function was not recorded for all patients. Moreover, parallel with the positive shift in gut microbiota composition, patients who were prescribed EcN compared to the lactulose group completed the Stroop test 15% faster ($P = 0.017$).

Systemic inflammation also plays an important role in the pathogenesis of HE. Today, accumulated data suggest that the level of cytokines is not only an indicator of inflammation in chronic liver disease and PE but is a separate aetiological factor of this pathology. Systemic inflammation and neuroinflammation are communicated by peripheral tissues, which transmit signals to the brain through the activation of afferent fibres of the vagus and vascular endothelium. The blood-brain barrier (BBB) transmits signals to the brain through the formation of secondary mediators (NO and prostanoids) in response to cytokine stimulation. Cytokines increase the permeability of the BBB and directly penetrate the brain in areas of BBB disorders, where they cause the activation of microglia and the expression of proinflammatory mediator genes[43,44].

Probiotics increase anti-inflammatory cytokines and decrease proinflammatory cytokines in the blood [45]. Bacterial products have a significant effect on the intestinal-liver-brain axis as well as local and systemic immunity. Immunomodulatory activity is also indicated for SCFAs formed by the bacterial fermentation of polysaccharides. Most lactic acid bacteria in the human body are members of the genera *Lactobacillus, Bifidobacterium, Propionobacterium, Streptococcus*, and obligate or facultative anaerobes. These types of bacteria process carbohydrates in the intestinal lumen with the formation of SCFAs: acetic, propionic, dairy, oily, γ-oxy-oily and valerian. SCFAs play a leading role in the physiology of the large intestine, representing the main pool of anions in its lumen. SCFAs activate nerve cells by interacting with receptors associated with the G-proteins GPR41 and GPR43[46]. As recently demonstrated, SCFAs regulate the synthesis of serotonin, which is formed by enterochromaffin cells of the intestine and constitutes 95% of the body's serotonin[47]. Today, a reliable link between serotonin of intestinal origin and brain function, in particular in HE[48], may be another mechanism of communication between modulation of the microflora and disease progression.

Strain *E. coli Nissle 1917*, with the help of special adhesive organelles (type F-1A, F-1C and shaped fimbriae), has the ability to join the mucous membrane of the large intestine and organize microcolonies, forming biofilms[49]. They are also mobile because of the presence of flagella, which gives them the advantage of colonizing the colon. Thus, these bacteria have also been shown to enhance the mucosal barrier by interacting with immunomodulatory and anti-inflammatory mechanisms[49]. *E. coli* Nissle inhibits the growth of gram-negative anaerobic bacteria by secreting antimicrobial substances

(microcins) and siderophores, which capture iron and thus prevent the growth of a certain pathological bacterial strain[28].

The parameters of chronic systemic inflammation in the current study were assessed in secondary outcome analysis. Both EcN and rifaximin showed similar significant reductions in the proinflammatory cytokines INF-γ, IL-6 and IL-8 compared to baseline levels. By comparing the efficacy of EcN and lactulose in the treatment of HE, one can affirm the stronger anti-inflammatory properties of the probiotic, which is 20% more efficacious than lactulose in reducing proinflammatory cytokine levels.

New research on the beneficial effects of gut microbiota modulation and related mechanisms of their interaction with liver disease should be conducted to target better a wide variety of probiotic strains. Moreover, one of the possible gut microbiota-based interventions that may be claimed in the nearest future is FMT. Preliminary data on the possible beneficial effect of FMT find support in both animal[50] and small clinical case series[51,52]. Additionally, several randomized clinical trials are actively recruiting (NCT02862249, NCT03796598, and NCT03439982) patients with HE and cirrhosis to test the efficacy of FMT.

CONCLUSION

To summarize the described results, it can be argued that the use of the probiotic EcN strain was safe and quite efficacious for HE treatment. The probiotic reduced the ammonia content and the level of serum proinflammatory cytokines, normalized the gut microbiota composition and improved the cognitive function of patients with HE. The application of the EcN strain was more efficacious than lactulose treatment.

ARTICLE HIGHLIGHTS

Research background

Hepatic encephalopathy (HE) can be considered a result of dysregulated gut-liver-brain axis function, where cognitive impairment can be reversed or prevented by the beneficial effects induced by "gut-centric" therapies, such as the administration of nonabsorbable disaccharides, nonabsorbable antibiotics, probiotics and prebiotics.

Research motivation

The HE treatment of choice is non-absorbable disaccharides, such as lactulose and lactitol. Non-absorbable disaccharides like lactulose are associated with non-serious (mainly gastrointestinal) adverse events like diarrhea and bloating, hence, due to the side effect profile, newer drugs continue to be tested for treatment of HE. Rifaximin is an antibiotic which modulating effect on the composition of the intestinal flora partly explains the clinical efficacy in reducing endotoxaemia and inflammatory markers that contribute to HE progression. Probiotics are effective in the treatment of minimal hepatic encephalopathy. Various studies have shown some improvement in either the prevalence of minimal hepatic encephalopathy or results in neuropsychological tests with the use of probiotics.

Research objectives

To assess the short-term efficacy and safety of the probiotic *Escherichia coli Nissle* 1917 (EcN) strain compared to lactulose and rifaximin in patients with minimal/mild HE.

Research methods

In total, 45 patients with HE were enrolled in this prospective, single-centre, open-label, randomized study. Participants were randomly assigned at a ratio of 1:1:1 to one of the treatment groups: the EcN group (n = 15), lactulose group (n = 15) or rifaximin group (n = 15) for a 1 mo intervention period. The main primary outcomes of the study were changes in serum ammonia and Stroop test score. The secondary outcomes were markers of a chronic systemic inflammatory response (IL-6, IL-8, and IFN-γ) and bacteriology of the stool flora evaluated by specialized nonculture techniques after a 1 mo intervention period.

Research results

Rifaximin or EcN showed a more significant reduction in serum ammonia and normalization of *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli* abundance compared to the lactulose group. In the primary outcome analysis, improvements in the Stroop test parameters in all intervention groups were observed. Moreover, EcN-treated patients performed 15% faster on the Stroop test than the lactulose group patients (P = 0.017). Both EcN and rifaximin produced similar significant reductions in the proinflammatory cytokines INF-γ, IL-6 and IL-8.

Research conclusions

Probiotic EcN strain was safe and quite efficient for HE treatment. The probiotic reduced the ammonia content and the level of serum proinflammatory cytokines, normalized the gut microbiota composition and improved the cognitive function of patients with HE. The application of the EcN strain was more effective than lactulose treatment.

Research perspectives

New research on the beneficial effects of gut microbiota modulation and related mechanisms of their interaction with liver disease should be conducted to target better a wide variety of probiotic strains. Moreover, one of the possible gut microbiota-based interventions that may be claimed in the nearest future is fecal microbiota transplantation.

FOOTNOTES

Author contributions: Manzhalii E, Moyseyenko V and Kondratiuk V were responsible for the study conception and design, data analysis and interpretation, and manuscript drafting; Molochek N, Falalyeyeva T and Kobyliak N critically revised the article for important intellectual content; all the authors reviewed and approved the final version to be published.

Institutional review board statement: The study protocol was approved by the Ethics Committee at Bogomolets National Medical University (protocol number: 106/2017).

Clinical trial registration statement: The study protocol was registered in Clinical.Trial.gov database under the entry number NCT04787276.

Informed consent statement: All study participants, or their legal guardian, provided informed written consent prior to study enrollment.

Conflict-of-interest statement: All authors declare no potential conflicting interests related to this paper.

Data sharing statement: No additional data are available.

CONSORT 2010 statement: The authors have read the CONSORT 2010 Statement, and the manuscript was prepared and revised according to the CONSORT 2010 Statement.

Country/Territory of origin: Ukraine

ORCID number: Elina Manzhalii 0000-0003-0920-4627; Valentyna Moyseyenko 0000-0003-1402-6028; Vitalii Kondratiuk 0000-0002-4891-2338; Nataliia Molochek 0000-0001-6790-5099; Tetyana Falalyeyeva 0000-0002-4415-9676; Nazarii Kobyliak 0000-0001-9814-689X.

S-Editor: Wang LL
L-Editor: A
P-Editor: Wang LL

REFERENCES

1 **Kobyliak N**, Abenavoli L, Falalyeyeva T, Virchenko O, Natalia B, Beregova T, Bodnar P, Spivak M. Prevention of nafld development in rats with obesity *via* the improvement of pro/antioxidant state by cerium dioxide nanoparticles. *Clujul Medical* 2016; **89**: 229-235 [DOI: 10.15386/cjmed-632]
2 **Mykhalchyshyn G**, Kobyliak N, Bodnar P. Diagnostic accuracy of acyl-ghrelin and it association with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in type 2 diabetic patients. *J Diabetes Metab Disord* 2015; **14**: 44 [PMID: 25995986 DOI: 10.1186/s40200-015-0170-1]
3 **Vilstrup H**, Amodio P, Bajaj J, Cordoba J, Ferenci P, Mullen KD, Weissenborn K, Wong P. Hepatic encephalopathy in chronic liver disease: 2014 Practice Guideline by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases and the European Association for the Study of the Liver. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 715-735 [PMID: 25042402 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27210]
4 **Poordad FF**. Review article: the burden of hepatic encephalopathy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25** Suppl 1: 3-9

[PMID: 17295846 DOI: 10.1111/j.1746-6342.2006.03215.x]

5 **de Wit K**, Schaapman JJ, Nevens F, Verbeek J, Coenen S, Cuperus FJC, Kramer M, Tjwa ETTL, Mostafavi N, Dijkgraaf MGW, van Delden OM, Beuers UHW, Coenraad MJ, Takkenberg RB. Prevention of hepatic encephalopathy by administration of rifaximin and lactulose in patients with liver cirrhosis undergoing placement of a transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt (TIPS): a multicentre randomised, double blind, placebo controlled trial (PEARL trial). *BMJ Open Gastroenterol* 2020; **7** [PMID: 33372103 DOI: 10.1136/bmjgast-2020-000531]

6 **Bajaj JS**, Lauridsen M, Tapper EB, Duarte-Rojo A, Rahimi RS, Tandon P, Shawcross DL, Thabut D, Dhiman RK, Romero-Gomez M, Sharma BC, Montagnese S. Important Unresolved Questions in the Management of Hepatic Encephalopathy: An ISHEN Consensus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2020; **115**: 989-1002 [PMID: 32618647 DOI: 10.14309/ajg.0000000000000603]

7 **Gómez-Hurtado I**, Such J, Sanz Y, Francés R. Gut microbiota-related complications in cirrhosis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 15624-15631 [PMID: 25400446 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i42.15624]

8 **Shawcross DL**, Wright G, Olde Damink SW, Jalan R. Role of ammonia and inflammation in minimal hepatic encephalopathy. *Metab Brain Dis* 2007; **22**: 125-138 [PMID: 17260161 DOI: 10.1007/s11011-006-9042-1]

9 **Wijdicks EF**. Hepatic Encephalopathy. *N Engl J Med* 2016; **375**: 1660-1670 [PMID: 27783916 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1600561]

10 **Juárez Olguín H**, Calderón Guzmán D, Hernández García E, Barragán Mejía G. The Role of Dopamine and Its Dysfunction as a Consequence of Oxidative Stress. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2016; **2016**: 9730467 [PMID: 26770661 DOI: 10.1155/2016/9730467]

11 **Carabotti M**, Scirocco A, Maselli MA, Severi C. The gut-brain axis: interactions between enteric microbiota, central and enteric nervous systems. *Ann Gastroenterol* 2015; **28**: 203-209 [PMID: 25830558]

12 **Wright G**, Davies NA, Shawcross DL, Hodges SJ, Zwingmann C, Brooks HF, Mani AR, Harry D, Stadlbauer V, Zou Z, Williams R, Davies C, Moore KP, Jalan R. Endotoxemia produces coma and brain swelling in bile duct ligated rats. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 1517-1526 [PMID: 17523148 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21599]

13 **Pande C**, Kumar A, Sarin SK. Small-intestinal bacterial overgrowth in cirrhosis is related to the severity of liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **29**: 1273-1281 [PMID: 19302262 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2009.03994.x]

14 **Ghosh G**, Jesudian AB. Small Intestinal Bacterial Overgrowth in Patients With Cirrhosis. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2019; **9**: 257-267 [PMID: 31024208 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2018.08.006]

15 **Eslami M**, Bahar A, Hemati M, Rasouli Nejad Z, Mehranfar F, Karami S, Kobyliak NM, Yousefi B. Dietary pattern, colonic microbiota and immunometabolism interaction: new frontiers for diabetes mellitus and related disorders. *Diabet Med* 2021; **38**: e14415 [PMID: 33025587 DOI: 10.1111/dme.14415]

16 **Zhang Y**, Feng Y, Cao B, Tian Q. The effect of small intestinal bacterial overgrowth on minimal hepatic encephalopathy in patients with cirrhosis. *Arch Med Sci* 2016; **12**: 592-596 [PMID: 27279853 DOI: 10.5114/aoms.2015.55675]

17 **Gupta A**, Dhiman RK, Kumari S, Rana S, Agarwal R, Duseja A, Chawla Y. Role of small intestinal bacterial overgrowth and delayed gastrointestinal transit time in cirrhotic patients with minimal hepatic encephalopathy. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 849-855 [PMID: 20675008 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.05.017]

18 **Campion D**, Giovo I, Ponzo P, Saracco GM, Balzola F, Alessandria C. Dietary approach and gut microbiota modulation for chronic hepatic encephalopathy in cirrhosis. *World J Hepatol* 2019; **11**: 489-512 [PMID: 31293718 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v11.i6.489]

19 **Gluud LL**, Vilstrup H, Morgan MY. Non-absorbable disaccharides *vs* placebo/no intervention and lactulose *vs* lactitol for the prevention and treatment of hepatic encephalopathy in people with cirrhosis. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2016; CD003044 [PMID: 27153247 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003044.pub3]

20 **Hudson M**, Schuchmann M. Long-term management of hepatic encephalopathy with lactulose and/or rifaximin: a review of the evidence. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2019; **31**: 434-450 [PMID: 30444745 DOI: 10.1097/MEG.0000000000001311]

21 **Leise MD**, Poterucha JJ, Kamath PS, Kim WR. Management of hepatic encephalopathy in the hospital. *Mayo Clin Proc* 2014; **89**: 241-253 [PMID: 24411831 DOI: 10.1016/j.mayocp.2013.11.009]

22 **Shukla S**, Shukla A, Mehboob S, Guha S. Meta-analysis: the effects of gut flora modulation using prebiotics, probiotics and synbiotics on minimal hepatic encephalopathy. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **33**: 662-671 [PMID: 21251030 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04574.x]

23 **Kobyliak N**, Abenavoli L, Falalyeyeva T, Kovalchuk O, Kyriienko D, Komisarenko I. Metabolic Benefits of Probiotic Combination with Absorbent Smectite in type 2 Diabetes Patients a Randomised Controlled Trial. *Rev Recent Clin Trials* 2021; **16**: 109-119 [PMID: 32646362 DOI: 10.2174/1574887115666200709141131]

24 **Kobyliak N**, Falalyeyeva T, Mykhalchyshyn G, Molochek N, Savchuk O, Kyriienko D, Komisarenko I. Probiotic and omega-3 polyunsaturated fatty acids supplementation reduces insulin resistance, improves glycemia and obesity parameters in individuals with type 2 diabetes: A randomised controlled trial. *Obesity Medicine* 2020; **19**: 100248 [DOI: 10.1016/j.obmed.2020.100248]

25 **Kobyliak N**, Abenavoli L, Mykhalchyshyn G, Falalyeyeva T, Tsyryuk O, Kononenko L, Kyriienko D, Komisarenko I. Probiotics and smectite absorbent gel formulation reduce liver stiffness, transaminase and cytokine levels in NAFLD associated with type 2 diabetes: a randomized clinical study. *Clinical Diabetology* 2019; **8**: 205-214 [DOI: 10.5603/dk.2019.0016]

26 **Eslami M**, Sadrifar S, Karbalaei M, Keikha M, Kobyliak NM, Yousefi B. Importance of the Microbiota Inhibitory Mechanism on the Warburg Effect in Colorectal Cancer Cells. *J Gastrointest Cancer* 2020; **51**: 738-747 [PMID: 31735976 DOI: 10.1007/s12029-019-00329-3]

27 **Kobyliak N**, Falalyeyeva T, Tsyryuk O, Eslami M, Kyriienko D, Beregova T, Ostapchenko L. New insights on strain-specific impacts of probiotics on insulin resistance: evidence from animal study. *Journal of Diabetes and Metabolic Disorders* 2020; **19**: 289-296 [DOI: 10.1007/s40200-020-00506-3]

28 **Zyrek AA**, Cichon C, Helms S, Enders C, Sonnenborn U, Schmidt MA. Molecular mechanisms underlying the probiotic effects of Escherichia coli Nissle 1917 involve ZO-2 and PKCzeta redistribution resulting in tight junction and epithelial

barrier repair. *Cell Microbiol* 2007; **9**: 804-816 [PMID: 17087734 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-5822.2006.00836.x]
29 **Trebichavsky I**, Splichal I, Rada V, Splichalova A. Modulation of natural immunity in the gut by Escherichia coli strain Nissle 1917. *Nutr Rev* 2010; **68**: 459-464 [PMID: 20646223 DOI: 10.1111/j.1753-4887.2010.00305.x]
30 **Bajaj JS**, Thacker LR, Heuman DM, Fuchs M, Sterling RK, Sanyal AJ, Puri P, Siddiqui MS, Stravitz RT, Bouneva I, Luketic V, Noble N, White MB, Monteith P, Unser A, Wade JB. The Stroop smartphone application is a short and valid method to screen for minimal hepatic encephalopathy. *Hepatology* 2013; **58**: 1122-1132 [PMID: 23389962 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26309]
31 **Cani PD**, Delzenne NM. The gut microbiome as therapeutic target. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics* 2011; **130**: 202-212 [DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2011.01.012]
32 **Said VJ**, Garcia-Trujillo E. Beyond Lactulose: Treatment Options for Hepatic Encephalopathy. *Gastroenterol Nurs* 2019; **42**: 277-285 [PMID: 31145253 DOI: 10.1097/SGA.0000000000000376]
33 **Wiest R**, Lawson M, Geuking M. Pathological bacterial translocation in liver cirrhosis. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 197-209 [PMID: 23993913 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.07.044]
34 **Rai R**, Saraswat VA, Dhiman RK. Gut microbiota: its role in hepatic encephalopathy. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2015; **5**: S29-S36 [PMID: 26041954 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2014.12.003]
35 **Bajaj JS**, Ridlon JM, Hylemon PB, Thacker LR, Heuman DM, Smith S, Sikaroodi M, Gillevet PM. Linkage of gut microbiome with cognition in hepatic encephalopathy. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **302**: G168-G175 [PMID: 21940902 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00190.2011]
36 **Gluud LL**, Dam G, Borre M, Les I, Cordoba J, Marchesini G, Aagaard NK, Vilstrup H. Lactulose, rifaximin or branched chain amino acids for hepatic encephalopathy: what is the evidence? *Metab Brain Dis* 2013; **28**: 221-225 [PMID: 23275147 DOI: 10.1007/s11011-012-9372-0]
37 **Bajaj JS**, Heuman DM, Hylemon PB, Sanyal AJ, White MB, Monteith P, Noble NA, Unser AB, Daita K, Fisher AR, Sikaroodi M, Gillevet PM. Altered profile of human gut microbiome is associated with cirrhosis and its complications. *J Hepatol* 2014; **60**: 940-947 [PMID: 24374295 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2013.12.019]
38 **Bajaj JS**. Review article: potential mechanisms of action of rifaximin in the management of hepatic encephalopathy and other complications of cirrhosis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2016; **43** Suppl 1: 11-26 [PMID: 26618922 DOI: 10.1111/apt.13435]
39 **Ponziani FR**, Zocco MA, D'Aversa F, Pompili M, Gasbarrini A. Eubiotic properties of rifaximin: Disruption of the traditional concepts in gut microbiota modulation. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 4491-4499 [PMID: 28740337 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i25.4491]
40 **Riggio O**, Varriale M, Testore GP, Di Rosa R, Di Rosa E, Merli M, Romiti A, Candiani C, Capocaccia L. Effect of lactitol and lactulose administration on the fecal flora in cirrhotic patients. Journal of clinical gastroenterology 1990;12:433-6
41 **Als-Nielsen B**, Gluud LL, Gluud C. Non-absorbable disaccharides for hepatic encephalopathy: systematic review of randomised trials. *BMJ* 2004; **328**: 1046 [PMID: 15054035 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.38048.506134.EE]
42 **Lata J**, Juránková J, Príbramská V, Fric P, Senkyrík M, Díte P, Kroupa R. [Effect of administration of Escherichia coli Nissle (Mutaflor) on intestinal colonisation, endo-toxemia, liver function and minimal hepatic encephalopathy in patients with liver cirrhosis]. *Vnitr Lek* 2006; **52**: 215-219 [PMID: 16722152]
43 **Bémeur C**, Butterworth RF. Liver-brain proinflammatory signalling in acute liver failure: role in the pathogenesis of hepatic encephalopathy and brain edema. *Metab Brain Dis* 2013; **28**: 145-150 [PMID: 23212479 DOI: 10.1007/s11011-012-9361-3]
44 **Jayakumar AR**, Rama Rao KV, Norenberg MD. Neuroinflammation in hepatic encephalopathy: mechanistic aspects. *J Clin Exp Hepatol* 2015; **5**: S21-S28 [PMID: 26041953 DOI: 10.1016/j.jceh.2014.07.006]
45 **Rogers GB**, Keating DJ, Young RL, Wong ML, Licinio J, Wesselingh S. From gut dysbiosis to altered brain function and mental illness: mechanisms and pathways. *Mol Psychiatry* 2016; **21**: 738-748 [PMID: 27090305 DOI: 10.1038/mp.2016.50]
46 **Nøhr MK**, Pedersen MH, Gille A, Egerod KL, Engelstoft MS, Husted AS, Sichlau RM, Grunddal KV, Poulsen SS, Han S, Jones RM, Offermanns S, Schwartz TW. GPR41/FFAR3 and GPR43/FFAR2 as cosensors for short-chain fatty acids in enteroendocrine cells *vs* FFAR3 in enteric neurons and FFAR2 in enteric leukocytes. *Endocrinology* 2013; **154**: 3552-3564 [PMID: 23885020 DOI: 10.1210/en.2013-1142]
47 **Yano JM**, Yu K, Donaldson GP, Shastri GG, Ann P, Ma L, Nagler CR, Ismagilov RF, Mazmanian SK, Hsiao EY. Indigenous bacteria from the gut microbiota regulate host serotonin biosynthesis. *Cell* 2015; **161**: 264-276 [PMID: 25860609 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.02.047]
48 **Dhanda S**, Sandhir R. Role of dopaminergic and serotonergic neurotransmitters in behavioral alterations observed in rodent model of hepatic encephalopathy. *Behav Brain Res* 2015; **286**: 222-235 [PMID: 25639545 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbr.2015.01.042]
49 **Hancock V**, Dahl M, Klemm P. Probiotic Escherichia coli strain Nissle 1917 outcompetes intestinal pathogens during biofilm formation. *J Med Microbiol* 2010; **59**: 392-399 [PMID: 20110388 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.008672-0]
50 **Wang WW**, Zhang Y, Huang XB, You N, Zheng L, Li J. Fecal microbiota transplantation prevents hepatic encephalopathy in rats with carbon tetrachloride-induced acute hepatic dysfunction. *World J Gastroenterol* 2017; **23**: 6983-6994 [PMID: 29097871 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v23.i38.6983]
51 **Bajaj JS**, Kassam Z, Fagan A, Gavis EA, Liu E, Cox IJ, Kheradman R, Heuman D, Wang J, Gurry T, Williams R, Sikaroodi M, Fuchs M, Alm E, John B, Thacker LR, Riva A, Smith M, Taylor-Robinson SD, Gillevet PM. Fecal microbiota transplant from a rational stool donor improves hepatic encephalopathy: A randomized clinical trial. *Hepatology* 2017; **66**: 1727-1738 [PMID: 28586116 DOI: 10.1002/hep.29306]
52 **Bajaj JS**, Fagan A, Gavis EA, Kassam Z, Sikaroodi M, Gillevet PM. Long-term Outcomes of Fecal Microbiota Transplantation in Patients With Cirrhosis. *Gastroenterology* 2019; **156**: 1921-1923.e3 [PMID: 30664879 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2019.01.033]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
7041 Koll Center Parkway, Suite 160, Pleasanton, CA 94566, USA
Telephone: +1-925-3991568
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: https://www.f6publishing.com/helpdesk
https://www.wjgnet.com